



**IN THE NAME OF ALLAH,
THE ALL-BENEFICENT, THE ALL-MERCIFUL**

قال الله تعالى:

﴿إِنَّمَا يُرِيدُ اللَّهُ لِيُذْهِبَ عَنْكُمُ الرِّجْسَ أَهْلَ الْبَيْتِ وَيُطَهِّرَكُمْ تَطْهِيرًا﴾

“Indeed Allah desires to repel all impurity from you, O People of the Household, and purify you with a thorough purification.”

Sūrah al-Azāb 33:33

AN OVERVIEW OF THE MAHDĪ'S^(‘atfs) GOVERNMENT

قَالَ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ:

إِنِّي تَارِكٌ فِيكُمْ الثَّقَلَيْنِ: كِتَابَ اللَّهِ وَعِترَتِي أَهْلَ
بَيْتِي، مَا إِنْ تَمَسَّكْتُمْ بِهِمَا لَنْ تَضِلُّوا بَعْدِي أَبَدًا،
وإِنَّهُمَا لَنْ يَفْتَرِقَا حَتَّى يَرِدَا عَلَيَّ الْحَوْضَ.

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said:

“Verily, I am leaving among you two weighty things [*thaqalayn*]: The Book of Allah and my progeny [*‘itratī*], the members of my Household [*Ahl al-Bayt*]. If you hold fast to them, you shall never go astray. These two will never separate from each other until they meet me at the Pond [*ḥawḥ*] (of *Kawthar*).”

Some references:

- 0 Al-°akim an-Nayshābūrī, *Al-Mustadrak ‘alā’* □-□a□ī□ayn (Beirut), vol. 3, pp. 109-110, 148, 533
- 0 Muslim, □a□ī□, (English translation), book 31, *ḥadīths* 5920-3
- 0 At-Tirmidhī, □a□ī□, vol. 5, pp. 621-2, *ḥadīths* 3786, 3788; vol. 2, p. 219
- 0 An-Nasā’ī, *Kha□ā’i* □ ‘*Alī ibn Abī □ālib*, *ḥadīth* 79
- 0 A□mad ibn °anbal, *Al-Musnad*, vol. 3, pp. 14, 17, 26; vol. 3, pp. 26, 59; vol. 4, p. 371; vol. 5, pp. 181-182, 189-190
- 0 Ibn al-°Athīr, *Jāmi’ al-U□ūl*, vol. 1, p. 277
- 0 Ibn Kathīr, *Al-Bidāyah wa’n-Nihāyah*, vol. 5, p. 209
- 0 Ibn Kathīr, *Tafsīr al-Qur’ān al-‘A□īm*, vol. 6, p. 199
- 0 Na□īr ad-Dīn al-Albanī, *Silsilāt al-A□ādīth a□-□a□ī□ah* (Kuwait: Ad-Dār a□-□alāfiyyah), vol. 4, pp. 355-358

**AN
OVERVIEW
OF THE
MAHDĪ'S^(atfs) GOVERNMENT**

Najmuddīn Ṭabasī

Translator

Mansoor Limba

Cultural Affairs Department
Ahl al-Bayt^(a) World Assembly

نام کتاب: چشم اندازی به
حکومت مهدی (عج)
نویسنده: نجم الدین طبسی
مترجم: منصور لیمبا
زبان ترجمه: انگلیسی



Title: An Overview of the Mahdī's^(aṭṭs) Government

Author: Najmuddīn Ṭabasī

Translator and typesetter: Mansoor Limba

Project supervisor: Translation Unit, Cultural Affairs Department
Ahl al-Bayt (‘a) World Assembly (ABWA)

Editor: Ahmad Haneef & Hazel Haneef

Publisher: ABWA Publishing and Printing Center

First Printing: 2007

Printed by: Laylā Press

Copies: 5,000

ISBN: 978-964-529-258-2

© Ahl al-Bayt (‘a) World Assembly (ABWA)

www.ahl-ul-bayt.org
info@ahl-ul-bayt.org

Table of Contents

<i>FOREWORD</i>	1
<i>PREFACE</i>	3
<i>PART 1</i>	9
THE WORLD BEFORE THE ADVENT OF IMĀM AL-MAHDĪ (‘ATFS)	9
<i>CHAPTER 1</i>	15
GOVERNMENTS	15
THE DESPOTISM OF GOVERNMENTS	15
THE COMPOSITION OF STATES	17
THE INFLUENCE OF WOMEN ON GOVERNMENTS	17
THE RULE OF THE YOUNG	18
THE INSTABILITY OF GOVERNMENTS	18
THE IMPOTENCE OF POWERS IN ADMINISTERING COUNTRIES	19
<i>CHAPTER 2</i>	21
THE RELIGIOUS CONDITION OF THE PEOPLE	21
ISLAM AND THE MUSLIMS	21
THE MOSQUES	22
THE JURISTS [FUQAHĀ]	22
THE DESERTION OF RELIGION	23
THE SELLING OF RELIGION	23
<i>CHAPTER 3</i>	25
MORALITY BEFORE THE ADVENT OF IMĀM AL-MAHDĪ (‘ATFS)	25
THE COLDNESS OF HUMAN FEELINGS	25
MORAL CORRUPTION	26
THE SPREAD OF IMMODEST ACTS	27
THE DESIRE FOR LESS CHILDREN	27
THE INCREASE IN THE NUMBER OF FAMILIES WITHOUT GUARDIANS	28
<i>CHAPTER 4</i>	31
SECURITY BEFORE THE ADVENT OF IMĀM AL-MAHDĪ (‘ATFS)	31
CHAOS AND INSECURITY	31

INSECURITY OF THE HIGHWAYS.....	32
HORRENDOUS CRIMES.....	32
WISHING FOR DEATH BY THOSE WHO ARE ALIVE	34
THE CAPTIVITY OF THE MUSLIMS.....	35
SINKING INTO THE GROUND	36
THE INCREASE OF SUDDEN DEATH.....	36
HOPELESSNESS OF THE PEOPLE OF THE WORLD TO ATTAIN DELIVERANCE.....	36
THE ABSENCE OF JUDGES AND REFUGE.....	37
WARS, KILLINGS AND SEDITIONS	37
CHAPTER 5.....	43
THE ECONOMIC CONDITION OF THE WORLD DURING THE ADVENT OF IMĀM AL-MAHDĪ ('ATFS)	43
SCARCE AND INOPPORTUNE RAINFALL.....	43
DRYING UP OF LAKES AND RIVERS.....	44
THE PREVALENCE OF INFLATION, STARVATION, POVERTY, AND TRADE RECESSIONS.....	44
THE BARTERING OF WOMEN IN EXCHANGE FOR FOOD ITEMS	46
CHAPTER 6	47
THE RAYS OF HOPE	47
THE TRUE BELIEVERS.....	47
THE ROLE OF THE SHI'AH 'ULAMĀ' AND SCHOLARS.....	48
THE ROLE OF THE CITY OF QUM AT THE END OF TIME	49
<i>Qum as the Sanctuary of the Ahl al-Bayt ('a)</i>	49
<i>The City of Qum as a Proof for Others</i>	50
<i>The Center for the Diffusion of Islamic Culture</i>	51
THE CONFIRMATION OF THE WAY OF THINKING IN QUM	51
<i>The Companions of Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs)</i>	52
<i>Iran as the Country of the Imām of the Time ('atfs)</i>	53
<i>Commendation for the Iranians</i>	53
<i>Those Who are Paving the Ground for the Advent of Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs)</i> ..	54
PART 2	57
THE GLOBAL REVOLUTION OF IMĀM AL-MAHDĪ ('ATFS).....	57
CHAPTER 1.....	59
THE UPRISING OF THE IMĀM OF THE TIME ('ATFS).....	59
ANNOUNCEMENT OF THE ADVENT.....	61
THE SLOGAN ON THE FLAG OF THE UPRISING.....	61
THE GLADNESS OF THE PEOPLE OF THE WORLD FOR THE UPRISING	62
DELIVERANCE OF THE DEPRIVED.....	63

THE ROLE OF WOMEN IN THE UPRISING OF IMĀM AL-MAHDĪ ('ATFS)	64
<i>The Historical Background of the Women Involved in the Advent</i>	65
1. □iyānah.....	66
2. Umm Ayman.....	67
3. Zubaydah.....	67
4. Sumayyah the Mother of 'Ammār ibn Yāsir	68
5. Umm Khālīd	68
6. °abābah Wālibiyyah.....	68
7. Qanwā' the Daughter of Rashīd Hījrī.....	70
<i>The Role of Women during the Time of the Prophets ('a)</i>	71
CHAPTER 2	75
THE LEADER OF THE UPRISING	75
PHYSICAL FEATURES	75
1. Age and Features	75
2. Bodily Characteristics.....	77
HIS MORAL EXCELLENCES	77
1. His Fear of God	78
2. His Asceticism [zuhd]	78
HIS GARMENTS	79
HIS WEAPON	80
IMĀM AL-MAHDĪ'S KNOWLEDGE OF OTHERS' PERSONALITIES	80
HIS MIRACLES	81
1. The Speaking of Birds	82
2. The Gushing Forth of Water and Provisions from the Ground.....	83
3. Traveling throughout the World and the Absence of a Shadow	84
4. His Means of Transportation	84
5. Slowness of the Movement of Time	84
6. The Power of Takbīr	85
7. Passing over the Water	86
8. Curing the Sick.....	86
9. The Staff of Mūsā (Moses) in His Hand	86
10. The Call of the Cloud	87
CHAPTER 3.....	89
THE SOLDIERS OF IMĀM AL-MAHDĪ ('ATFS)	89
COMMANDERS OF THE ARMY	89
1. °a□rat 'Īsā (Jesus Christ) ('a).....	89
2. Shu'ayb ibn □alī□	90
3. Ismā'īl the Son of Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) and 'Abdullāh ibn Sharīk.....	91
4. 'Aqīl and °ārith	91
5. Jubayr ibn Khābūr	91
6. 'Umar ibn Mufa□□al.....	92

7. <i>The Companions of the Cave</i> [a□□āb al-kahf]	92
THE NATIONALITY OF THE SOLDIERS	92
1. <i>Iranians</i>	93
a. <i>Qum</i>	95
b. <i>Khurāsān</i>	95
c. □āleqān.....	95
2. <i>Arabs</i>	95
3. <i>The Followers of Various Religions</i>	97
4. <i>Jābalqā and Jābarsā</i>	99
THE NUMBER OF SOLDIERS	100
1. <i>Special Forces</i>	100
2. <i>The Army of Imām al-Mahdī (‘atfs)</i>	103
3. <i>Security Guard Corps</i>	103
MUSTERING THE SOLDIERS.....	104
THINGS NECESSARY IN RECRUITING AND TRAINING THE SOLDIERS.....	105
PECULIARITIES OF THE SOLDIERS	107
1. <i>Worship and Devotion</i>	108
2. <i>Love for the Imām and Obedience to Him</i>	108
3. <i>Strong and Young Soldiers</i>	109
4. <i>Beloved Soldiers</i>	111
5. <i>Lovers of Martyrdom</i>	111
CHAPTER 4	113
THE WARS OF IMĀM AL-MAHDĪ (‘AFS)	113
THE REWARD FOR THE STRUGGLERS [MUJĀHIDĪN] AND MARTYRS [SHUHADĀ’]	113
WAR ARMAMENTS	114
THE IMĀM’S CONQUEST OF THE WORLD FOR THE LIBERATION OF MANKIND	115
SUPPRESSION OF REVOLTS	122
THE END OF WAR	124
CHAPTER 5	127
HIDDEN HELP	127
DREAD AND FEAR AS WEAPONS OF THE IMĀM	127
THE ANGELS AND JINN	128
ANGELS OF THE EARTH	130
THE ARK OF PROPHET MŪSĀ (MOSES) (‘A).....	132
CHAPTER 6	133
IMĀM AL-MAHDĪ’S MODE OF CONDUCT WITH ENEMIES	133
THE DECISIVENESS OF THE IMĀM (‘ATFS) IN CONFRONTING ENEMIES	134
1. <i>War and Killing</i>	134
2. <i>Execution and Banishment</i>	135

3. <i>The Amputation of Hands</i>	136
DEALING WITH DIFFERENT GROUPS	137
1. <i>The Arab Nation</i>	137
2. <i>The People of the Book [ahl al-kitāb]</i>	137
3. <i>False and Deviant Sects</i>	139
4. <i>The Sanctimonious</i>	141
5. <i>Nā□ibīs</i>	142
6. <i>Hypocrites</i>	143
7. <i>The Satan</i>	143
CHAPTER 7	145
THE REVIVAL OF THE MU□AMMADAN (□) SUNNAH	145
NEW LAWS	148
1. <i>Execution of Adulterers and Those Who Prevent Zakāt</i>	148
2. <i>The Law of Inheritance</i>	149
3. <i>The Execution of Liars</i>	149
4. <i>Termination of the Ruling on Jizyah</i>	150
5. <i>Revenge against the Remaining Offspring of Imām al-°usayn's ('a)</i> <i>Murderers</i>	150
6. <i>The Ruling on Mortgage [rahn] and Deposit [wathīqah]</i>	151
7. <i>Business Profit</i>	151
8. <i>The Brethren-in-Faith Helping One Another</i>	152
9. <i>Ruling on Qa□āyi' (Private Estates)</i>	152
10. <i>Ruling on Wealth</i>	152
SOCIAL REFORMS AND THE STRUCTURAL RENOVATION OF MOSQUES	152
1. <i>The Destruction of the Kūfah Mosque and the Fixing of Its Qiblah</i>	152
2. <i>Destruction of Embellished Mosques and Those along the Highways</i>	153
3. <i>The Destruction of Minarets</i>	153
4. <i>Destruction of the Roofs and Pulpits of Mosques</i>	154
5. <i>Restoration of Masjid al-°arām (the Sacred Mosque in Mecca) and Masjid</i> <i>an-Nabī (in Medina) to Their Respective Original Sizes</i>	155
JUDGMENT.....	155
THE GOVERNMENT OF JUSTICE.....	156
VIEW OF THE LATE □ABARSĪ.....	156
PART 3	159
THE GOVERNMENT OF IMĀM AL-MAHDĪ ('ATFS)	159
CHAPTER 1	161
THE GOVERNMENT OF TRUTH	161
GOVERNMENT OVER HEARTS	164
THE CAPITAL OF THE GOVERNMENT	165
THE OFFICIALS OF IMĀM AL-MAHDĪ'S ('ATFS) GOVERNMENT	167

THE PERIOD OF RULE	169
CHAPTER 2	173
THE GROWTH OF KNOWLEDGE AND THE DIFFUSION OF ISLAMIC CULTURE.....	173
PROGRESS IN SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY	175
THE DIFFUSION OF ISLAMIC CULTURE.....	178
1. <i>Teaching of the Qur'an and Islamic Studies</i>	178
2. <i>The Building of Mosques</i>	179
THE ENHANCEMENT OF SPIRITUALITY AND MORALITY.....	180
CHAPTER 3.....	185
SECURITY	185
PUBLIC SECURITY	186
THE SECURITY OF HIGHWAYS	188
JUDICIAL SECURITY	190
CHAPTER 4.....	193
THE ECONOMY	193
ECONOMIC BOOM AND SOCIAL WELFARE	194
1. <i>Distribution of Properties and the Endowment of Possessions</i>	194
2. <i>The Uprooting of Poverty from Society</i>	195
3. <i>Attending to the Affairs of the Deprived and the Downtrodden</i>	197
PROSPERITY AND DEVELOPMENT	198
AGRICULTURE	200
1. <i>The Abundance of Rain</i>	200
2. <i>The Surplus of Agricultural Produce</i>	201
3. <i>The Flourishing of Animal Husbandry</i>	203
COMMERCE	204
CHAPTER 5.....	205
HEALTH AND MEDICAL SERVICES	205
THE SPREAD OF DISEASES AND SUDDEN DEATHS	206
HEALTH.....	207
MEDICAL SERVICES	208
CONCLUSION.....	210
THE MARTYRDOM OR PASSING AWAY OF IMĀM AL-MAHDĪ (‘ATFS)	210
THE MANNER OF THE MARTYRDOM OF IMĀM AL-MAHDĪ (‘ATFS)	211
ADDENDUM	213

APPENDIX 1217
APPENDIX 2221
BIBLIOGRAPHY.....225

Transliteration Symbols

<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Transliteration</u>	<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Transliteration</u>
ء	'	أ	a
ب	b	ت	t
ث	th	ج	j
ح	□	خ	kh
د	d	ذ	dh
ر	r	ز	z
س	s	ش	sh
ص	□	ض	□
ط	□	ظ	□
ع	'	غ	gh
ف	f	ق	q
ك	k	ل	l
م	m	ن	n
هـ	h	و	w
ي	y	ة	ah
<u>Long Vowels</u>		<u>Short Vowels</u>	
آ	ā	ـَ	a
و	ū	ـُ	u
ي	ī	ـِ	i
Persian Letters			
<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Transliteration</u>	<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Transliteration</u>
پ	p	چ	ch
ژ	zh	گ	g

Foreword



In the Name of Allah, the All-beneficent, the All-merciful

The invaluable legacy of the Household [*Ahl al-Bayt*] of the Prophet (may peace be upon them all), as preserved by their followers, is a comprehensive school of thought that embraces all branches of Islamic knowledge. This school has produced many brilliant scholars who have drawn inspiration from this rich and pure resource. It has given many scholars to the Muslim *ummah* who, following in the footsteps of Imāms of the Prophet's Household ('*a*), have done their best to clear up the doubts raised by various creeds and currents within and without Muslim society and to answer their questions. Throughout the past centuries, they have given well-reasoned answers and clarifications concerning these questions and doubts.

To meet the responsibilities assigned to it, the Ahl al-Bayt World Assembly (ABWA) has embarked on a defence of the sanctity of the Islamic message and its verities, often obscured by the partisans of various sects and creeds as well as by currents hostile to Islam. The Assembly follows in the footsteps of the *Ahl al-Bayt* ('*a*) and the disciples of their school of thought in its readiness to confront these challenges and tries to be on the frontline in consonance with the demands of every age.

The arguments contained in the works of the scholars belonging to the School of the *Ahl al-Bayt* ('a) are of unique significance. That is because they are based on genuine scholarship and appeal to reason, and avoid prejudice and bias. These arguments address scholars and thinkers in a manner that appeals to healthy minds and wholesome human nature.


To assist the seekers of truth, the Ahl al-Bayt World Assembly has endeavored to present a new phase of these arguments contained in the studies and translations of the works of contemporary Shī'ah writers and those who have embraced this sublime school of thought through divine blessing.

The Assembly is also engaged in edition and publication of the valuable works of leading Shī'ah scholars of earlier ages to assist the seekers of the truth in discovering the truths which the School of the Prophet's Household ('a) has offered to the entire world.

The Ahl al-Bayt World Assembly looks forward to benefit from the opinions of the readers and their suggestions and constructive criticism in this area.

We also invite scholars, translators and other institutions to assist us in propagating the genuine Islamic teachings as preached by the Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ).

We beseech God, the Most High, to accept our humble efforts and to enable us to enhance them under the auspices of Imām al-Mahdī, His vicegerent on the earth (may Allah expedite his advent).

We express our gratitude to °ujjat al-Islām wa'l-Muslimīn Shaykh Najmuddīn □abasī, the author of the present book,¹ and Mansoor Limba, its translator. We also thank our colleagues who have participated in producing this work, especially the staff of the Translation Office. 

Cultural Affairs Department
Ahl al-Bayt ('a) World Assembly

¹ Najmuddīn □abasī, *Chashmandāzī beh □ukūmat-e Mahdī*, 2nd ed., 4th printing (Qum: Bustān-e Kitāb-e Qum, Summer 1382 AHS (2003), 224 pages.

Preface



In the Name of Allah, the All-beneficent, the All-merciful

الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ
وَصَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَى سَيِّدِنَا وَنَبِيِّنَا مُحَمَّدٍ وَآلِهِ الطَّاهِرِينَ وَلَعْنَةُ اللَّهِ عَلَى أَعْدَائِهِمْ أَجْمَعِينَ

All praise is due to Allah, the Lord of the worlds, and may the blessings of Allah be upon our Master and Prophet, Muḥammad, and his pure progeny, and may the curse of Allah be upon all their enemies.

The region of Shūsh¹ had been then newly liberated from the clutches of the infidel Ba‘athist forces and the people were gradually returning to the town. At that time, I had the honor to be in the presence of a group of the dear combatants. Given that opportunity, I delivered a series of lectures at the central mosque of that historical city on the topic of the Imām of the Time (‘atfs)² based on the book *Biḥār al-Anwār* compiled by ‘Allāmah Majlisī.

¹ Also known as Susa, Shūsh is an ancient town located in the Iranian western province of Khūzestān and famous for being the site of the Tomb of Daniel. It was once occupied by the Iraqi forces during the 8-year Iraqi imposed war on Iran (1980-88). [Trans.]

² The abbreviation, “‘atfs” stands for the Arabic invocative phrase, ‘*ajjalallāhu ta‘ālā farajah ash-sharīf*’ [may Allah, the Exalted, expedite his glorious advent], which is invoked after mentioning the name of Imām al-Mahdī (‘atfs).

At that moment, my attention was drawn to the point that concerning the Imām of the Time ('atfs), notwithstanding the diverse discussions being raised such as the secret behind longevity, the philosophy of occultation [*ghaybah*], factors leading to the advent and the like, no sufficient research and worthy investigation had been made on the manner of his uprising, system of government and method of rule. As such, I decided to conduct a research on this subject; perhaps, I could offer answers to the questions that everybody, more or less, would pose.

One of the questions that occupy the mind of many people is this: How will the Imām ('atfs) eliminate the various political systems—having different views and capabilities—and establish a unified global system?

How will his administrative system and program operate in which there will be no oppression and tyranny, corruption, and starvation in the world?

This idea prompted me to conduct intensive research and study for four years, and the result of such an endeavor is the book, which is hereby presented to you, dear reader.

In the first part of this book, the state of affairs in the world prior to the advent of the Imām ('atfs)—which is replete with war and killing, destruction and famine, death and disease, tyranny and oppression, and insecurity and aggression—is examined. It is concluded that the people at that time will be in despair with respect to the various doctrines, schools and governments each of which will claim to be the proponent of human rights, happiness and salvation; they will lose hope as to the improvement of the undesirable conditions in the world, and will expect a reformer to come to give them salvation.

The second part of the book deals with the manner of the global uprising and revolution of Ḥaḍrat¹ Mahdī ('atfs); a movement that will start by his declaration at the vicinity of the *Ka'bah* in Mecca. His true followers and companions throughout the world will join him. The central command headquarters will be formed; the army organized; commanders appointed; and extensive operations conducted.

Imām Mahdī ('atfs) will appear and engage in uprooting tyranny and oppression in society. This society is not confined to the land of °ijāz,² the Middle East and Asia; instead, it is global in scope.

Reformation of such a society full of injustice and corruption is indeed not an easy job, and the claimant reformer—the true claimant—would claim a great miracle and this miracle will be shown by him.

¹ Ḥaḍrat: The Arabic word *Ḥaḍrat* is used as a respectful form of address. [Trans.]

² °ijāz: the region in Western Arabia that includes Ṭā'if, Mecca and Medina.

The third part of the book touches on the government of the Last Imām (‘a). In a bid to rule the world freed from tyranny and corruption as well as to realize the sovereignty of Islam, he will establish a powerful and efficient government through the assistance of his capable companions at his time and the great personalities from among the pious predecessors such as Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā (Jesus the Messiah) (‘a), Salmān al-Fārsī, Mālik al-Ashtar, □ālī□ (‘a), etc. Albeit, their roles in overthrowing tyrannical governments cannot be dismissed, their main roles will be in the reconstruction and reformation of the world under the aegis of the universal government of Ḥaḍrat Mahdī (‘atfs).

In this preface, what is worth-mentioning, though briefly, is that the present book is made possible by utilizing tens of books—both Sunnī and Shī‘ah—and studying hundreds of *ḥadīths* in a detailed and well-documented manner.

It is hoped that this book, which is an overview—though an inadequate one—of the Islamic society after the advent of the justice-spreader of Muḥammad’s (□)¹ Progeny, would be accepted by the Imām of the Time (‘atfs), be beneficial to all Muslims who are truly awaiting him throughout the world, and make them ready in paving the ground for his advent.

I beseech God, the Exalted, for the eminent religious authority Imām Khomeinī (r)² who showed us a manifestation of the government of Mahdī (‘atfs) in Iran, to join the company of the prophets and the Imāms (‘a); for the success of those serving the *Ahl al-Bayt*³ (‘a) and the country of the *Ahl al-Bayt*, and succor in safeguarding this prototype of the ideal community of Islam. At this juncture, it is necessary to mention some points:

1. I do not claim to have presented a new subject in this book as the *ḥadīths* mentioned therein have been compiled by the ‘ulamā’ in the past; they have also made conclusions on some cases. The peculiarity of this book,

¹ The abbreviation, “§”, stands for the Arabic invocative phrase, *ṣallallāhu ‘alayhi wa ālihi wa sallam* [may God’s salutation and peace be upon him and his progeny], which is used after the name of the Holy Prophet Muḥammad (§). [Trans.]

² The abbreviation, “r” stands for the Arabic invocative phrase, *raḥmatullāh ‘alayhi, raḥmatullāh ‘alayhā, or raḥmatullāh ‘alayhim* [may peace be upon him/her/them], which is used after the names of pious people. [Trans.]

³ *Ahl al-Bayt*: according to authentic *ḥadīths* recorded in both the Sunni and Shī‘ah sources, the term *Ahl al-Bayt*, and interchangeably *Itrah* and *Āl*, is a blessed Qur’anic appellation that belongs exclusively to the Prophet, ‘Alī, Fāṭimah, Ḥasan, and Ḥusayn (‘a). The members of this Family of five, with the Prophet Muḥammad (§) at its head, were the ones alive at the time the Qur’anic verses regarding their virtue were being revealed to the Prophet (§). However, nine other Imams from the descendants of Imām al-Ḥusayn (‘a) are also in this chosen Family, the final one being Imām al-Mahdī (‘a). For further information, visit: <http://www.al-islam.org/faq>. [Trans.]

however, lies in trying to present the subjects in a new and simple fashion understandable to laymen and free from technical terms and religious controversies.

2. The interpretations made on quoted *ḥadīths* and in places where there are no references indicated are those of the author. As such, through more meticulousness and further research and collation of the *ḥadīths*, other subjects can possibly be presented.

3. I also do not claim that all the *ḥadīths* quoted in this book are authentic [□a□ī□] and flawless. It has been tried, instead, to quote those that have been regarded by the scholars of *ḥadīth* [*mu□addithīn*] and authors as reliable. Similarly, in some cases, no discussion about the chain of transmitters [*sanad*] of the *ḥadīths* has been undertaken as I have not been in a position to posit or negate them. In many cases, meanwhile, through a brief *tawātur*¹ we will find the issuance of authority of the *ḥadīth* especially those that are traceable from the *Ahl al-Bayt* ('a).

4. The *ḥadīths* in this book have been compiled prior to the writing and compilation of the book, *Mu'jam A□adīth al-Imām al-Mahdī* ('atfs) [An Anthology of Traditions on Imām Mahdī].² Therefore, those who are interested to conduct further research on this matter are advised to refer to that book which, thanks to God, I was able to compile, write and publish.

5. In so many *ḥadīths* the words "*as-sā'ah*" [the time] and "*al-qiyāmah*" [the uprising] have been interpreted as the advent [□uhūr] of Ḥaḍrat Mahdī ('atfs). Thus, the *ḥadīths* that indicate the conditions or signs of the "time" and the "uprising" have been presented in this book as the signs of the "advent".

6. Some topics of this book require further research notwithstanding the fact that I have tried to explain them. It is hoped that through the help of God, we could publish subsequent editions of this book with further research.

In the end, as the saying goes, "He who does not extend gratitude to the people does not extend gratitude to the Creator," I have to express my thanks and appreciation to my brothers and friends especially to my two esteemed brothers, Ḥujjat al-Islām Muḥammad Jawād and Ḥujjat al-Islām Muḥammad Ja'far □abasī for their guidance, and to Ḥujjat al-Islām 'Alī Rafī'ī and Ḥujjat

¹ By *tawātur* is meant the multiplicity of the sources of a certain report that leads to certitude in the listener that the report is indeed true. A *mutawātir ḥadīth* is one which has been reported by so many different chains of transmission that such a number of narrators in every generation would normally not be able to agree on fabricating a tradition without the fact of its fabrication becoming known. [Trans.]

² With the cooperation of some seminary scholars, I wrote the said book in five volumes and was published by the Islamic Sciences Foundation of Qum in 1411 AH. In the near future, we will review it, God willing.

al-Islām Sayyid Muḥammad Ḥusaynī Shāhrūdī for rewriting and arranging the topics of this book. ?

Najmuddīn □abāsī
Qum, 1373 AHS



Part 1

The World before the Advent of Imām al-Mahdī ('*atfs*)



When we are in the light, we tend to be less aware of its importance; we appreciate its real value only when we are in the darkness.

When the radiant sun is shining in the sky, we hardly pay any attention to it, but once it is behind the clouds and living creatures have been denied of its light and warmth for sometime, only then do we become aware of its value.

Similarly, we only feel the urgency for the reappearance of the sun of *wilāyah* [guardianship]¹ as we become increasingly aware of the undesirable conditions and state of affairs that will occur before the advent and realize the difficult conditions of the time. A general description of that period, as narrated in the traditions, is as follows:

Prior to the advent of the Imām of the Time (*'atfs*), sedition and chaos, anarchy and insecurity, oppression and injustice, unfairness and unjust dealing, as well as killing and aggression will prevail and encompass the entire world.

¹ For further information on the concepts of guardianship [*wilāyah*] and the guardian [*walī/wālā*], see Murtaḍā Muṭahharī, *Wilāyah: The Station of the Master*, trans. Yahyā Cooper (Tehran: World Organization for Islamic Services, 1982); *Master and Mastership*, <http://www.al-islam.org/mastership>. [Trans.]

Bloody wars will break out between various nations and peoples of the world and massacred bodies will be strewn everywhere. Unjust killing will reach such a proportion that there will be no home or family that will not have lost one or many loved ones. On account of wars, two out of every three men and youth will be killed.


Personal and financial security will be greatly diminished, rendering the roads and highways unsafe. Fear, dread and anxiety will become widespread while early and untimely deaths will increase. Innocent children will be killed due to the worst kinds of tortures inflicted by tyrant rulers. Pregnant women will be violated in the streets and public places. Contagious and deadly diseases—perhaps resulting from the stench of rotting corpses or the use of biological and chemical weapons—will spread. Scarcity of food items, overcharging and famine will make daily life difficult. There will be no germination, growth and blossoming of plants. There will be no rain, or it will come at inopportune times, and therefore, cause destruction. Life will become so difficult that some people will sell their wives and daughters in exchange for a little food.

Under such exacting circumstances, hopelessness will prevail among men and many will consider death to be the best divine gift. At that time, one who passes by a dead body or a grave will whisper to himself: “How I wish I were like him so that I could be free from this life of abjectness!”

At that time, no power, organization or system will be able to prevent all those undesirable occurrences, and punish the tyrants and the powerful for their nefarious acts. No cry for the deliverance of the people will be heard. All the self-assumed champions of human salvation will prove to be traitors and liars, and thus be marginalized, and the people will hope only for a divine savior and a miracle from heaven.

At that time when hopelessness has enveloped the entire human race, by divine grace and mercy, Mahdī the Promised One, will reappear after long years of occultation and waiting, for the salvation of mankind; glad tidings from heaven will be heard throughout the world: “O people of the world! The era of the rule of tyrants has ended and the government of divine justice has begun. The Mahdī has come!” This heavenly voice will breathe the spirit of hope into the hearts of mankind and give relief to those who were deprived and oppressed.

Yes, by grasping these points, one can realize the exigency of the emergence of the divine savior and comprehend the importance and value of the justice-spreading government of al-Mahdī (*'atfs*).

At this point, we will examine in five chapters the chaotic conditions of the world prior to the advent of the Imām (‘a) from the viewpoint of *ḥadīths*. 

Chapter 1

Governments

With governmental support, tenets of religions and schools of thought could be implemented in society. Because of this, every group wants to establish a government in order to attain and implement its own objectives. Islam, which is the most superior heavenly creed, also pursues the establishment of an Islamic government and it considers the formation and preservation of the government of truth as one of the highest religious duties.

The Noble Prophet of Islam (ﷺ) exerted all his efforts in establishing an Islamic government and strove to lay its foundation in the city of Medina. After his death—despite the inspiration of the infallible Imāms (‘a) and the distinguished ‘*ulamā*’ to continue this Islamic government—the governments that came into being, with the exception of a very few cases, have not been divine, and till the time of the advent of Ḥaḍrat Mahdī (‘a) most governments will be based on falsehood.

The *ḥadīths* that have been transmitted to us from the Prophet (ﷺ) and the Imāms (‘a), describe the governments prior to the uprising of al-Mahdī (‘atfs) in general terms. We will now point out some of their characteristics.

The Despotism of Governments

One of the ills which human society will suffer before the advent of the Imām (‘a) is injustice and tyranny perpetrated by governments against the people. In this regard, the Messenger of God (ﷺ) said: “The world will be

filled with tyranny and injustice such that there will be fear and war in every house.”¹

Ḥaḍrat ‘Alī (‘a) said: “The world will be filled with tyranny and injustice such that there will be fear and grief in every house.”²

Imām al-Bāqir³ (‘a) said: “Ḥaḍrat Qā’im⁴ (‘a) will not rise up except at a time full of fear and dread.”⁵

This fear and dread will mostly stem from the rule of despotic and obstinate rulers in the world before the advent of al-Mahdī (‘a).

In this regard, Imām al-Bāqir said: “The Mahdī (‘a) will rise up at a time when the helm of affairs would be in the hands of tyrants.”⁶

Ibn ‘Umar said: “[At the end of time] a noble man having wealth and children will wish for death because of the suffering and adversity he will experience from the rulers.”⁷

It is worthy of note that the followers of the Prophet (ﷺ) will suffer not only from the aggression and encroachment of alien powers but also from their own despotic and self-centered governments in such a way that the earth, notwithstanding its expanse, will become too small for them. Instead of experiencing a sense of freedom, they will feel that they are in bondage. Even now in the Muslim world many leaders in Muslim countries are not on good terms with Islam and the Muslims are alien to them.

In this context, it is thus narrated in the *ḥadīths*:

The Noble Messenger of Islam (ﷺ) said: “At the end of time, a great calamity—greater than which has not been heard of—will be experienced by my *ummah*⁸ in such a manner that the vastness of the earth will become narrow for them, and the earth will be filled with injustice and despotism to

¹ Ibn Abī Shaybah, *Muḥannif*, vol. 15, p. 89; *Kanz al-‘Ummāl*, vol. 14, p. 584.

² Ibn *Kanz al-‘Ummāl*, vol. 14, p. 584; *Iḥqāq al-‘Aqq*, vol. 13, p. 317.

³ Imām Muḥammad al-Bāqir: the fifth Imām from the Holy Prophet’s Progeny. He was born in 57 AH/675 CE and spent most of his life in Medina, until his martyrdom there in 114 AH/732 CE. See Bāqir Sharīf al-Qarashi, *The Life of Imām Mohammed al-Bāqir*, trans. Jāsim al-Rasheed (Qum: Ansariyan Publications, 1999). [Trans.]

⁴ Qā’im: one of the honorific titles of Imām al-Mahdī (‘a), which literally means “the one who rises or stands up”. [Trans.]

⁵ Shajarī, *Amālī*, vol. 2, p. 156. See also Nu’mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 253; Ḥūsī, *Ghaybah*, p. 274; *A’lām al-Warā*, p. 428; *Mukhtaṣar Baḥār al-Darajāt*, p. 212; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 540; *Ḥilyah al-Abrār*, vol. 3, p. 626; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 23; *Bishārah al-Islām*, p. 82; *‘Aqd ad-Durar*, p. 64; *Al-Qawl al-Mukhtaṣar*, p. 26; Muttaqī Hindī, *Burhān*, p. 74; Safārīnī, *Lawā’ih*, vol. 3, p. 8.

⁶ Ibn Ḥawwās, *Malā’im*, p. 77.

⁷ *‘Aqd ad-Durar*, p. 333.

⁸ *Ummah*: the entire Islamic community without territorial or ethnic distinction. [Trans.]

such an extent that the believer will not find a sanctuary in which he could seek refuge.”¹

Some *ḥadīths* have emphasized the Muslims’ entanglements with self-centered leaders and give glad tidings of the advent of a universal savior after the rule of oppressive rulers. This set of *ḥadīths* has made mention of three types of government that will emerge after the Noble Messenger of Islam (ﷺ). These three types of government are the following: the caliphate, the emirates and kingdoms, and finally the tyrants.

The Noble Prophet (ﷺ) said: “After me the caliphate will rule; after the caliphs the emirs will come, followed by kings, and after them tyrants and oppressors will rule, then the Mahdī (‘atfs) will reappear.”²

The Composition of States

If those who administer the government are righteous and efficient individuals, the people will live in comfort and ease. However, if unworthy individuals rule, the people will naturally experience suffering and agony. It is exactly the same condition which will prevail in the period prior to the advent of Ḥaḍrat Mahdī (‘atfs). At that time, states will be formed by treacherous, transgressing and oppressive individuals.

The Noble Prophet of Islam (ﷺ) said: “A time will come when rulers will be oppressors; commanders will be treacherous; judges will be transgressors; and ministers will be tyrants.”³

The Influence of Women on Governments

Another problem that is discussed concerning governments during the end of time is the dominance and influence of women, who will either directly rule over the people or subject the rulers under their sway. This subject has various ramifications. In this regard, Ḥaḍrat ‘Alī (‘a) said: “A time will come when corrupt and adulterous individuals will live in coquetry and bounty and the ignoble will acquire position and status while the just men will become weak.” It was asked: “When will this period come to pass?” He said: “It is at the time when women and bondswomen take charge of the affairs of the people and youngsters become rulers.”⁴

¹ ʿĀkim, *Mustadrak*, vol. 4, p. 465; ‘Aqd ad-Durar, p. 43; Iḥqāq al-ʿĀqq, vol. 19, p. 664.

² *Al-Muʿjam al-Kabīr*, vol. 22, p. 375; *Al-Istīʿāb*, vol. 1, p. 221; *Firdaws al-Akḥbār*, vol. 5, p. 456; *Kashf al-Ghumah*, vol. 3, p. 264; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 596.

³ Shajrī, *Amālī*, vol. 2, p. 228.

⁴ *Al-Kāfī*, vol. 8, p. 69; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 265.

The Rule of the Young

Rulers are supposed to be well-experienced and good managers in order for the people to live in comfort and ease. If, in their stead, youngsters or feeble-minded people would take charge of affairs, one should seek refuge in God from the evil of the sedition [*fitnah*] that will arise.

In this regard, it will suffice to mention two *ḥadīths*:

The Noble Prophet (ﷺ) stated: "Seek refuge in God from the first seventy years and the rule of youngsters."¹

Sa'īd ibn Musayyib said: "A sedition [*fitnah*] will come to pass and its beginning will be the game of the young."²

The Instability of Governments

A government with political stability is the one capable of serving the people of a country, for if it is in a state of continuous change, it would be incapable of undertaking great tasks in the country.

The governments at the end of time will be in a shambles, and sometimes a government will assume office at the beginning of the day and will be removed by sunset. In this regard, Imām aḥ-ḥadiq³ ('a) said: "How will you be when there would be no Imām to guide; would you remain without knowledge and learning; and be fed up with each other? [It will be] the time when you would be put to a test and the good and the bad from among you will be separated from each other and the chaff shall be separated from the grain. At that time swords will be sheathed and unsheathed alternately while war will be a blaze. A government will assume office at the beginning of the day and will be deposed and removed with bloodshed by the end of the day."⁴

¹ Aḥmad ibn ḥanbal, *Musnad*, vol. 2, pp. 326, 355, 448.

² Ibn ḥawwās, *Malāḥim*, p. 60.

³ Ja'far ibn Muḥammad ('a) entitled, *aṣ-Ṣādiq* [The Truthful], is the sixth Imām from the Prophet's Progeny (83-148 AH). Many Sunnī and Shī'ah 'ulamā and scholars attended his classes and seminars. Narrators of tradition have quoted the number of Imām aṣ-Ṣādiq's students as four thousand. The socio-economic conditions of his time necessitated that great efforts be made by His Holiness in the areas of expanding authentic and original Islamic teachings and in the training and education of faithful students. For this reason the books of tradition and other books quote and cite more traditions from Imām Ja'far aṣ-Ṣādiq than from any other of the infallible Imāms. See Shaykh Moḥammed al-Ḥusayn al-Muzaffar, *Imām Al-Ṣādiq*, trans. Jāsim al-Rasheed (Qum: Ansariyan Publications, 1998). [Trans.]


⁴ *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 348.

The Impotence of Powers in Administering Countries

Before the advent of the Imām of the Time (‘atfs), repressive governments will be weakened and this will pave the way for the people’s acceptance of the global government of Ḥaḍrat Mahdī. In this regard, Imām as-Sajjād¹ (‘a) has said concerning the noble *āyah* [verse]:

﴿ حَتَّىٰ إِذَا رَأَوْا مَا يُوعَدُونَ فَيَسْئَلُونَ مَنْ أَضْعَفُ نَاصِرًا وَأَقَلُّ عَدَدًا ﴾

*“When they see what they are promised, they will then know who is weaker in supporters and fewer in numbers.”*²

“The promise that has been given in this verse is related to Ḥaḍrat Qā’im (‘a), his companions, supporters, and enemies. At the time when the Imām of the Time rises up, his enemies will be the weakest of enemies and will have the least number of forces and armaments.”³ 

¹ As-Sajjād: It refers to ‘Alī ibn al-Ḥusayn, the fourth Imām from the Holy Prophet’s Progeny, who is likewise known as Zayn al-‘Ābidīn [Chief of the Worshipers] (658-712 CE). The son of Imām Ḥusayn by the daughter of Yazdgird, the last Sassanid king of Iran, he was not able to carry arms at Karbalā because of illness, and thus he was saved the fate of his three brothers. For most of his life he lived in seclusion in Medina, having contact with only a few select followers. His piety—which is reflected in his prayers whose compilation is known as *Ṣaḥīfah as-Sajjādiyyah*—is proverbial. He is buried in the Baqī‘ cemetery in Medina. [Trans.]

² *Sūrah al-Jinn* 72:24. In this volume, the translation of Qur’anic passages is adapted from Sayyid ‘Alī Qulī Qarā’ī, *The Qur’an with a Phrase-by-Phrase English Translation* (London: Islamic College for Advanced Studies Press, 2004). [Trans.]

³ *Al-Kāfī*, vol. 1, p. 431; *Nūr ath-Thaqalayn*, vol. 5, p. 441; *Iqāq al-‘aqq*, vol. 13, p. 329; *Yanābī‘ al-Mawaddah*, p. 429; *Al-Mu‘ajjah*, p. 132.

Chapter 2

The Religious Condition of the People

In this chapter, we will examine the religious condition of the people prior to the advent of the Imām of the Time ('*atfs*). It can be understood from the *ḥadīths* that during those days, Islam and the Qur'an will remain in name only while the Muslims will be Muslims only superficially. The mosques will no longer be centers for guiding and admonishing the people. The jurists [*fuqahā*] at that time will be the worst jurists on the face of the earth while religion will be bartered for a trivial price and paltry sum.

Islam and the Muslims

Islam means submission to the will and orders of God. Islam is the most superior and the best religion which ensures the felicity of mankind in this world and in the hereafter. However, that which is valuable is the implementation of the precepts of Islam and the Qur'an. At the end of time, everything will be the contrary. In other words, nothing will be left of Islam but its name. The Qur'an will be present in society, but nothing of it will remain except the script written on its pages. The Muslims will be Muslims only in name and no semblance of Islam will be found in them. The Noble Prophet of Islam (ﷺ) said: "A period will come to pass for my *ummah* in which nothing will be left of Islam but its name, and there will be no trace of the Qur'an but its form and outline. The Muslims will be called Muslims in name but of all the people they will be the most alien to Islam."¹

¹ *Thawāb al-A'māl*, p. 301; *Jāmi' al-Akhbār*, p. 129; *Biṣār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 190.

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "A time will soon come to pass when the people will not recognize God and will not know the meaning of monotheism at such a time the Dajjāl (the Anti-Christ) will appear."¹

The Mosques

The mosque is the place for the worship of God, religious preaching, and guiding and enlightening the people. During the early period of Islam, even important administrative work would be carried out in the mosques. *Jihād* would be planned there, and man would realize spiritual ascension [*mi'rāḡ*] from the mosque. But during the end of time, mosques will lose their importance, and instead of being centers for religious teaching, propagation and enlightenment, only their number and splendor will increase, even when they will be cut off from the believers. The Prophet of God (□) said: "During that time the mosques will be beautiful and flourishing but they will be devoid of guidance and enlightenment."²

The Jurists [*fuqahā*]

The scholars and the '*ulamā*' of Islam are the protectors of God's religion on earth, and the guidance and enlightenment of the people lies upon their shoulders. By enduring great difficulties, they deduce religious matters from the fundamental sources of the religion and present them to the people. At the end of time, however, the situation will change, and the '*ulamā*' of those days will be the worst '*ulamā*'. In this regard, the Messenger of God (□) said: "The jurists [*fuqahā*] of those days will be the worst jurists under heaven. Sedition and chaos will start from them and will also return to them."³ Perhaps, it alludes to court-affiliated scholars who justify the crimes of tyrant kings and self-centered rulers, giving them an Islamic twist. It also includes those who are ready to compromise with every offender and criminal such as Wahhabī⁴ preachers on the payroll of kings who regard it as unlawful to struggle against America and Israel, and those who did not speak out against the crimes of Israel and justified the crimes of the Wahhabīs in killing pilgrims to the House of God by citing Qur'anic verses and *ḥadīths*.⁵

¹ *Tafsīr Furāt*, p. 44.

² *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 2, p. 190.

³ *Thawāb al-A'māl*, p. 301; *Jāmi' al-Akhbār*, p. 129; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 190.

⁴ Wahhabī: follower of Muḥammad ibn 'Abdul-Wahhāb, the founder of the Wahhābī sect. For information on Wahhabism, see Āyatullah Ja'far Subḥānī, *Wahhabism* (Tehran: Naba' Organization, 1996); <http://www.al-islam.org/wahhabism>. [Trans.]

⁵ It refers to the Sa'ūdi massacre, in the 1987 *□ajj*, of hundreds of mostly Iranian pilgrims in Mecca at the order of America under the pretext that "The Iranians wanted to take out the


Yes, it must be said that they are the worst *fuqahā* from whom seditions have started and to whom they will also return.

The Desertion of Religion

Another sign of the end of time is the people’s desertion of religion. One day, Imām Ḥusayn (‘a) came to the Commander of the Faithful (Imām ‘Alī) (‘a) while a group of people were sitting around him. ‘Alī (‘a) said to them: “Ḥusayn is your chief. The Messenger of Allah has called him *sayyid* (master) and chief. From among his progeny a man will rise up who resembles me in appearance and character. He will fill the world with justice and equity just as it had been full of injustice and oppression.” It was asked: “When will this uprising occur?” He said: “Alas! It will be at the time when you would abandon religion in the same manner that a wife would take off her clothes for her husband.”¹

The Selling of Religion

If a person’s life is in danger, he becomes obliged to sacrifice his property in order to save his life. If his religion is in danger, however, he must sacrifice his life in order to save his religion. At the end of time, however, religion will be sold for a miserable price, and those who were believers in the morning will become infidels by the afternoon.

In this regard, the Messenger of God (ﷺ) has said: “Woe to the Arabs for the evil that is approaching them. Seditions, like nighttime, are dark and gloomy. A man would be a believer in the morning and an infidel at sunset. A group will sell their religion for a trivial profit and a miserable amount. Anyone at that time who will cling steadfastly to his religion would be like one who will take an ember from the fire or squeeze a thorn in his hands.”² 

Black Stone of the *Ka’bah* and bring it to Qum!” as parroted by the Wahhabī ‘*ulamā*’ throughout the Muslim world. [Trans.]

¹ Ibn ʿĀwūs, *Malāʾim*, p. 144.

² Aḥmad ibn ʿĀnbal, *Musnad*, vol. 2, p. 390.

Chapter 3

Morality before the Advent of Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs)

The weakening of the foundations of the family, of kinship and friendship; the coldness of human feelings and heartlessness are among the salient characteristics of the end of time.

The Coldness of Human Feelings

The Noble Messenger of Islam (ﷺ) thus described the state of affairs of those days from the emotional perspective: "In those days the elders will not have mercy upon subordinates and the young, while the powerful will not have pity on the weak. At that time, God will give permission to him (al-Mahdī) to rise up and reappear."¹ He also said: "The Day of Resurrection [*yawm al-qiyāmah*] shall not take place unless the time would come when a man (out of intense poverty) would look toward his kith and kin, and swear that they are his relatives to receive help from them, but they will give nothing to him. One will seek help from his neighbor and appeal to the right of neighborliness, but his neighbor will not render him any assistance."²

The Prophet (ﷺ) also said elsewhere: "Among the signs of the Day of Resurrection is bad treatment between neighbors and severance of the bonds of kinship."³

¹ *Biṣṣār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 380; vol. 36, p. 335.

² Shajarī, *Amālī*, vol. 2, p. 271.

³ *Akhhbār Iḥṣān*, vol. 1, p. 274; *Firdaws al-Akhhbār*, vol. 4, p. 5; *Ad-Durr al-Manthūr*, vol. 6, p. 50; *Jam' al-Jawāmi'*, vol. 1, p. 845; *Kanz al-'Ummāl*, vol. 14, p. 240.

Since in some *ḥadīths* the word “*as-sā‘ah*” [the time] has been interpreted as the advent of Imām Mahdī ('atfs),¹ I interpreted the *ḥadīths* on the “signs of the time” [*asharāt as-sā‘ah*] as the “signs of the advent”.

Moral Corruption

It is possible for any kind of deviation and corruption to be tolerated somehow except sexual promiscuity, which is very unpleasant and intolerable for dignified and noble people. Among the vilest and most hazardous deviations with which the society prior to the advent of the Imām of the Time ('atfs) will be afflicted would be family insecurity and moral turpitude.

At that time, corruption and moral laxity will spread remarkably. The animalistic acts of pseudo-humans will no longer be seen as indecent and obscene due to the extent of the corruption, and these acts will gradually appear as natural and normal. Corruption will be so widespread that it would be hard to find anyone who could or would want to prevent it.

The celebration of 2,500 years of the Iranian monarchy in 1971 during the rule of Muḥammad Riḍā Pahlavī in which extremely obscene scenes of animalistic life had been presented under the guise of “Shīrāz Arts” earned the condemnation of the Islamic society of Iran. During the time prior to the advent of Imām Mahdī ('a), however, there will be no such protests and the only gesture of protest will be this: “Why were such indecent acts undertaken in the middle of the crossroads?” This is the highest form of forbidding evil that will be undertaken and such a person will be the most pious of his time.

Now, let us look at the *ḥadīths* in order to comprehend the profundity of the tragedy of the loss of Islamic values and the spread of corruption at that time. The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: “The Day of Resurrection will not commence unless a woman would be openly taken away from her guardian in broad daylight and be molested in public in the middle of the road and no one would condemn and prevent this. The best among the people is he who will say: ‘I wish you would have gone a bit away from the middle of the road and done your work!’”²

He (ﷺ) also said: “I swear to the One in Whose hand is the life of Muḥammad (ﷺ) that this *ummah* will not vanish until such a time when man

¹ See *Tafsīr Qummī*, vol. 2, p. 340; *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 465; *Tafsīr Ḥāfī*, vol. 5, p. 99; *Nūr ath-Thaqalayn*, vol. 5, p. 175; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 553; *Kashf al-Ghumah*, vol. 3, p. 280; *Shāfi‘ī, Al-Bayān*, p. 528; *Aḥ-ḥawā‘iq al-Muḥriqah*, p. 162. For information on the terms, *yawm al-uhūr*, *yawm al-karrah* and *yawm al-qiyyamah*, see *Tafsīr al-Mīzān*, vol. 2, p. 108.

² *Iqd ad-Darar*, p. 333; *Ākim, Mustadrak*, vol. 4, p. 495.

would ambush a woman like a wild lion and molest her. The best among the people is he who will say: 'I wish you would have hidden her behind this wall and did not do such a thing in public'.¹

Elsewhere, he (□) said: "Those men, being like animals, will fight one another in the middle of the road, and then one of them will publicly molest the other one's mother, sister and daughter in the middle of the road. Thereafter, he will let others molest them, and they, one after the other, will do this lewd act. But no one will condemn this lewd act or change it. The best among them would be he who will say: 'It would have been better if you would have been far from the highway and away from the public eye'.²

The Spread of Immodest Acts

Muḥammad ibn Muslim said: "I asked Imām al-Bāqir ('a): 'O son of the Messenger of Allah! When will the Qā'im from among you appear?'" The Imām said: "It will be at the time when men would resemble women and women would act like men; at the time when men would suffice themselves with men (i.e. they would do sodomy), and so would women with other women (i.e. they would engage in lesbianism)."³

Another *ḥadīth* with the same content has been reported from Imām a□-□ādiq ('a).⁴ Abū Hurayrah also reported from the Prophet (□), thus: "The Day of Resurrection shall not come to pass until such time when men would vie with one another in committing indecent acts; the same would be the case with women."⁵

Other *ḥadīth* with the same content has also been reported.⁶

The Desire for Less Children

The Prophet of Islam (□) said: "The Day of Resurrection shall not come to pass until such time when someone who has five children would wish for

¹ *Al-Mu'jam al-Kabīr*, vol. 9, p. 119; *Firdaws al-Akhbār*, vol. 5, p. 91; *Majma' az-Zawā'id*, vol. 7, p. 217.

² Ibn □āwūs, *Malā'īm*, p. 101.

³ *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 1, p. 331.

⁴ *Mukhta'ar Ithbāt ar-Raj'ah*, p. 216; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 570; *Mustadrak al-Wasā'il*, vol. 12, p. 335.

⁵ *Firdaws al-Akhbār*, vol. 5, p. 226; *Kanz al-'Ummāl*, vol. 14, p. 249.

⁶ (a) *Al-Kāfī*, vol. 8, p. 39; *Bi'ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 257; *Bishārah al-Islām*, p. 133.

(b) *Al-Kāfī*, vol. 8, p. 38; *Bi'ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 257.

(c) *Bishārah al-Islām*, p. 76; *Ilzām an-Nā'ib*, p. 121.

(d) *Al-Kāfī*, vol. 8, p. 38; *Bi'ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 457.

(e) *Al-Kāfī*, vol. 8, p. 38.

(f) *Bishārah al-Islām*, pp. 36, 76, 133.

(g) *Bishārah al-Islām*, p. 23; *Ilzām an-Nā'ib*, p. 181.

four while one who had four children will say: "I wish I had three!" The one having three children would wish for two, one with two children would wish for one child, and the one with a single child would thus say: "I wish I had no child!"¹

He (□) said in another *ḥadīth*: "A time will come when a man would begrudge having a smaller number of children just as you are now begrudging more children and properties; so much so that one of you will pass by the grave of his brother and wish to be in his place (that he was also dead)—just as animals will wish for a place in the meadow—and he will say: "How I wish I were in his stead!" And this statement is not on account of eagerness to meet the Lord and because of the good deeds he has done before; instead, it is due to the calamities and adversities that will befall him."²

He (□) also said elsewhere: "The Day of Resurrection shall not come to pass unless offspring would decrease in number."³ In this *ḥadīth* the phrase, "*al-walad ghay□ān*" means abortion and contraception, but the word "*ghay□ān*" in another *ḥadīth* means worry, agony, suffering, and resentment.

In other words, by practicing abortion and contraception at that time, the people will prevent increase in the number of children. It can also mean that having a child would make one sad, anxious and furious. Perhaps, it would be due to extreme economic problems, the spread of diseases among children, the lack of facilities, and the propaganda and encouragement to have fewer children, or other factors.

The Increase in the Number of Families without Guardians

The Messenger of Allah (□) said: "One of the signs of the Day of Resurrection is the decrease in the number of men and the increase in the number of women to such an extent that there will be one guardian for every fifty women."⁴

Perhaps, this condition will result from the deaths of men in the successive and protracted wars that will occur.

¹ *Firdaws al-Akḥbār*, vol. 5, p. 227.

² *Mu'jam al-Kabīr*, vol. 10, p. 12.


³ *Ash-Shī'ah wa'r-Raj'ah*, vol. 1, p. 151; *Firdaws al-Akḥbār*, vol. 5, p. 221; *Al-Mu'jam al-Kabīr*, vol. 10, p. 281; *Bi'ār al-Anwār*, 34, p. 241.

⁴ □āyālīsī, *Musnad*, vol. 8, p. 266; Aḥmad ibn □anbal, *Musnad*, vol. 3, p. 120; Tirmidhī, *Sunan*, vol. 4, p. 491; Abū Ya'īlī, *Musnad*, vol. 5, p. 283; □ilyah al-Awliyā', vol. 6, p. 280; *Dalā'il an-Nubuwwah*, vol. 6, p. 543; *Ad-Durr al-Manthūr*, vol. 6, p. 50.

He (□) also said: “The Day of Resurrection shall not come to pass until such a time when thirty women will be in pursuit of one man, and each of them would request him to marry her.”¹

He (□) also said in another *ḥadīth*: “Allah will separate His Friends and chosen ones from the rest so as to make this earth devoid of the hypocrites and misguided as well as their children. A time shall come when fifty women will face a single man. One will say: “O servant of God! Take me.” The other one will say: “Give me refuge.”²

Anas narrated: The Prophet (□) said: “The Day of Resurrection shall not come to pass until such a time when (on account of the death of men and the plentitude of women) a woman would find a pair of shoes along the way and (out of remorse and disappointment) she would say: “This pair of shoes belonged to a man!” At that time, there will be one guardian for every fifty women.”³

Anas said: Wouldn't you like me to narrate a *ḥadīth* I heard from the Prophet (□)? The Prophet (□) said: “Men will die while women will remain.”⁴ 

¹ *Firdaws al-Akḥbār*, vol. 5, p. 509.

² Mufīd, *Amālī*, p. 44; *Biṣṭār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 250.

³ *Aqd ad-Durar*, p. 232; *Firdaws al-Akḥbār*, vol. 5, p. 225.

⁴ Aḥmad ibn □anbal, *Musnad*, vol. 3, p. 377.

Chapter 4

Security before the Advent of Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs)

Chaos and Insecurity

Because of the aggression of the big powers, the security of small governments and weak nations will decline, and freedom and security will be rendered meaningless. The powers dominant in the world will make life so difficult for weak nations and will intensify violating the rights of nations so much that they will not even allow people to breathe!

The Noble Prophet (ﷺ) described that period in this manner: “The *ummahs* (the followers of other creeds and schools) will take hostile action against you just like the hungry rushing to a food container.” Someone said: “Will we be attacked because we will be a minority at that time?” The Prophet said: “Your number at that time will be many but you will become just like paper tigers. God will remove your majesty and grandeur from the hearts of your enemies and sluggishness will dominate your hearts.” Someone asked: “O Messenger of Allah! What is the cause of this sluggishness and weakness?” He (ﷺ) said: “Love of the world and abhorrence of death.”¹

These two undesirable traits mentioned by the Noble Messenger are enough to prevent a nation from attaining freedom and defending its values, and make them used to an ignominious life under any circumstance even to the extent of losing their religion and the principles of their school [*maktab*].

¹ □ ayālīsī, *Musnad*, p. 133; Abū Dāwūd, *Sunan*, vol. 4, p. 111; *Al-Mu'jam al-Kabīr*, vol. 2, p. 101.

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: "The advent of al-Mahdī ('atfs) will be at the time when the world would be in chaos and full of turmoil and disorder with one group rising up against another; neither would the elder be merciful toward the young nor would the powerful have pity on the weak. In such a time God will grant him permission to rise up [*qiyām*]."¹

Insecurity of the Highways

The extent of the chaos, insecurity and cruelty will also include the highways. At that time, God will raise up al-Mahdī and he will capture the strongholds of misguidance from the hands of the powerful. The Promised Mahdī ('atfs) will not only take control of formidable citadels, but he will also conquer hearts blinded to the recognition of the truth and spirituality, and prepare them to accept these truths.

In addressing his beloved daughter, the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: "I swear to God Who has chosen me in truth! Verily, the Mahdī of this *ummah* is from the progeny of al-Ḥasan and al-Ḥusayn ('a). At the time when anarchy and confusion would envelop the whole world; when seditions would arise (one after the other); when highways and roads would become insecure and groups attack each other; when neither would the old have mercy on the young nor the young respect the old; at that moment God would let a person from the progeny of these two (Imāms Ḥasan and Ḥusayn ('a)) rise up to capture [and destroy] the strongholds of misguidance and conquer hearts that have been covered by the veil of ignorance and unawareness (and have been deprived of recognizing the truths). He will rise up at the end of time—just as I rose up at the beginning of time—and fill the world with justice and equity just as it had been full of injustice and oppression."²

Horrendous Crimes

The crimes of oppressors and leaders throughout history have been very dreadful and horrible. The pages of history are replete with oppression, injustices and crimes perpetrated by tyrannical and bloodthirsty rulers such as Genghis Khan, Hitler and Attila³ against weaker nations.

¹ *Ibid.*, vol. 52, p. 154.

² 'Aqd ad-Durar, p. 152; Biṣṣār al-Anwār, vol. 52, pp. 154, 266; Iḥqāq al-ḥaq, vol. 13, p. 116; Al-Arba'ūn Ḥadīthān, (Abū Na'im) Dhakhā'ir al-'Uqbā, p. 135; Yanābī' al-Mawaddah, p. 426.

³ It refers to Attila, called the Scourge of God (circa 406-53 CE) and king of the Huns (circa 433-53 CE), who is called Etzel by the Germans and Ethele by the Hungarians. [Trans.]

Yet, the crimes that will be committed in the world prior to the advent of Imām Mahdī ('atfs) are among the most horrifying crimes that can ever be imagined. The execution of very young boys on the gallows; the burning of children and dipping them into molten liquids; cutting human beings into pieces by iron saws, axes, and mills are among the painful actions that governments which regard themselves as champions of human rights will perpetrate. It is the occurrence of such barbarities that will manifest the importance of the government of Ḥaḍrat Mahdī ('atfs)—based on the description of the *ḥadīths*—as the sanctuary of the deprived.

‘Alī ('a) described the painful events of that period in this manner: “Verily, the Sufyānī will commission a group to gather the children in a certain place. Then, he will heat the oil to be used in burning them. The children will say: ‘If our fathers were opposing you, what is our sin in that we have to be burnt?’ He will select two children with the names of Ḥasan and Ḥusayn and will hang them on the gallows. Thereafter, he will proceed toward Kūfah and behave the same way toward the children there, hanging two children with these same names at the door of Kūfah Mosque. From there he will go out and commit crimes again. While having a spear in his hand, he will pick up a pregnant woman and turn her over to one of his supporters and order him to molest her in the middle of the road. After the molestation, he will rend asunder her stomach and take out the fetus, and nobody would be able to change such a horrible condition.”¹

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: “...God has completed His mercy by means of the son of the Prophet’s daughter ('a); the same person who has the perfection of Mūsā (Moses), the reverence of ‘Īsā (Jesus) and the patience and fortitude of Ayyūb (Job). My fellows! During the period [prior to] his advent there shall be despised and abject people and their heads, just like the heads of the Turks and the people of Daylām, will be given as gifts (to despotic rulers). They would be killed and burnt as well as terrorized, scared and intimidated. The earth would be colored with their blood while the cry and lamentation of their women would be multiplied. They are my true friends. Through them he will quell every sedition. He will eliminate commotions (and insecurities), and he will remove the chains and bonds of bondage from them. May the benediction of God be upon them as they are the guided ones!”²

¹ *‘Iqd ad-Darar*, p. 94; *Ash-Shī‘ah wa’r-Raj‘ah*, vol. 1, p. 155.

² *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 1, p. 311; Ibn Shahr Āshūb, *Manāqib*, vol. 2, p. 297; *A’lām al-Warā*, p. 371; *Ithbāt al-Wa□iyyah*, p. 226.

Ibn 'Abbās said: "Sufyānī and Fulānī will go out and fight each other in such a manner that he (Sufyānī) will rend asunder the stomachs of women and put children in large pots and burn them."¹

Arḡāt said: "Sufyānī will kill whoever would oppose him. By means of saws, he will cut his opponents into two and get rid of them in burning pots. These tyrannies will last six months."²

Wishing for Death by Those who are Alive

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: "I swear to Him in Whose hand is my life! The world shall not end unless the time would come when on passing by the graveyard, a person will throw himself onto the grave and say: 'I wish I were in the place of the owner of this grave!' This is while his problem is not debt but the sufferings and pressures of the day as well as tyranny and oppression."³

By using the word "man" [*rajul*] in the *ḥadīth*, two points can be deduced. One is that the sufferings and predicaments of that period and as such, the wish for death are not confined to a particular sect, nation or group, but everyone will undergo suffering and pain on account of the deplorable circumstances. The other point is that the word "man" indicates the extent of the pressure and difficulty of that period. This is because men usually can endure problems and inequities more than women, and the fact that men would not be able to tolerate and endure the problems and adversities of that period only shows that these predicaments would be very immense and backbreaking.

Abū 'amzah ath-Thumālī narrated: Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "O Abū 'amzah! Ḥaḍrat Qā'im ('atfs) will not rise up unless at the time when fear and dread would intensify, calamities and seditions would prevail (over society) and affliction and misfortune would befall the people. In addition to this, diseases would reach epidemic proportions; an intense and fatal dispute would occur among the Arabs; intense discord among the people would become rampant; religious and sectarian strife would be triggered; and the condition of the people would change to such an extent that every wisher—

¹ Ibn 'ammād, *Fitan*, p. 83; Ibn 'āwūs, *Malā'im*, p. 51.

² 'ākim, *Mustadrak*, vol. 4, p. 520; Al-'āwī *Li'l-Fatāwā*, vol. 2, p. 65; *Muntakhab Kanz al-'Ummāl*, vol. 6, p. 31 (Marginalia of *Musnad Aḥmad ibn 'anbal*); *Iqāq al-'aqq*, vol. 13, p. 293.

³ Aḥmad ibn 'anbal, *Musnad*, vol. 2, p. 636; Muslim, *al-Muslim*, vol. 4, p. 2231; *Al-Mu'jam al-Kabīr*, vol. 9, p. 410; *Ma'ābīr as-Sunnah*, vol. 2, p. 139; *'Aqd ad-Durar*, p. 236.

when he sees the brutality of the people and their violation of the rights of each other—will wish for death every day and every night.”¹

°udhayfah, the Companion of the Prophet, narrated from the Prophet (ﷺ): “Verily, a time shall come upon you when man will wish for his death although he would not be under the pressure of poverty and indigence.”²

Ibn ‘Umar said: “Verily, a time will come upon the people when the believer, on account of the magnitude of afflictions and calamities on earth, would wish for his family and himself to ride on a boat and spend their lives on the sea.”³

The Captivity of the Muslims

°udhayfah ibn al-Yamān said: While mentioning the problems that the Muslims will face, the Prophet (ﷺ) said: “On account of the pressures to be exerted on them, they will sell free people, and men and women will be ushered into slavery. Polytheists will hire Muslims as mercenaries and sell them in the cities, and no one will be offended by this state of affairs—neither the good nor the bad and the debauchee.

“O °udhayfah! The suffering of that period will continue in such a manner that they will lose hope, and they will find comfort and relief in bad ideas. At that point, God will send a man from among the purified ones of my progeny and the good ones of my descendants who is just, blessed and pure without even an iota of connivance (with bad elements) and indulgence (in the bad things). Through his assistance, God will endear the religion, Qur’an, Islam, and its people and humiliate polytheism. He will always fear God and never be arrogant about his relationship [to me]. He will neither put a stone over another stone nor whip anyone unless it is just and for the execution of punishment. Through him, God will annihilate innovations and seditions, open the door of truth, close the doors of falsehood, and let the Muslim captives—from whatever region they come—return to their respective motherlands.”⁴

¹ Nu‘mānī, *Ḡhaybah*, p. 235; °ūsī, *Ḡhaybah*, p. 274; *I’lām al-Warā*, p. 428; *Bi°ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 348; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 540; °ilyah al-Abrār, vol. 2, p. 626; *Bishārah al-Islām*, p. 82.

² Ibn Abī Shaybah, *Mu°annif*, vol. 15, p. 91; Mālik, *Muwatta’*, vol. 1, p. 241; Muslim, *°a°ī° Muslim*, vol. 8, p. 182; Aḥmad ibn °anbal, *Musnad*, vol. 2, p. 236; Bukhārī, *°a°ī° al-Bukhārī*, vol. 9, p. 73; *Firdaws al-Akhbār*, vol. 5, p. 221.

³ *°iqd ad-Darar*, p. 334.

⁴ Ibn °āwūs, *Malāhim*, p. 132.

Sinking into the Ground

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: "Surely, a time shall come to pass on this *ummah* when the day would reach the night and they would ask one another, 'Last night, who was swallowed by the earth?' They would also ask one another, 'Who is still alive from among the tribe of so-and-so?' Or, 'Is there anybody who is still alive from so-and-so clan?'"¹

Perhaps, these words allude to the wars and killings at the end of time in which with the use of advanced weapons of mass destruction, every day more people will be killed and perhaps because of the mounting degree of sins, the earth will swallow its inhabitants.

The Increase of Sudden Death

The Noble Prophet (ﷺ) said: "Among the signs of the Day of Resurrection is paralyzing diseases and sudden death."² He (ﷺ) also said: "The Day of Resurrection shall not come to pass unless the "white death" occurs." He was asked: "O Messenger of Allah! What is "white death"?" He (ﷺ) answered: "Sudden death."³

The Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: "Before the advent of the Qā'im ('atfs), there will be the 'red death' and 'white death'... The 'white death' is plague."⁴

Imām Muḥammad al-Bāqir ('a) said: "The Qā'im ('atfs) will not rise up until there comes a time when intense fear becomes dominant and prior to it there would be contagious diseases of epidemic proportions."⁵

Hopelessness of the People of the World to Attain Deliverance

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: "O 'Alī! The advent of the Mahdī will be at the time when cities will be changed, and the servants of God become weakened and hopeless about the advent of the Mahdī. At that time, Mahdī the Qā'im from my progeny will appear."⁶

Abū 'amzah ath-Thumālī said: Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "The uprising and advent of the Mahdī ('atfs) will be at a time when there will be

¹ *Al-Ma'ālī al- 'Āliyah*, vol. 4, p. 348.

² Shajarī, *Amālī*, vol. 2, p. 277.

³ *Al-Fā'iḳ*, vol. 1, p. 141.

⁴ Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 277; ūsī, *Ghaybah*, p. 267; *I'lām al-Warā*, p. 427; *Kharā'ij*, vol. 30, p. 1152; *Aqd ad-Darar*, p. 65; *Al-Fu'ūl al-Muḥimmah*, p. 301; *irā' al-Mustaḳīm*, vol. 2, p. 249; *Bi'ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 211.

⁵ *Bi'ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 348.

⁶ *Yanābī' al-Mawaddah*, p. 440; *Iḳqāq al-ḳaq*, vol. 13, p. 125.

hopelessness and disappointment in the people concerning his advent and the improvement in deeds.”¹

In this regard, ‘Alī (‘a) said: “Verily, someone from my household will come as my successor, and his successorship will be after a period full of hardship and affliction—a period in which calamity and suffering will become intense and hopes shattered.”²

The Absence of Judges and Refuge

The Noble Prophet (ﷺ) said: “The calamity and affliction on this *ummah* will be such that a man would not be able to find a sanctuary where he could seek refuge from oppression.”³

He also said: “At the end of time intense affliction from their governments will befall my *ummah* in such a manner that a believer would not find a sanctuary where to seek refuge from tyranny.”⁴

In another *ḥadīth*, he said: “Glad tidings to you of the Mahdī from the progeny of Fāṭimah! He will appear in the west and fill the world with justice.” It was asked: “O Messenger of Allah! When will it (his appearance) be?” He (ﷺ) said: “It will be at the time when judges would receive bribes while the people become debauchees.” It was asked: “What will be the characteristics of the Mahdī?” He (ﷺ) said: “He will be separated from his family and relatives; he will be away from his homeland and live far from home.”⁵

Imām al-Bāqir (‘a) said: “You will not see him while waiting for him except at the time when you become like a dead she-goat under the clutches of a fierce animal for which it makes no difference how she was brought. At that time there would be neither a place away from aggression where you could go nor a sanctuary where you could seek refuge.”⁶

Wars, Killings and Seditions

It can be deduced from the *ḥadīths* that prior to the uprising of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘atfs) wars and killings will engulf everywhere. Some *ḥadīths* talk about seditions. A number of *ḥadīths* report protracted wars while other

¹ *Biṣṣār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 348.

² Ibn al-Munādī, *Malā’im*, p. 64; Ibn Abī’l-‘adīd, *Sharḥ Nahj al-Balāghah*, vol. 1, p. 276; *Al-Mustarshid*, p. 75; Shaykh al-Mufīd, *Irshād*, p. 128; *Kanz al-‘Ummāl*, vol. 14, p. 592; *Ghāyah al-Marām*, p. 208; *Biṣṣār al-Anwār*, vol. 32, p. 9; *Iḥqāq al-‘Aqq*, vol. 13, p. 314; *Muntakhab Kanz al-‘Ummāl*, vol. 6, p. 35.

³ Shāfi‘ī, *Bayān*, p. 108.

⁴ *Iqd ad-Darar*, p. 43.

⁵ *Iḥqāq al-‘Aqq*, vol. 19, p. 679.

⁶ *Al-Kāfī*, vol. 8, p. 213; *Biṣṣār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 246.

ḥadīths make mention of the killing of human beings through wars and diseases such as epidemics.

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: "After me you will experience four seditions. In the first sedition, blood will be regarded lawful to be shed while killing will increase in number. In the second sedition, blood and property will be regarded as lawful (to be shed, or plundered) while killing and pillage will increase in number. In the third sedition, the blood, property and honor of the people will be regarded as lawful (to be shed, plundered, or trampled on) and apart from killing and pillage, the honor and chastity of human beings will not be safe. In the fourth sedition—which will be so intense, that it will affect everyone¹ and like the state of a turbulent and agitated ship in the middle of the sea—no one will find refuge from it. The sedition will spread from Shām,² encompass Iraq, and envelop the entire Peninsula (°ijāz). The afflictions of the people will be so intense that no one would be able to complain, and wherever the state of chaos subsides, it will be blazing in another."³

In another *ḥadīth*, he (ﷺ) said: "After me there will be seditions from which there will be no way of relief and in which there will be wars, displacement and homelessness. After this, there will be seditions more intense than the previous ones. Sedition will not yet subside when another one will emerge so much so that no house of the Arabs shall remain that will not catch this fire (of sedition), and no Muslim will be spared from this sedition. At that time a man from my family will appear."⁴

He (ﷺ) also said: "After me sedition will soon emerge to the extent that if there will be calm in one direction, it (sedition) will spread in two other directions until such time that a harbinger from heaven will shout: 'This is Ḥaḍrat Mahdī, your chief and commander!'"⁵

These *ḥadīths* have made mention of a sedition that will emerge prior to the advent of Ḥaḍrat Mahdī ('atfs). Other *ḥadīths*, however, talk about destructive wars, which we will cite below.

'Ammār ibn Yāsir said: "The message and invitation of the *Ahl al-Bayt* [household] of your Prophet at the end of time is this: Avoid any kind of dispute until such time that you would see leaders from the *Ahl al-Bayt*; it

¹ "Affect everyone": *kar va kūr* [deaf and blind] in the original Persian text. [Trans.]

² Shām: up until four centuries ago, it included Syria of today, Lebanon and parts of Jordan and the Occupied Palestine. [Trans.]

³ Ibn ʿāwūs, *Malāʾim*, p. 21; *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 371.

⁴ *ʿAqd ad-Durar*, p. 50.

⁵ *Iḥqāq al-ʿaqq*, vol. 13, p. 295; Aḥmad ibn ʿanbal, *Musnad*, vol. 2, p. 371.

will be the time when the Turks would oppose the Byzantines and wars would increase in number on the earth.”¹

A number of *ḥadīths* talk about killings and murders that will take place prior to the advent of al-Mahdī ('atfs). Some of these *ḥadīths* mention only the killings while some others also specify the extent of the killings.

In this regard, Imām ar-Riḍā² ('a) said: “Before the advent of the Imām of the Time ('atfs) successive and relentless killings will take place.”³

Abū Hurayrah said: “There will be killing in Medina which will break up the Aḡjār az-Zayt⁴ district and compared to it the tragedy of °urrah⁵ would be just like a whip. It will be at that time—after the killing—that two *farsangs*⁶ away from Medina, allegiance would be paid to Ḥaḍrat Mahdī ('atfs).”⁷

Abū Qabīl said: “A person from Banī Hāshim⁸ will take the helm of government and will only kill the Banī 'Umayyah⁹ in such a manner that

¹ Ḳūsī, *Ghaybah* (new edition), p. 441; *Biḡār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 212.

² Imām Riḍā: 'Alī ibn Mūsā, eighth of the Twelve Imāms, born in 148 AH/765 CE and died in 203 AH/817 CE in Ṭūs (Mashhad). He was poisoned by the 'Abbāsīd caliph Ma'mūn, who had superficially appointed him as his successor at first, but then grew fearful of the wide following he commanded. His shrine in Mashhad is one of the principal centers of pilgrimage and religious learning in Iran. See Bāqir Sharīf al-Qarashī, *The Life of Imām 'Alī bin Mūsā al-Riḍā*, trans. Jāsim al-Rasheed (Qum: Ansariyan Publications, 2001); Muḥammad Jawād Faḍlallāh, *Imām al-Riḍā: A Historical and Biographical Research*, trans. Yāsīn T. al-Jibourī, <http://www.al-islam.org/al-rida/index.html>; Muḥammad Mahdī Shamsuddīn, “Al-Imām ar-Riḍā ('a) and the Heir Apparency,” *At-Tawḥīd Journal*, <http://www.al-islam.org/al-tawhid/heir.htm>. [Trans.]

³ *Qurb al-Asnād*, p. 170; Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 271.

⁴ Aḡjār az-Zayt: a place in the city of Medina which was the venue of Ḳalāh al-Istisqā (special prayer in asking for rain) during the time of the Holy Prophet (Ḳ). See *Mu'jam al-Buldān*, vol. 1, p. 109.

⁵ After the martyrdom of Imām al-Ḥusayn ('a) and the people's uprising in Medina against Yazīd ibn Mu'āwiyah, at the order of Yazīd the inhabitants of Medina were massacred and this event saw more than ten thousand people killed and this place is called °urrah Wāqim. See *Mu'jam al-Buldān*, vol. 2, p. 249.

⁶ *Farsang* (*parasang*): a unit of length equal to 6 kilometers. [Trans.]

⁷ Ibn Ḳāwūs, *MalāḲim*, p. 58.

⁸ Banī Hāshim: the Meccan clan to which the Prophet and his descendants belonged. See Ja'far SubḲānī, *The Message*, chap. 4, “Ancestors of the Prophet,” <http://www.al-islam.org/message/5.htm>. [Trans.]

⁹ Banī Umaayyad is the name of dynasty of Muslim caliphs who gained control of the administration of Islamic territories in 40 AH (662 CE) after the first four caliphs and held sway until 132 AH (750 CE). The founder of this dynasty was Mu'āwiyah, son of Abū Sufyān, by whom hereditary monarchy as well as aristocracy were revived in stark contrast and opposition to basic Islamic articles of faith. History is replete with innumerable instances of cruelty and oppression perpetrated in the world of Islam during the Umayyad rule, including murder, banishment and imprisonment of the followers of the *Ahl al-Bayt* [the

only a few of them will be left. Then, a person from the Banī 'Umayyah will emerge and kill two persons in lieu of one person (killed from his side) so much so that none will be left except women."¹

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) thus said: "I swear to God in Whose hand is my life! The world will not end unless the time would come when neither the killer would know for what reason he is killing, nor would the reason behind the killing of the killed be clear, and chaos will spread everywhere. At that time, both the killer and killed will go to hell."²

The Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: "Before the advent of the Qā'im ('atfs), the world will face two types of death: the "red death" and the "white death". The red death is through the sword (weapon) while the white death is through plague."³

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "There are two stages of occultation [*ghaybah*] for the Qā'im of Muḥammad's Progeny, the second of which is longer than the first. At that time, death and killing will engulf the people."⁴ Jābir said: I asked Imām al-Bāqir ('a): "At what time will this affair (uprising of the Mahdī ('atfs)) happen?" In reply, the Imām ('a) said: "O Jābir! How could this affair happen when the number of the slain between 'Irāh⁵ and Kūfah has not yet increased?"⁶

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "Before the advent of the Qā'im ('atfs), two types of death will surface: the "red death" and the "white death". The number of people to be killed will be such that in every group of seven, five will die."⁷

The Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: "Ḥaḍrat Mahdī ('atfs) will not appear unless one-third of the people are killed; another one-third die; and the remaining one-third survive."⁸

Family of the Prophet] as epitomized by the martyrdom of Imām Ḥusayn and his votaries in Karbalā' by the forces of Yazīd, son of Mu'āwiyah. [Trans.]

¹ Ibn □āwūs, *Malā'īm*, p. 59.

² *Firdaws al-Akḥbār*, vol. 5, p. 91.

³ Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 277; Shaykh Mufīd, *Irshād*, p. 359; Shaykh a□-□usī, *Ghaybah*, p. 267; □irā□ al-Musta'īm, vol. 2, p. 249; Bi□ār al-Anwār, vol. 52, p. 211.

⁴ Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 173; *Dalā'il al-Imāmah*, p. 293; *Taqrīb al-Ma'ārif*, p. 187; Bi□ār al-Anwār, vol. 52, p. 156.

⁵ Hīrah: a city three miles (6.6 kilometers) away from Kūfah in Iraq. See *Mu'jam al-Buldān*, vol. 2, p. 328.

⁶ Shaykh a□-□usī, *Ghaybah* (new edition), p. 446; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 728; Bi□ār al-Anwār, vol. 52, p. 209.

⁷ *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 665; *Al-'Adad al-Qawīyyah*, p. 66; Bi□ār al-Anwār, vol. 52, p. 207.

⁸ Ibn □āwūs, *Malā'īm*, vol. 58; *I□qāq al-□aqq*, vol. 13, p. 29.

They asked the Commander of the Faithful (‘a): “Is there any sign and symbol for the advent of Ḥaḍrat Mahdī (‘atfs)?” He (‘a) said: “Yes, horrible killing, sudden death and epidemics.”¹

And as reported in *Irshād al-Qulūb*: “sudden and mass killings [*qatl adh-dharī*].”²

And as reported in *Madīnah al-Mu‘ājiz*: “vile and despicable killings [*qatl ar-raḥī*].”³

And as reported in *‘ilyah al-Abrār*: “deplorable killings [*qatl al-faḥī*].”⁴

The meaning of the *ḥadīth* is this:

“Yes, there are signs for the advent of Ḥaḍrat Mahdī (‘atfs) such as mass, deplorable and despicable killings; sudden and successive deaths; and epidemics.”

Muḥammad ibn Muslim said: Imām aḥ-ḥādīq (‘a) said: “The Imām of the Time will not appear unless two-thirds of the people in the world would die.” It was asked: “If two-thirds of the people would be killed, how many will remain?” He answered: “Are you not satisfied (and would you not like) to be among the remaining one-third?”⁵

Imām aḥ-ḥādīq (‘a) has said: “The affair (advent of Imām al-Mahdī (‘atfs)) shall not be realized until nine-tenth (9/10) of the people are eliminated.”⁶

Imām ‘Alī (‘a) said: “...At that time none of the people will remain except one-third (1/3) of them.”⁷

The Noble Prophet of Islam (ﷺ) said: “Out of ten thousand people nine thousand and nine hundred will be killed and none will remain alive except very few.”⁸

Ibn Sīrīn said: “Ḥaḍrat Mahdī (‘atfs) will not appear unless out of nine persons, seven would be killed.”⁹

From the foregoing set of *ḥadīths*, the following points can be deduced:

¹ ḥuḥaynī, *Hidāyah*, p. 31.

² *Irshād al-Qulūb*, p. 286.

³ *Madīnah al-Mu‘ājiz*, p. 133.

⁴ ḥilyah al-Abrār, p. 601.

⁵ Shaykh aḥ-ḥūsī, *Ghaybah* (new edition), p. 339; *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 655; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 510; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 207; *Ilzām an-Nāḥib*, vol. 2, p. 136; Ibn ḥammād, *Fitan*, p. 91; *Kanz al-Ummāl*, vol. 14, p. 587; *Muttaqī Hindī*, *Burhān*, p. 111.

⁶ *Ilzām an-Nāḥib*, vol. 2, pp. 136, 187; *Aqd ad-Darar*, pp. 54, 59, 63-65, 237; Nu‘mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 274; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 242.


⁷ ḥuḥaynī, *Hidāyah*, p. 31; *Irshād al-Qulūb*, p. 286.

⁸ *Majma‘ az-Zawā‘id*, vol. 5, p. 188.

⁹ Ibn ḥawūs, *Malāḥim*, p. 78.

1. Before the advent of al-Mahdī ('atfs), killings will take place and large numbers of the people will be killed, and those who will be left would be less than those who would be killed.

2. A number of those who will be killed will be killed in wars and another number will be killed by contagious diseases. Most probably, these contagious diseases will be engendered by those killed in war. Similarly, it is probable that this group of people would die through chemical and biological weapons that generate diseases.

3. The small number that will be left would be the Shī'ah and followers of the Imām of the Time ('atfs) because they are the ones who will pay allegiance to the Mahdī ('atfs). This fact can also be inferred from the statement of Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) when he said: "Are you not satisfied (and would you not like) to be among the remaining one-third?"

Chapter 5

The Economic Condition of the World During the Advent of Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs)

It can be deduced from the *ḥadīths* quoted in this chapter that as the effect of rampant corruption and decadence, the decline of love and compassion, and the eruption of wars, the world will be in a bad condition from an economic perspective so much so that heaven will also not have mercy on the people, and rainfall, which is a divine mercy, will also turn into a wrath and be destructive for them.

Yes, at the end of time, rain will be scarce or will shower at inopportune times, thus bringing destruction to agriculture. Lakes and rivers will dry up; plants will not bear fruit; and trade will decline. Poverty and starvation will become widespread to such an extent that in order to fill their empty stomachs some people will bring their daughters and wives to the market and exchange them for a meager amount of food.

Scarce and Inopportune Rainfall

The Noble Prophet of Islam (ﷺ) said: “A time would come on mankind when God will not send down rain in its appropriate time and season, and there will be no rain. He will send it down outside its time and season.”¹

The Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: “...Rain will fall in summer and in warm seasons.”¹

¹ *Jāmi' al-Akhbār*, p. 150; *Mustadrak al-Wasā'il*, vol. 11, p. 375.

In this regard, Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "Before the advent of Ḥaḍrat Qā'im ('atfs) there will be a year with such heavy downpours that fruits will be destroyed and dates will spoil on the trees. Thus, during that period, you will not experience doubt and skepticism."²

The Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: "...Rain will become scarce such that the ground will not let grain grow while the sky will not shower rain. At that time, the Mahdī ('atfs) will appear."³

'A□ā' ibn Yasār said: "Among the signs of the Day of Resurrection is that rain will shower but grain will not grow."⁴

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "...At the time when Ḥaḍrat Qā'im and his companions rise up, water on earth will be unobtainable, and the believers will groan and passionately pray to God to send down water so that they can drink."⁵

Drying up of Lakes and Rivers

The Noble Prophet (□) said: "From the effect of the drying up of the Nile River, cities in Egypt will be destroyed."⁶

Ir□āt said: "At that time, the Euphrates, rivers and fountains will dry up."⁷

It has also been reported: "The water of Lake □abaristān will dry up; the date-palms will not bear fruit; and the Za'r Fountain in Shām will cease to flow."⁸

Similarly, it has also been reported: "...Rivers will dry up, and inflation and famine will last for three years."⁹

The Prevalence of Inflation, Starvation, Poverty, and Trade Recessions

A man asked the Prophet (□): "O Messenger of Allah! When will the Day of Resurrection be?" He (□) said: "The one asked (the Prophet himself) is as unaware as the questioner on this matter, but [the approach of] the Day of Resurrection has some signs one of which is the convergence of markets."

¹ Daw□ah al-Anwār, p. 150; Ash-Shī'ah wa'r-Raj'ah, vol. 1, p. 151; Kanz al-'Ummāl, vol. 14, p. 241.

² Shaykh al-Mufīd, *Irshād*, p. 361; Shaykh a□-□ūsī, *Ghaybah*, p. 272; A'lām al-Warā, p. 428; *Kharā'ij*, vol. 3, p. 1164; Ibn □āwūs, *Malā□im*, p. 125; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 214.

³ Ibn □āwūs, *Malā□im*, p. 134.

⁴ 'Abdur-Razzāq, *Mu□annif*, vol. 3, p. 155.

⁵ *Dalā'il al-Imāmah*, p. 245.

⁶ *Bishārah al-Islām*, p. 28.

⁷ Ibn □ammād, *Fitan*, p. 148.

⁸ *Bishārah al-Islām*, p. 191; *Ilzām an-Nā□ib*, p. 161.

⁹ *Bishārah al-Islām*, p. 98.

He asked: “What is meant by the ‘convergence of markets’?” He (□) answered: “The recession of markets and trade, and the lack of growth of plants and crops notwithstanding the rain.”¹

The Commander of the Faithful (‘a) said to ‘Abdullāh ibn ‘Abbās: “Trade and transactions will increase, but only small profits will be earned by the people and after that extreme famine will break out.”²

Muḥammad ibn Muslim said: I heard Imām a□-□ādiq (‘a) saying: “Before the advent of Ḥaḍrat Qā’im (‘atfs), God will send signs for the believers.” I said: “May God make me your ransom! What are those signs?” He (‘a) said: “The same things that God mentioned:

﴿وَلَنَبْلُوَنَّكُمْ بِشَيْءٍ مِّنَ الْخَوْفِ وَالْجُوعِ وَنَقْصٍ مِّنَ الْأَمْوَالِ وَالْأَنْفُسِ وَالثَّمَرَاتِ وَبَشِّرِ الصَّابِرِينَ﴾

*“We will surely test you with a measure of fear and hunger and a loss of wealth, lives, and fruits; and give good news to the patient.”*³

Then, he (‘a) said: “God will test the believers on account of the fear caused by the kings of the dynasties of so-and-so at the end of their rule; what is meant by starvation is price inflation; what is meant by the insufficiency of properties is trade recession and the inadequacy of income; what is meant by the loss of lives is widespread, sudden deaths; and what is meant by the lack of fruits is the deficiency of agricultural earnings and products. Then, glad tidings be to the steadfast for hastening the advent of al-Qā’im (‘a) at that moment.”⁴

As reported in *A’lām al-Warā*, “*qillah al-mu‘āmilāt*” means market recession and lack of transactions.⁵

Imam a□-□ādiq (‘a) said: “...At that time when the Sufyānī emerges, food items will be scarce; people will experience famine; and rainfall will be scarce.”⁶

Ibn Mas‘ūd said: “At the time when there would be no more trade and roads are destroyed, al-Mahdī (‘atfs) will appear.”⁷

Perhaps, the bad conditions of the markets at that time would be the result of destruction of the centers of production and industry, the decrease of

¹ *At-Targhīb wa’t-Tarhīb*, vol. 3, p. 442.

² Ibn □āwūs, *Malā□īm*, p. 125.

³ *Sūrah al-Baqarah* 2:155.

⁴ *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 650; Nu‘mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 250; Shaykh al-Mufīd, *Irshād*, p. 361;

A’lām al-Warā, p. 456; ‘Ayyāshī, *Tafsīr ‘Ayyāshī*, vol. 1, p. 68.

⁵ *A’lām al-Warā*, p. 456.

⁶ Ibn □āwūs, *Malā□īm*, p. 133.

⁷ *Al-Fatāwā al-□adīthiyyah*, p. 30; Muttaqī Hindī, *Burhān*, p. 142; *Aqd ad-Darar*, p. 132.


manpower, the diminution of purchasing power, famines, insecurity on the highways, etc.

It has been stated in *Musnad Aḥmad ibn ʿanbal*: “Before the advent of al-Mahdī ('atfs) people will experience intense starvation for three years.”¹

Abū Hurayrah said: “Woe to the Arabs for the evil approaching them! Intense starvation will break out and mothers will cry because of their children’s hunger.”²

The Bartering of Women in Exchange for Food Items

The depth of the tragedy of famine and starvation prior to the advent of Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs) will be such that some will be forced to barter their daughters for meager quantities of food.

Abū Muḥammad reported from a man from Morocco: “Al-Mahdī will not appear unless a man (due to the intensity of poverty and indigence) would bring his daughter or beautiful bondwoman and say: ‘Who will buy this girl from me for food items?’ It is under these circumstances that al-Mahdī ('atfs) will appear.”³ 

¹ Ibn Mājah, *Sunan Ibn Mājah*, vol. 2, p. 1363.

² *Kanz al-ʿUmmāl*, vol. 11, p. 249.

³ Ibn ʿāwūs, *Malāʾīm*, p. 59.

Chapter 6

The Rays of Hope

In the previous discussions, we became acquainted with some of the *ḥadīths* concerning the global state of affairs prior to the advent of the Imām of the Age ('*a*). Although these *ḥadīths* mention confusions and problems to such an extent that they might discourage people, there are other *ḥadīths* that point out bright aspects and rays of hope for the Shī'ah, the faithful and the committed people.

Some of these *ḥadīths* concern the believers of whom the earth will never be empty and who will be also present during these pressing circumstances all over the world prior to the advent of al-Mahdī ('*atfs*).

A number of *ḥadīths* point out the role of the '*ulamā*' and Islamic scholars during the period of occultation, and present them as catalysts of change in the society in every epoch as well as the protectors of religion. Some statements of the Infallibles ('*a*) mention the special role of the city of Qum prior to the advent of the Imām of the Time ('*atfs*) while a number of *ḥadīths* also indicate the active role of Iranians before and after the advent of the Imām ('*atfs*).

The True Believers

Sometimes, we come across some *ḥadīths* in answer to those who imagine that a time will come when society will be devoid of the presence of faithful human beings. The Imām ('*a*) has dismissed this notion, mentioning the existence of believers in every epoch.

Zayd az-Zurrād said: I told Imām a□-□ādiq ('a): "I am afraid that we would not be among the faithful." He ('a) asked: "Why do you think so?" I answered: "It is because there is none among us who prefers his brother over the dirham and dinar. On the contrary, I observe that we prefer the dirham and dinar over our brothers in faith which the *wilāyah* [guardianship] of the Commander of the Faithful ('a) have brought us together. Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "It is not as you say; you are the people of faith though your faith will not be perfected until the time when the Qā'im of Muḥammad's Progeny ('atfs) rises up. At that time, God will perfect your wisdom and you will become perfect believers.

I swear to God in Whose hand is my life! There are people throughout the world in whose sight the entire world would not be equal to the wing of a gnat."¹

The Role of the Shī'ah 'Ulamā' and Scholars

Every time the veils of darkness and ignorance cast their shadows on human society, it was the '*ulamā*' and religious scholars who used to perform their obligation very well of wiping away ignorance and foolishness from thinking and eliminating corruption and decadence from the people. It can be understood from the *ḥadīths* that the '*ulamā*' will also adequately play this role at the end of time.

Imām al-°ādī ('a) said: "If there would be no '*ulamā*' during the period of occultation [*ghaybah*] of the Qā'im of Muḥammad's Progeny ('a) who would guide and draw the people toward him, defend the religion through divine proofs, and save the weak Shī'ah from the guiles of Satan and his legions as well as from the mischief of the Nā□ibīs (the enemies of the *Ahl al-Bayt* ('a)), no one would be left clinging to the religion of God and everyone will become apostates [*murtaddīn*]. Yet, they will assume the responsibility of leading the hearts of the weak Shī'ah to the utmost decree and keep on it just as the captain of the ship controls the rudder and control of the ship. Therefore, they are the people of the highest station in the sight of God."²

Regarding the revival of religion in every century the Messenger of Allah (□) said: "Verily, Allah, the Exalted, will send for this *ummah* a

¹ *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 67, p. 351.

² *Tafsīr Imām al-'Askarī*, p. 344; *I□tijāj*, vol. 2, p. 260; *Muniyyah al-Murīd*, p. 35; *Ma□ajjah al-Bay□ā'*, vol. 1, p. 32; *□ilyah al-Abrār*, vol. 2, p. 455; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 2, p. 6; *Al-'Awālim*, vol. 3, p. 295.

person who will revive [yujaddid] the religion at the beginning of every century.”¹

These two *ḥadīths* and others similar to them explicitly point out the role of the ‘*ulamā*’ during the period of the occultation in thwarting the plots of the mischief-mongers as well as in reviving the spirit of religion.

Of course, proving this point during our time does not necessitate much proof and evidence, for the role of Ḥaḍrat Imām Khomeinī (r) in exterminating the nefarious designs of the enemies, which had threatened the foundations of religion in the contemporary world, is proverbial to all.

Undoubtedly, the dignity that Islam has acquired in this age is through the blessings of the Islamic Revolution of Iran and its Founder, Ḥaḍrat Imām Khomeinī (r).

The Role of the City of Qum at the End of Time

At the time when human society will move toward degeneration and decadence, a ray of hope will be made manifest and there will be a group of people who will serve as the standard-bearers of light in the heart of all this darkness. The city of Qum at the end of time will assume this pivotal role.

There are many *ḥadīths* that express words of appreciation for this holy city and its upright people whose existence has emanated from the pure fountain of the school of the *Ahl al-Bayt* (‘a) and who have shouldered the mission of conveying the divine message.

The Infallible Imāms (‘a) have made various statements regarding Qum and its role in the cultural movement during the period of occultation [*ghaybah*] of the Imām of the Time (‘atfs). We shall mention some of them below.

Qum as the Sanctuary of the Ahl al-Bayt (‘a)

It can be deduced from some *ḥadīths* that Qum and its inhabitants are the keys and models of Shi‘ism and *wilāyah* [guardianship].

Thus, they will label as “Qummī” anyone they would like to introduce as a lover and enthusiast of the *Ahl al-Bayt* (‘a).

A group of people came to Imām a□-□ādiq (‘a) and said to him: “We are among the people of Rey.”² He (‘a) said: “Hail to our brothers from among the people of Qum!” They repeated several times: “We have come from Rey.” And he (‘a) also repeated his statement. Then, he (‘a) said: “God

¹ عن النبي (ص): إِنَّ اللَّهَ تَعَالَى يَبْعَثُ لِهَذِهِ الْأُمَّةِ عَلَى رَأْسِ كُلِّ مِائَةِ سَنَةٍ مِنْ يُجَدِّدُهَا دِينَهَا.

² Rey or Shahr-e Rey (City of Rey): the old Tehran and located at the southern part of today’s Tehran. [Trans.]

has a sanctuary which is in Mecca. There is also a sanctuary for the Messenger of Allah and it is in Medina. Kūfah is the sanctuary of the Commander of the Faithful ('a) while our (*Ahl al-Bayt*'s) sanctuary is the city of Qum and a daughter from my progeny with the name of Fāṭimah will soon be buried there. Anyone who would sincerely pay homage [*ziyārah*] to her, paradise would be incumbent upon him."

The narrator said: "Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) made this statement at the time when Imām Mūsā al-Kā□im¹ ('a) was not yet born."²

□afwān narrated: One day I was with Abū'l-Ḥasan—Imām al-Kā□im ('a)—and he ('a) talked about the people of Qum and their love and enthusiasm for Ḥaḍrat Mahdī ('atfs). The Seventh Imām ('a) said:

"May God have mercy on them and be pleased with them." Then he ('a) continued: "Heaven has eight doors one of which is for the people of Qum. From among the cities and countries, they are among our excellent and chosen Shī'ah. God has blended our *wilāyah* [guardianship] and friendship with their disposition and essence."³

It can be inferred from these *ḥadīths* that the Infallible Imāms ('a) have regarded the city of Qum as a base of the lovers of the *Ahl al-Bayt* ('a) and Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs). Perhaps, the door of heaven apportioned for the city of Qum is the door for the strugglers [*bāb al-mujāhidīn*] or the door of the excellent ones [*bāb al-akhyār*] especially when in the *ḥadīths* the inhabitants of Qum have also been described as excellent Shī'ah.

The City of Qum as a Proof for Others

In every epoch, God chooses some persons as proofs for others, and since they are treading the path of God, they struggle in exalting the word of Allah [*kalimatullāh*].⁴ God will assist them and keep the mischief of enemies away from them. During the period of occultation [*ghaybah*] of the Imām of the Age ('atfs), Qum and its people would be the proofs for other people.

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "Difficulties and problems will be kept away from Qum and its people and a time will come when Qum and its people would be the proofs for all people. This will be so during the period of

¹ Imām Mūsā al-Kā□im, son of Imām Ja'far a□-□ādiq: seventh of the Twelve Imāms, and father of Ḥaḍrat Fāṭimah al-Ma'□ūmah who was buried in Qum. He was born in Medina in 744 CE and died in prison in Baghdad in 799 CE. [Trans.]

² *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 60, p. 217.

³ *Ibid.*, p. 216.

⁴ "Word" in the Qur'an has been used for various meanings, among them: the promise of truth; monotheism; Islamic call. [Trans.]

occultation [*ghaybah*] of our Qā’im till his advent, and if it were not so, the earth would swallow its inhabitants.

Verily, the angels will keep difficulties away from Qum and its people, and no tyrant will ever target Qum; otherwise, God will break his back and afflict him with pain, calamity or enmity. God will let tyrants forget the name of Qum and its people just as they have forgotten God.”¹

The Center for the Diffusion of Islamic Culture

Another point worthy of note in the *ḥadīths* is that the city of Qum during the period of occultation [*ghaybah*] will serve as a center for the conveyance of the message of Islam to the downtrodden of the world, and its ‘*ulamā*’ and religious scholars will be a proof for the people of the world.

In this regard, Imām a□-□ādiq (‘*a*) said: “The city of Kūfah will soon be void of believers, and knowledge and learning will depart from there and like a snake coiled up in a corner, it will be restricted to and emerge from a city named “Qum”, which will become the center of knowledge and virtue as well as the repository of learning and perfection so much so that no (intellectually) downtrodden person—including the secluded women—would ever be left on the surface of the earth without being aware of religion. And that time will be near the time of the advent of our Qā’im.

“God will appoint Qum and its people as his (al-Mahdī’s) vicegerents and if it were not so, the earth will swallow its inhabitants and no proof will remain on earth. Therefore, from the city of Qum knowledge and learning will spread to the east and west, and the proof for the people of the world will be completed such that no person will be left unaware of religion and knowledge. At that time, Ḥaḍrat Qā’im (‘*atfs*) will appear and through him divine wrath will descend upon the infidels. It is because God will not take vengeance from His servants unless the proofs were completed on them.”²

It is reported in another *ḥadīth*: “Had it not been for the people of Qum, religion would have vanished.”³

The Confirmation of the Way of Thinking in Qum

It can be understood from some *ḥadīths* that the Infallible Imāms (‘*a*) had approved of the method of the ‘*ulamā*’ of Qum.

In this regard, Imām a□-□ādiq (‘*a*) said: “There is an angel above Qum, who is spreading his two wings over it, and no tyrant will ever target Qum; otherwise, God would melt him like salt in water.”

¹ *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 60, p. 213.

² *Ibid.*; *□afīnah al-Bi□ār*, vol. 2, p. 445.

³ *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 60, p. 217.

Then, he ('a) pointed to 'Isā ibn 'Abdullāh Qummī and said: "God's benediction be upon Qum! The Lord of the universe will fill their land with rain and send His blessings upon them while transforming their sins into good deeds. They are the people of bowing [*rukū*], prostration [*sujūd*], standing [*qiyām*], and sitting [*qu'ūd*] in prayer just as they are jurists, scholars and people of comprehension [*ahl-e dark*]. They are the people of insight, revelation and perspicacity in the worship of the excellent servants of God."¹

Similarly, in reply to a person who said, "I want to ask something from you, which has not been asked by anyone before me and will never be asked by anyone after me," the same Imām ('a) said: "Perhaps, you want to ask about *ashr* and *nashr*."

He said: "By the One Who appointed Muḥammad as the giver of glad tidings and as the warner, yes."

He ('a) said: "The *hashr* of all people is toward the Bayt al-Muqaddas (in Jerusalem) except that of a mausoleum in a mountainous land to be called "Qum" and divine teachings will be part of their features."

While half-standing, the man asked: "O son of the Messenger of Allah! Does it pertain to the people of Qum?"

The Imām ('a) replied: "Yes, it pertains to them and anyone who shares their conviction and words."²

The Companions of Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs)

The point worthy of note is that the *ḥadīths* talk about the people of Qum, the companions of the Mahdī ('atfs) and those who will rise up to claim the right of the *Ahl al-Bayt* ('a).

'Affān al-Baḥrī said: Imām aḥ-ḥādīq ('a) said to me: "Do you know why Qum is named "Qum"?" I replied: "God, His Messenger and you know better." He said: "It is named Qum as such because its inhabitants will rally behind the Qā'im of Muḥammad's Progeny ('atfs) and rise up along with him ('atfs). Along this line, they will show their perseverance and assist him ('atfs)."³

In another *ḥadīth*, the ḥādīq (Truthful) of Muḥammad's Progeny (Imām Ja'far aḥ-ḥādīq) ('a) said in this regard: "The soil of Qum is holy and its inhabitants are from us and we from them. No tyrant will have any bad intention toward it; otherwise, his punishment would quickly follow [in the hereafter]. Of course, this will be the case as long as they do not betray their

¹ *Ibid.*

² *Ibid.*, p. 218.

³ *Ibid.*, p. 218.

brothers, for if they did so, God will let the mischievous tyrants dominate them. The people of Qum, however, are the companions of our Qā’im and campaigners for our truthfulness.”

Then, the Imām raised his head toward the sky and prayed, thus: “O God! Protect them from any sedition [*fitnah*] and save them from any type of perdition.”¹

Iran as the Country of the Imām of the Time (‘atfs)

A *ḥadīth* about the city of Qum, which elucidates the role of the Iranians before and after the advent of the Promised Mahdī (‘a), was quoted. A closer examination, however, of the statements of the Infallibles (‘a) will show that they (‘a) have paid particular attention to Iran and its people, and on various occasions, they have made mention of their role in supporting religion and preparing the ground for the advent of al-Mahdī (‘atfs).

At this point, it will suffice to cite some *ḥadīths*, extolling the Iranians and those paving the ground for the advent:

Commendation for the Iranians

‘Abdullāh ibn ‘Abbās said: The Persians were mentioned in the presence of the Prophet (ﷺ). He (ﷺ) said: “The people of Persia—the Iranians—are a group from us, the *Ahl al-Bayt*.”²

When the *Mawālī* or the *A‘ājam*³ were mentioned in the presence of the Prophet (ﷺ), the Holy Messenger (ﷺ) said: “I swear to God that I have more trust in them than you.”⁴

¹ *Ibid.*

² *Dhikr Iḥṣān*, p. 11.

³ In linguistics, *mawālī* and *mawlā* have various technical implications. In volume one of *Al-Ghadīr*, ‘Allāmah Amīnī has reported twenty-two (22) terms, which in technical terms, in the Qur’an and in the *ḥadīth*, have five (5) sets of meanings: *walā’* ‘*ataq*, *walā’ islām*, *walā’ alaf*, *walā’ qabīlah* and *walā’* in contrast to the Arabs, and what is meant is the non-Arabs. This meaning is mostly meant by the scholars of ‘*ilm ar-rijāl*’ (science of the chain of *ḥadīth* transmission and transmitters). See *At-Taqrīb wa’t-Taysīr*, vol. 2, p. 333. The secret behind this is that they equate this word with the Iranians probably on the basis that the use of the word to mean them prevails [*ghalabeh-ye wajūdī*] or its usage [*isti’mālī*] referring to them is so much that some have claimed that this is what it really means.

In addition, in the writings of past and contemporary scholars, it has been interpreted as such and in imitating them, we have interpreted it accordingly though we do not insist on it.

By “Persia” [*Fārs*] they used to mean those lands in contrast to the Roman Empire that included today’s Iran and some parts of other lands that were once parts of Iran at that time.

⁴ *Dhikr Iḥṣān*, p. 12. See *Al-Jāmi‘ aḥṣā’ al-ḥadīth*, vol. 5, p. 382.

‘Abdullāh ibn ‘Abbās said: “At the time when they would hoist the black banners toward you, you have to give honor to the Persians because your government is with them.”¹

One day Ash‘ath said to ‘Alī (‘a) in protest: “O Commander of the Faithful! Why have these *A‘ājam* who have come around you overtaken us?” He (‘a) got angry and said in reply: “Who will excuse me in facing you useless corpulent people each of whom is like a donkey wallowing in his bed, and on account of fame and pride, is turning away from the community? Are you commanding me to cast them away? I will never cast them away to become one of the ignorant.”² By God Who split the seed and created the creatures! They will stand up to fight against you in order to return you to the fold of religion just as you drew the sword in bringing Islam to them.”³

Those Who are Paving the Ground for the Advent of Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs)

The main part of the *ḥadīths* regarding the events prior to the advent and the companions of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘a) is related to Iran and the Iranians, whom have been referred to in various terms such as Persians, ‘*ajam*/a‘*ājam*, the people of Khurāsān, the people of Qum, the people of □āleqān, the people of Rey, etc.

By studying the collection of these *ḥadīths*, we will arrive at the conclusion that prior to the advent of the Imām of the Time (‘atfs), a religious system and defender of the Infallible Imāms (‘a) will be established in Iran, which would be acceptable to the Imām of the Time (‘atfs), and that the people of Iran will have a key role in his (‘atfs) uprising, which we will deal with in the section on the uprising. It would suffice here to mention some *ḥadīths*:

The Messenger of Allah (□) said: “A people from the east will stage an uprising and pave the ground for the uprising of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘a).”⁴

He (□) also said: “The black banners will come from (the people of) the east whose hearts are like pieces of iron (in firmness). Then, anyone who

¹ *Rāmūz al-A□ādīth*, p. 33.

² In view of the fact that the market of Kūfah was mostly populated by Persians speaking the Persian language (as can be understood from *Mustadrak al-Wasā'il*, vol. 13, p. 250, *ḥadīth* 4), it becomes very clear that the *mawālī* against whom Ash‘ath was protesting and whom the Commander of the Faithful (‘a) was defending were precisely the Iranians.

³ *Al-Ghārāt*, vol. 24, p. 498; *Safīnah al-Bi□ār*, vol. 2, p. 693; Ibn Abī'l-□adīd, *Shar□ Nahj al-Balāghah*, vol. 20, p. 284.

⁴ Ibn Mājah, *Sunan Ibn Mājah*, vol. 2, p. 1368; *Al-Mu‘jam al-Awsa□*, vol. 1, p. 200; *Majma‘ az-Zawā'id*, vol. 7, p. 318; *Kashf al-Ghammah*, vol. 3, p. 268; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 599; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 51, p. 87.

becomes informed of their movement will go to them and pay allegiance to them even to the extent of traveling over ice if it is necessary.”¹


Imām al-Bāqir (‘a) said: “It is as if I can see a community [*qawm*] that will stage an uprising in the east and demand rights but rights will not be given to them. They will seek again but again it will not be granted to them. In such a state of affairs, swords will be unsheathed and put on the shoulder. At that time, the enemy will accept their demands, but they will not accept it. They will stage an uprising and will not give the right to anyone except to its owner of the affair (rightful owner). Their killed ones are martyrs. If I knew them, I would have prepared myself for the owner of this affair.”²

Imām al-Bāqir (‘a) said: “The companions of Ḥaḍrat Qā’im (‘atfs) are three-hundred and thirteen, and they are from the progeny of ‘*ajam* (non-Arabs).”³

Although ‘*ajam* is said to be the non-Arabs, the Iranians are certainly included and keeping the other *ḥadīths* in view, there will be the presence of a large number of Iranians among the special forces of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘atfs).

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: “Soon after you, there will be a community [*qawm*] at whose feet the world will be gathered—they will traverse the world—and the doors of the world will be opened for them, the men and women of Persia will serve them. The earth will be rolled under their steps in such a manner that anyone of them could cover the distance from east to west within an hour. They will sell neither themselves to the world nor its inhabitants. The world is also not their delight and portion.”⁴

The Commander of the Faithful (‘a) said: “Blessed is □āleqān! It is because God has treasures there which are neither gold nor silver. Instead, they are men of faith who have really recognized God and they will be the companions of the Mahdī (Guided One) of Muḥammad’s Progeny (‘atfs) at the end of time.”⁵

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) also said regarding Khurāsān: “There are treasures in Khurāsān but they are not gold and silver. Instead, they are men whom God and His Messenger love.”⁶ 

¹ ‘*Aqd ad-Darar*, p. 129; Shāfi‘ī, *Bayān*, p. 490; *Yanābī‘ al-Mawaddah*, p. 491; *Kashf al-Ghammah*, vol. 3, p. 263; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 596; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 51, p. 84.

² Nu‘mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 373; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 243; Ibn Mājah, *Sunan Ibn Mājah*, vol. 2, p. 1366; □ākīm, *Mustadrak*, vol. 4, p. 464.

³ Nu‘mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 315; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 2, p. 547; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 369.

⁴ *Firdaws al-Akḥbār*, vol. 3, p. 449.

⁵ Shāfi‘ī, *Bayān*, p. 106; Muttaqī Hindī, *Burhān*, p. 150; *Kanz al-‘Ummāl*, vol. 14, p. 591; *Yanābī‘ al-Mawaddah*, p. 491; *Kashf al-Ghumah*, vol. 3, p. 286.

⁶ *Kanz al-‘Ummāl*, vol. 14, p. 591.



Part 2

The Global Revolution of Imām al-Mahdī (*‘atfs*)



Chapter 1

The Uprising of the Imām of the Time ('*atfs*)

There are different *ḥadīths* regarding the day of the uprising of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('*atfs*). Some say, *Nū Rūz* (Iranian New Year) is the day when the uprising begins while others mention 'Āshūrā' (Muḥarram 10) as the day. A number of *ḥadīths* say Saturday while others say Friday as the day of the uprising. There is no contradiction for it to be on *Nū Rūz* and 'Āshūrā' at the same time because the two are calculated based on the Islamic solar and lunar calendars respectively, and the occurrence of these two occasions at the same time as well as their coincidence with either Friday or Saturday is possible. What seems problematic and contradictory is the mention of two days of the week (Friday and Saturday) as the day of the uprising. This group of *ḥadīths*, however, can also be reconciled, for if we grant that the chains of transmission of the *ḥadīths* are authentic, then the *ḥadīths* that specify Friday as the day of advent [□*uhūr*] allude to the day of the advent and uprising [*qiyām*] while those that specify Saturday can be interpreted to mean the day of the establishment and stabilization of the divine system and the subjugation of opponents.¹

¹ The specification of Friday vis-à-vis Saturday and *Nū Rūz* vis-à-vis 'Āshūrā' as the day of uprising in two sets of *ḥadīths* can also be reconciled in another way. It is possible that the day of uprising falls on a Saturday (*Nū Rūz*, or 'Āshūrā') in the eastern part of the world while it is still the preceding Friday (*Nū Rūz*, or 'Āshūrā' as the case may be) in the western part of the globe. For example, 9:40 am of a certain day in Tehran, Iran (GMT +03:30) is still 7:10 pm the preceding day in Hawaii, USA (GMT -10:00). [Trans.]

It must be stated that the *ḥadīths* that regard Saturday as the day of uprising are worthy of consideration in terms of the chains of transmission. But from the same perspective the *ḥadīths* that mention Friday also do not present a problem.

Now, let us draw our attention to the pertinent *ḥadīths*:

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "The Qā'im of ours, the *Ahl al-Bayt*, will appear on Friday."¹

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "It is as if I can see Ḥaḍrat Qā'im on Saturday on the day of 'Āshūrā' standing between *Rukn* and *Maqām* (Mecca) with Jibrīl (Archangel Gabriel) standing in front of him and calling on the people to pay allegiance to him."²

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) also said: "Ḥaḍrat Qā'im ('a) will stage the uprising on Saturday on the day of 'Āshūrā', the day when Imām Ḥusayn ('a) was martyred."³ He ('a) also said: "Do you know what day—'Āshūrā—is this? It is the day when God accepted the repentance of Ādam (Adam) and 'awwā (Eve); the day when God split the sea for the Children of Israel, drowned Pharaoh and his legion and made Mūsā (Moses) triumphant over Pharaoh; the day when Ibrāhīm (Abraham) was born; the day when God accepted the repentance of the people of Yūnus (Jonah); the day when Ḥaḍrat 'Isā was born; and the day when Ḥaḍrat Qā'im will stage the uprising."⁴

Another *ḥadīth* with the same content has also been reported from Imām al-Bāqir ('a),⁵ but in this *ḥadīth* the reliability of Ibn Ba□ā'inī who is included in the chain of transmitters is debatable.

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "On the night of twenty-third (Dhū'l-°ijjah), there will be a call in the name of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) and on the day of 'Āshūrā', the day of the martyrdom of Ḥusayn ibn 'Alī ('a), he will stage the uprising."⁶

He ('a) also said: "Nū Rūz (Iranian New Year) is the day when the Qā'im from among us, the *Ahl al-Bayt*, will appear."⁷

¹ *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, p. 496; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 279.

² Shaykh a□-□ūsī, *Ghaybah*, p. 274; *Kashf al-Ghammah*, vol. 3, p. 252; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 290.

³ *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 653; Shaykh a□-□ūsī, *Ghaybah*, p. 274; *At-Tahdhīb*, vol. 4, p. 333; *Malādh al-Akhyār*, vol. 7, p. 174; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 285.

⁴ *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 285.

⁵ *At-Tahdhīb*, vol. 4, p. 300; Ibn □āwūs, *Iqbāl*, p. 558; *Kharā'ij*, vol. 3, p. 1159; *Wasā'il ash-Shī'ah*, vol. 7, p. 338; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 98, p. 34; *Malādh al-Akhyār*, vol. 7, p. 116.

⁶ Shaykh a□-□ūsī, *Ghaybah*, p. 274; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 290.

⁷ *Al-Muḥadhdhab al-Bāri'*, vol. 1, p. 194; *Khātūnābādī*, *Arba'in*, p. 187; *Wasā'il ash-Shī'ah*, vol. 5, p. 228; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 571; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 208.

Announcement of the Advent

The advent of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('a) will be announced first by a heavenly harbinger. Then, while leaning against the *Ka'bah* (in Mecca) he ('a) will announce his advent in inviting to the truth.

The Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: "When the harbinger from heaven calls, 'The truth is with the Progeny of Muḥammad; if you are looking for guidance and felicity, cling steadfastly to the Progeny of Muḥammad (□),' Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will appear."¹

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) also said in this regard: "Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will appear in Mecca during the '*Ishā*' (night) prayer. Having with him the banner and shirt of the Prophet and having performed the '*Ishā*' prayer, he will raise his voice, saying: 'O people! I remind you to remember God and your standing before God (on the Day of Resurrection) while He has completed His proof (in the world) on you, commissioned the prophets, and sent down the Qur'an. God commands you not to associate partners with Him and be obedient to Him and His prophets. Revive that which has been enjoined by the Qur'an to revive, and extinguish that which has been urged by the Qur'an to be extinguished. Be the votaries of the path of guidance and have piety and virtue because the annihilation and doom of the world has come and the trumpet of farewell has already been blown.

'I invite you toward God and His Messenger, the implementation of His Book, the annihilation of falsehood, and the revival and restoration of the life conduct [*sīrah*] of the Prophet (□).' Then, he will appear in the midst of his three hundred and thirteen companions."²

The Slogan on the Flag of the Uprising

Every government has a flag by which it can be recognized, and uprisings and revolutions also have particular flags whose logos bespeak of the objectives of their leaders. The global revolution of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('a) has also a specific flag on which a slogan has been inscribed. Of course, although there are differences with respect to the slogan on his flag, there is a common point in all the statements and that is: It invites the people to obey him ('a).³

¹ *Al-ḥawāli 'l-Fatāwā*, vol. 2, p. 68; *Iḥqāq al-ḥaqiq*, vol. 13, p. 324.

² Ibn ḥammād, *Fitan*, p. 95; *Aqd ad-Durar*, p. 145; Safārīnī, *Lawā'ih*, vol. 2, p. 11; Ibn Tāwūs, *Mulaḥim*, p. 64; *ḥirā al-Mustaqīm*, vol. 2, p. 262.

³ Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said to Abū ḥanzal: "It is as if I can see the Qā'im from among us, the *Ahl al-Bayt*, entering Najaf and when he reaches the innermost point of Najaf, he will hoist the banner of the Messenger of Allah (□). Once the banner is unfurled, the angels who were present at the Battle of Badr will descend upon him." 'Ayyāshī, *Tafsīr 'Ayyāshī*, vol. 1, p. 103;

Now, it would suffice to mention some pertinent instances:

It has been recorded in a *ḥadīth*: "It is thus written on the flag of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs): 'Listen and obey him'."¹

Elsewhere, we read: "The slogan of al-Mahdī's ('atfs) flag is *al-bay'atu lillāh* [the allegiance for the sake of Allah]."²

The Gladness of the People of the World for the Uprising

It can be understood from the *ḥadīths* that the uprising of al-Mahdī ('a) will bring delight to the people of the world. This gladness and pleasure has been expressed in various forms. Some *ḥadīths* mention the gladness of the inhabitants of the heaven and the earth while others mention the gladness of the dead ones. Some *ḥadīths* discuss the people's reception of the uprising and others mention their wish for their dead to be revived.

Here, we will quote some of these *ḥadīths*:

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: "All the inhabitants of the heaven and the earth—the birds, beasts of prey, and fishes of the sea—will be happy and glad at the advent of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs)."³

The Commander of the Faithful 'Alī ('a) said in this regard: "When Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) appears, his blessed name will be mentioned on different tongues and people will be so full of love for him that no name other than his will be on their minds and tongues and friendship with him will enliven their spirits."⁴

The phrase "*yashribūna ubbuh*"—"they are imbibing his love"—has been used in *ḥadīth* where love for him has been compared to water or a pleasant beverage, which the people will drink with the utmost pleasure and their love for him will influence their existence.

While enumerating the painful events and seditions prior to the advent of al-Mahdī ('a), Imām ar-Riḍā ('a) said concerning the progress and relief after the advent [ﷺ]: "At that time, progress and relief will be experienced by the people such that the dead will wish for a new life."⁵

Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 308; *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 672; *Tafsīr Burhān*, vol. 1, p. 209; *Bi'ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 326.

¹ *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 582; *Bi'ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 305.

² Ibn 'ammād, *Fitan*, p. 98; Ibn 'āwūs, *Malā'im*, p. 68; *Al-Qawl al-Mukhta'ar*, p. 24; *Yanābī' al-Mawaddah*, p. 435; *Ash-Shī'ah wa'r-Raj'ah*, vol. 1, p. 210.

³ 'Aqd ad-Darar, pp. 84, 149; *Al-Bayān*, p. 118; 'ākim, *Mustadrak*, vol. 4, p. 431; *Ad-Durr al-Manthūr*, vol. 6, p. 50; *Nūr al-Ab'ār*, p. 170; Ibn 'āwūs, *Malā'im*, p. 142; *Iqāq al-aqq*, vol. 13, p. 150.

⁴ *Al-āwī Li'l-Fatāwā*, vol. 2, p. 68; *Iqāq al-aqq*, vol. 13, p. 324.

⁵ *Kharā'ij*, vol. 3, p. 1169; Shaykh a-ūsī, *Ghaybah*, p. 268.

Imām a□-□ādiq also said in this regard: "It is as if I can see the Qā'im ('atfs) sitting on the pulpit of Kūfah and wearing the armor of the Messenger of Allah (□)." Then, he ('a) mentioned some of his characteristics and continuing, he said: "No believer will be left in the grave without having such a delight and rejoicing that the dead will visit one another and congratulate each other on his advent."

In some *ḥadīth* the phrase "*tilka 'l-farajah*"—"progress in the affair"—has been used. By the blessing of his advent, the dead will be revived, and based on this report, the grandeur of the movement and leadership of the uprising will be such that it will also impact upon souls.¹

Deliverance of the Deprived

There is no doubt that the uprising of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will lead to the establishment of justice and the uprooting of all deprivations from human society. In this section, we will examine the steps he ('a) will take at the time of the uprising for the oppressed and the deprived, which will render him as the sanctuary of the deprived.

The Noble Prophet of Islam (□) said: "The Mahdī ('atfs) will appear from my *ummah*. God will send him as the redresser of the people's grievances. At that time, the people will live in grace."²

The Messenger of Allah (□) did not confine the redresser of grievances to a particular sect or nationality; rather, by using the word "*nās*" [people or mankind] he (□) regarded him ('atfs) as the savior of all human beings. Prior to his advent, therefore, the state of affairs will be such that all peoples of the world would pray for his advent.

Jābir said: Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "Ḥaḍrat Mahdī will appear in Mecca... God will relieve the land of °ijāz (through him) and he ('a) will set free the prisoners from among the Banī Hāshim."³

Abū Ar□āt said: "(From Mecca) Ḥaḍrat Mahdī will go to Medina and set free the prisoners from among the Banī Hāshim. Then, he will go to Kūfah and set free again the prisoners from among the Banī Hāshim there."⁴

Sha'rānī said: "When Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) arrives in the west, the people of Andalus (Spain) will meet him, saying: 'O *Walī* [Friend] (and

¹ *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 530.

² *Aqd ad-Darar*, p. 167.

³ Ibn □ammād, *Fitan*, p. 95; Ibn □āwūs, *Malā□im*, p. 64; *Al-Fatāwā al-□adīthiyyah*, p. 31; *Al-Qawl al-Mukhta□ar*, p. 23.

⁴ Ibn □ammād, *Fitan*, p. 83; *Al-□āwī Li'l-Fatāwā*, vol. 2, p. 67; Muttaqī Hindī, *Burhān*, p. 118; Ibn □āwūs, *Malā□im*, p. 64.

Proof) of Allah! Assist the Iberian Peninsula as it and its people have been in perdition.”¹

The Role of Women in the Uprising of Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs)

In studying the *ḥadīths* on the role of women before and after the advent of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs), we find that a few important points need to be made. Although some *ḥadīths* say that most of the followers of Dajjāl (Anti-Christ) would consist of the Jews and women,² there would be also faithful and chaste women, who had experienced hardships in preserving their faith, and would have been profoundly affected by the state of affairs prior to the advent [□ *uhūr*].

Some women would possess firmness of stance and *jihād*-like spirits, and wherever they go, they would expose the inhuman essence of the Dajjāl as part of their propaganda war against him.

Some *ḥadīths* say that during the uprising of al-Mahdī ('atfs) four-hundred women will accompany him and most of them will be engaged in activities concerned with health and medical treatment. Of course, there is disagreement in the *ḥadīths* concerning the number of women who will be accompanying al-Mahdī ('atfs) during his uprising. Some *ḥadīths* mention thirteen women who will be with Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) during his advent, who perhaps would be among his earlier forces. Other *ḥadīths* have mentioned seven thousand eight hundred as the number of women who will assist him ('atfs), and they are the women who will accompany him ('atfs) after the uprising and help him ('atfs) in many activities.

In the book, *Fitan*, Ibn °ammād said: “The number of the faithful at the coming of Dajjāl will be twelve thousand men and seven thousand seven or eight hundred women.”³

The Messenger of Allah (□) said: “‘Īsā ibn Maryam (Jesus the son of Mary) will descend from heaven in the midst of eight hundred men and four hundred women who would be the best inhabitants on the surface of the earth and the most righteous of the people of the past.”⁴

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: “By God, three thousand or so will come and there will be also fifty women from among them.”⁵

¹ Qur□ubī, *Mukhta□ar Tadhkirah*, p. 128; *I□qāq al-□aqq*, vol. 13, p. 260.

² Aḥmad ibn □anbal, *Musnad Ibn □anbal*, vol. 2, p. 76; *Firdaws al-Akḥbār*, vol. 5, p. 424; *Majma' az-Zawā'id*, vol. 7, p. 15.

³ Ibn □ammād, *Fitan*, p. 151.

⁴ *Firdaws al-Akḥbār*, vol. 5, p. 515; *Kanz al-'Ummāl*, vol. 14, p. 338; *At-Ta□rīq*, p. 254.

⁵ 'Ayyāshī, *Tafsīr 'Ayyāshī*, vol. 1, p. 65; Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 279.

Mufaḥḥal ibn 'Umar said: Imām aḥ-ḥādiq ('a) said: "Thirteen women will accompany Ḥaḍrat Qā'im." I asked: "What will they be doing and what role will they play?" He ('a) replied: "They will treat the wounded and attend to the sick just like what the [female] companions of the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) were doing." I asked: "Will you mention the names of the thirteen women?" He ('a) said: "They are Qanwā the daughter of Rashīd, Umm Ayman, °abābah Wālabiyyah, Sumayyah the mother of 'Ammār ibn Yāsir, Zubaydah, Umm Khālīd Aḥ-masiyyah, Umm Sa'īd °anafīyyah, ḥiyānah Māshaḥ, and Umm Khālīd Jahaniyyah."¹

In the book, *Muntakhab al-Baḥā'ir*, two women with the name of Watīrah and Aḥ-bashiyyah have been mentioned and they have been considered as among the companions and supporters of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs).² Some ḥadīths have only mentioned the existence of women among those who will accompany him ('a) and have not mentioned their number.

The Historical Background of the Women Involved in the Advent

In the ḥadīths Mufaḥḥal ibn 'Umar has clearly mentioned the number of women who will accompany Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('a) at thirteen but among this number only nine have been introduced by name and description. Imām aḥ-ḥādiq's ('a) emphasis on the names was meant for us to study their biographies and salient features, and after research we obtained some points that give a convincing indication to a possible reason behind Imām aḥ-ḥādiq's ('a) emphasis on mentioning their names.

Each of these individuals has her own special features, but all of them have shown their own merits in the struggle against the enemies of God. Some, such as Siyānah, the mother of martyrs, have also attained martyrdom in a heartrending manner. Others such as Sumayyah had endured the most difficult tortures in the path of defending their Islamic convictions, and remained steadfast till the last breaths in defending their faith. Another group such as Umm Khālīd had deprived themselves of the favor of having healthy physical bodies and became disabled for the sake of preserving Islam. Another group such as Zubaydah had never exchanged Islam for the glitters of the world and material fortune. On the contrary, they utilized those facilities in the way of faith and helped patronize the °ajj, which is one of the important manifestations of Islam and pillars of the religion. Yet another group had the honor of being wet nurses of the leaders of the Islamic *ummah* and rearing outstanding children while they themselves possessed lofty spiritual stations proverbial to all and sundry. Some of them had been from

¹ *Dalā'il al-Imāmah*, p. 259; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 75.

² *Bayān al-A'imma*, vol. 3, p. 338.

the family of martyrs and they themselves had carried their half-dead bodies and talked with them.

Yes, they have blazing hearts, who by demonstrating those acts of bravery, have proved that they could take part in shouldering the heavy burden of the global Islamic government.

Now, we will embark on introducing a number of them:

1. □iyānah

It is stated in the book, *Khā□ā'i□ Fā□imiyyah*: "In the government of al-Mahdī ('atfs) thirteen women will be revived and return to the world to treat the wounded. One of them is □iyānah who had been the wife of °izqayl (Ezekiel) and hairdresser of the daughter of Pharaoh. Her husband, °izqayl (Ezekiel), was the cousin and treasurer of Pharaoh. It has been said that °izqayl is a believer from the family of Pharaoh and believed in Mūsā (Moses), the prophet of his time.¹

The Prophet (□) said: "During the night of ascension [*mi'rāj*] on the way between Makkah al-Mu'a□□amah (Holy Mecca) and Masjid al-Aqsā (in Jerusalem) I suddenly smelled something pleasant, which I had never smelled before. I asked Jibrā'il (Archangel Gabriel): "What is this pleasant smell?" He answered: "O Messenger of Allah (□)! It is that of the wife of °izqayl; she believed in Ḥaḍrat Mūsā ibn 'Imrān (Prophet Moses, the son of Amran) and used to hide her faith. She used to work as a hairdresser in the harem of Pharaoh. One day, she was busy dressing the hair of Pharaoh's daughter when the comb suddenly fell from her hand and she inadvertently said, "*Bismillāh*" [in the name of Allah]. Pharaoh's daughter asked her: "Do you worship my father?" She answered: "No, but I do worship the One Who has created your father and will take him away. Pharaoh's daughter hurriedly went to her father and said: "The woman who dresses hair in our palace has faith in Mūsā (Moses). The Pharaoh summoned and asked her: "Do you not recognize my divinity?" □iyānah answered: "I will never turn away from the Real Lord and I will never worship you." The Pharaoh ordered a cupreous furnace be set ablaze and as the furnace became red-hot, he ordered all her children thrown into the fire in her presence.

At the moment when they wanted to take her sucking baby in her arms and throw him into the fire, □iyānah was moved and became inclined to disavow her religion when suddenly, by the decree of God, the child spoke and said to its mother: "O mother! Be patient for you are on the right path." The soldiers of Pharaoh threw □iyānah and her sucking child into the fire

¹ *Riyā□īn ash-Sharī'ah*, vol. 5, p. 153; *Kha□ā'i□ Fā□imiyyah*, p. 343.

and burned them alive. Their ashes were poured into this very ground and until the Day of Resurrection this ground will have this pleasant scent...”¹

She is among the women who will be revived and returned to the world and render service under the command of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘atfs).

2. Umm Ayman

Her name is Burkah. She was a bondwoman of the Prophet (ﷺ) who took her as an inheritance from his honorable father, ‘Abdullāh ibn ‘Abdīl-Muḥallib, and she took the responsibility of attending to the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ).²

The Prophet (ﷺ) used to address her as mother and say: “She is among the surviving members of my family.” She had a son from her first husband, ‘Ubayd Khazarjī, whose name was Ayman. Ayman was among the migrants [*muhājirīn*] (from Mecca to Medina) and the strugglers [*mujāhidīn*], and he attained martyrdom in the Battle of °unayn.

Umm Ayman is the person who, when intense thirst overpowered her on the way to Medina from Mecca (during the migration) and was about to die, a bucket of water was sent down to her from heaven. When she drank from it, she never became thirsty again.³

She cried profusely during the death of the Prophet (ﷺ). When they asked her for the reason behind her profuse crying, she said in reply: “By God! I knew that he (ﷺ) will pass away, but I’m weeping because of the termination of revelation.”⁴

In relation to the issue of Fadak, Fāṭimah az-Zahrā (‘a) introduced her as a witness and testifier, and she finally passed away during the Caliphate of ‘Uthmān ibn ‘Affān.

3. Zubaydah

She is the wife of Hārūn ar-Rashīd⁵ and had been one of the Shī‘ah. When Hārūn was informed of her faith, he swore to divorce her. She was famous for doing good deeds. At the time when a goatskin of water cost one gold dīnār in Mecca, she gratuitously gave water to the pilgrims and perhaps to the people of Mecca as well. By constructing tunnels across the mountains, she brought water to Masjid al-°arām from a place 10 miles

¹ *Minhāj ad-Dumū‘*, p. 93.

² *Tārīkh a-ḥ-ḥabarī*, vol. 2, p. 7; ḥalabī, *Sīrah*, vol. 1, p. 59.

³ ‘Abd ar-Razzāq, *Muḥannif*, vol. 4, p. 309; *Al-Iḥābah*, vol. 4, p. 432.

⁴ *Tanqīḥ al-Maqāl*, vol. 3, p. 70.

⁵ Hārūn ar-Rashīd: the ‘Abbasid caliph who reigned from 180-193 AH (786-809 CE) and was the contemporary of the seventh and eighth Imāms, Mūsā al-Kāḥim and ar-Riḍā (‘a). [Trans.]

away. Zubaydah had a hundred bondswomen all of whom were memorizers [uffā] of the Qur'an. Each of them was obliged to read one-tenth of the Qur'an so much so that from her place of residence the loud voice of Qur'an recital, like the buzz of bees, could be heard.¹

4. Sumayyah the Mother of 'Ammār ibn Yāsir

She was the seventh person to embrace Islam and on account of this, she was subjected to the most horrible tortures. When the Prophet (ﷺ) saw 'Ammār and his parents on the hot ground being tortured in the scorching heat of Mecca, he said to them: "O family of Yāsir! Be patient; you have to know that your meeting place is heaven."

Finally, Sumayyah attained martyrdom from the spear of the bloodthirsty chief, Abū Jahl, and she became the first woman martyr in Islam.²

5. Umm Khālīd

When the governor of Iraq, Yūsuf ibn 'Umar, martyred Zayd ibn 'Alī in the city of Kūfah, he also cut off the hand of Umm Khālīd for the "crime" of being a Shī'ah and supporting Zayd's uprising.

Abū Ba'īr said: "We were in the company of Imām a-ādiq ('a) when Umm Khālīd came with her amputated hand. He ('a) said: 'O Abū Ba'īr! Do you want to listen to the speech of Umm Khālīd?' He answered: 'Yes, I would be pleased to listen to her.' Umm Khālīd went up to the Imām ('a) and started delivering a speech. I knew her for having perfect eloquence and fluency. He also spoke to her about the issue of wilāyah and the disavowal of enemies..."³

6. 'Abābah Wālibiyyah

Shaykh a-ūsī regarded her as among the companions of Imām al-Ḥasan ('a) while Ibn Dāwūd considered her as among the companions of Imām al-Ḥasan, Imām al-Ḥusayn, Imām as-Sajjād, and Imām al-Bāqir ('a). Others have regarded her as among the companions of the first eight Imāms, i.e. up to Imām ar-Riḍā ('a). It has also been said that Imām ar-Riḍā ('a) buried her in his own personal shirt. She was more than 240 years old at the time of death. She returned to her youth twice. The first time was through the miracle [mu'jizah] of Imām as-Sajjād ('a) and the second time was through

¹ Tanqī al-Maqāl, vol. 3, p. 78.

² Asad al-Ghābah, vol. 5, p. 481.

³ Mu'jam Rijāl al-Ḥadīth, vol. 14, pp. 23, 108, 176; Riyā'īn ash-Sharī'ah, vol. 3, p. 381.

the miracle of the eighth Imām ('a). It was she on whose stone the first eight Infallible Imāms inscribed their seal one after the other.¹

Ḥabābah Wālibiyyah said: "...I said to the Commander of the Faithful ('a): 'May God shower His mercy on you! What is the proof of your Imamate [*imāmah*]?' He ('a) said in reply: 'Bring that small stone to me.' I brought it to him ('a). 'Alī ('a) sealed it with his ring such that the seal was inscribed on the small stone, and then he said to me: 'O Ḥabābah! Anyone who claims the Imamate and has succeeded in inscribing his seal on this stone the way I did is an Imām, obedience to whom is obligatory. The Imām is he who knows whatever he wishes.'

I continued my usual occupation till the Commander of the Faithful ('a) departed from this world. Then, I went to see Imām al-Ḥasan ('a) who succeeded 'Alī ('a) when the people were asking him questions. When he ('a) saw me, he said: 'O Ḥabābah Wālibiyyah!' I said: 'Yes, O my leader!' He ('a) said: 'Take out that thing with you.' I brought it out and gave the small stone to him ('a). He, like 'Alī ('a), inscribed a seal with his ring on the spot where the previous inscribed seal was.

After some time, I went to Imām al-Ḥusayn ('a) who was then in the Mosque of the Messenger of Allah (□). He ('a) asked to me to come to him. He welcomed me and said: 'The proof for the thing you want exists. Do you want to see the sign of Imamate?' I replied: 'Yes, O my chief!' He ('a) said: 'Take out that thing with you.' I gave the small stone to him. He ('a) stroke his ring against it and his seal was inscribed therein.

After Imām al-Ḥusayn ('a), I went to Imām as-Sajjād ('a) and I had become so old by then that I was trembling all over; I was one hundred and thirteen years old. He ('a) was then in the state of bowing [*rukū*] and prostration [*sujūd*], and did not pay attention to me. I lost hope in obtaining the proof of his Imamate. He ('a) pointed to me with his forefinger and through this I became young again. I said: 'O my chief! To what extent has passed from the world and to what extent remains?' He replied: 'As to what has passed, yes, but as to what has remained, no; that is, we have knowledge of the past but the future is part of the unseen [*ghaybah*] which is known to no one except God, and it is not expedient for us to say anything about it.' Then he ('a) said to me: 'Take out that thing you have.' I gave the stone to him ('a) and he put his seal on it. As time passed by, I went to Imām al-Bāqir ('a) and he also put a seal on that stone. After him I went to Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) and he also inscribed a seal. After the passage of many years, I went to Imām al-Kā□im ('a) and he also inscribed his seal on it. After him I went to

¹ Tanqī□ al-Maqāl, vol. 23, p. 75.

visit Imām ar-Riḍā ('a) and he also inscribed his seal on it.” Thereafter, Ḥabābah remained alive for nine months.¹

7. *Qanwā' the Daughter of Rashīd Hijrī*

Although nothing has been mentioned in both Sunnī and Shī'ah books concerning the personality of this lady, the events related to the manner of the captivity and martyrdom of her esteemed father at the hands of Ibn Ziyād, which she narrated, clearly shows the degree of her firmness and steadfastness in faith, her attachment to Islam and Shi'ism, and her love for the Commander of the Faithful ('a).

Abū 'ayyān Bajalī said: “I asked Qanwā', the daughter of Rashīd Hijrī: ‘What *ḥadīths* and narrations have you heard from your father?’ She said: ‘My father reported from the Commander of the Faithful ('a) that he ('a) said: ‘O Rashīd! To what extent will be your patience when the adopted son of the Banī 'Umayyah (Ibn Ziyād) summons you and amputates your two hands, two feet and tongue?’ He asked: ‘Will my destination be heaven...?’ He ('a) replied: ‘O Rashīd! You will be in my company both in this world and in the hereafter.’”

Qanwā' said: “By God! After a little while Ibn Ziyād summoned my father and asked him to denounce 'Alī ('a), but my father never did it. Ibn Ziyād asked: ‘How has 'Alī described the manner in which you will be killed?’ My father answered: ‘My friend 'Alī has informed me that you will ask me to denounce him but I will refuse. Then you will amputate my two hands, two feet and tongue.’ Ibn Ziyād said: ‘By God! I will do something with respect to you that is contrary to 'Alī's prediction.’ Then he ordered that my father's two hands and two feet be amputated but that his tongue be spared. I carried my father on my shoulder and along the way I asked him: ‘O father! Do you feel pain and agony?’ He said: ‘No. I am only annoyed at the amount of pressure that the crowd would exert on me.’ As I took my father and brought him to the palace of Ibn Ziyād, the people gathered around him. My father took advantage of the opportunity and said: ‘Bring pen, ink and paper so that I could narrate events to you. When Ibn Ziyād was informed of it, he ordered that his tongue be cut off and my father attained martyrdom that very night.’”²

¹ *Al-Kāfī*, vol. 1, p. 346; *Tanqīḥ al-Maqāl*, vol. 3, p. 75.

² *Ikhtiyār Ma'rifah ar-Rijāl*, “Sharḥ al-Rashīd,” p. 75; *Tanqīḥ al-Maqāl*, vol. 1, p. 431; vol. 3, p. 82; *Mu'jam Rijāl al-Adith*, vol. 7, p. 190; *A'yān ash-Shī'ah*, vol. 32, p. 6; *Safīnah al-Bī'ār*, vol. 2, p. 522; *Riyāḥ ash-Sharī'ah*, vol. 5, p. 40.

The Role of Women during the Time of the Prophets ('a)

In view of the fact that the women in the government of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will have the same role as that which they had had during the early period of Islam, we shall examine the role of women during that period. Although *ḥadīths* indicate that they will treat the wounded and attend to the sick just like the [female] companions of the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) did, perhaps this is just one example of the important services rendered by the women during that period. They might have performed other activities as well. They will perform the same roles during the period of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs). Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "During the time of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('a), the women will perform the same tasks they did during the time of the Prophet (ﷺ)."

Women during the wars of the Prophet (ﷺ) also shouldered other responsibilities such as delivering food and water to the combatants, cooking, keeping the belongings of the combatants, procuring medicine, delivering weapons, repairing equipment, transporting the martyrs, participation in defensive wars, encouraging combatants to go to the warfront, encouraging them at the scene of combat, and so on.

Imām a□-□ādiq's ('a) comparison of the women in the period of al-Mahdī ('a) with the women in the period of the Prophet (ﷺ) prompted us to mention some of their activities during the early period of Islam.

Some of the women who played important roles in these activities are the following:

1. Umm 'A□iyyah. She participated in eight wars with the Prophet (ﷺ) [ghazwah]. Treating the wounded was among the services she rendered.¹ She said: "One of my duties was guarding the belongings of the soldiers."²
2. Umm 'Ammārah (Nasībah). Her acts of bravery in the Battle of U□ud were such that they were profoundly praised and appreciated by the Prophet.³
3. Umm Abīh. She was one of the six women who made their way to the castle of Khaybar. The Prophet (ﷺ) asked them: "By whose order did you come here?" Umm Ubayyah said: "Since we could notice the sign of anger on his countenance, I said: 'We have come here with some medicine to treat the wounded,' so, the Prophet (ﷺ) agreed for us to stay. Our assignment in that war was treating the wounded and cooking food."⁴
4. Umm Ayman. She used to treat the wounded in the wars.⁴

¹ Abū 'Awānah, *Musnad*, vol. 4, p. 331.

² Wāqidi, *Maghāzī*, vol. 1, p. 270.

³ *Kanz al-'Ummāl*, vol. 4, p. 345.

⁴ *Al-I□ābah*, vol. 4, p. 433.

5. °aminnah. She used to deliver water to the wounded and treat them. She lost her husband, brother and maternal uncle in the battlefield.¹

6. Rabī'ah bint Ma'ūdih. She used to treat the wounded.² She said: "We went to the battlefield with the Prophet (ﷺ) and transported the martyrs to Medina."

7. Umm Ziyād. She was among the six women who went to the war region of Khaybar to treat the wounded.³

8. Umayyah bint al-Qays. She became Muslim after the migration [hijrah] to Medina. She said: "I went to see the Prophet (ﷺ) along with a group of women from Banī Ghaffār. I said: 'We want to be with you in going to Khaybar to treat the wounded and assist the combatants.' Showing his happiness, the Prophet (ﷺ) said: 'You move by the grace of God!'"⁴

9. Laylā al-Ghaffāriyyah. She said: "I was a woman who used to go to the war along with the Prophet (ﷺ) to treat the wounded."⁵

10. Umm Salīm. While pregnant, she delivered water to the combatants in the Battle of Uḡud. She also participated in the Battle of °unayn.⁶

11. Mu'ādhah al-Ghaffāriyyah. She used to attend to the sick and treat the wounded.⁷

12. Umm Sinān Aslamiyyah. When going to the Battle of Khaybar, she said to the Prophet: "I want to go with you and treat the wounded, attend to the sick, assist the combatants, safeguard their belongings, and deliver water to the thirsty in the battle field. The Prophet (ﷺ) said: "You are permitted. Go with my wife, Umm Salamah."⁸

13. Fāṭimah az-Zahrā ('a). Muḥammad ibn Muslimah said: "In the Battle of Uḡud the women were engaged in looking for water and they were fourteen in all. Fāṭimah ('a) was also one of them."⁹

The women used to carry the food and water on their shoulders, engage in the treatment of the wounded and give water to them.¹⁰

14. Umm Sulayḡ. 'Umar ibn al-Khaḡḡāb said: "During the Battle of Uḡud, Umm Sulayḡ used to carry goatskins of water for us and engage in repairing weapons and equipment."¹

¹ Ibn Sa'd, *ḡabaqāt*, vol. 8, p. 241.

² *Asad al-Ghābah*, vol. 5, p. 451; Bukhārī, *ḡaḡḡ al-Bukhārī*, vol. 14, p. 168.

³ *Al-Iḡābah*, vol. 4, p. 444.

⁴ *Asad al-Ghābah*, vol. 5, p. 405.

⁵ *Naqsh-e Zanān dar Jang*, p. 22.

⁶ Ibn Sa'd, *ḡabaqāt*, vol. 8, p. 425.

⁷ *A'lām an-Nisā'*, vol. 5, p. 61.

⁸ *Riyāḡīn ash-Sharī'ah*, vol. 3, p. 410.

⁹ Wāqidi, *Maghāzī*, vol. 1, p. 249.

¹⁰ *Ibid.*

15. Nasībah. She participated in the Battle of Uḡud along with her husband and son. She used to carry goatskins of water and give water to the wounded. When the war became intense, she also participated in the battlefield and sustained twelve wounds by the sword.²

16. Anīsah. In the Battle of Uḡud she went to see the Prophet (ﷺ) and said: “O Messenger of Allah! My son, ‘Abdullāh ibn Salamah, was among the combatants in the Battle of Badr. Now, in the Battle of Uḡud, he has been martyred. I want to bring him to Medina and bury him there so that his grave would be near (our house) and I would be near to him.” The Prophet (ﷺ) gave her permission. Anīsah transported the pure corpse of her martyred son by means of a camel along with the corpse of another martyr of Islam named Mujdar ibn Ziyād, which was wrapped in a cloak, to Medina.³

This was just a glimpse of the activities and roles of women in the battles of Islam under the command of the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ). Perhaps, the cooperation of women in military and defense was meant to maximize all the combatant forces in the war and in confronting enemies. With the same objective in view, the women in the government of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘atfs) will also play the roles the women played during the time of the Prophet (ﷺ).

During that period or prior to that, women will have various roles to play; propaganda against the Dajjāl (the Anti-Christ) and warning the people against him will be among their roles and duties.

Abū Sa‘īd al-Khudrī said: “Wherever the Dajjāl wants to go, a woman with the name of La‘ībāh (ﻻﺋﻴﺒﺎﮪ) will go there before him and say: “The Dajjāl will come to you; keep away from him and beware of the consequences of his work!”⁴

¹ Bukhārī, *al-Bukhārī*, vol. 12, p. 153.

² Wāqidi, *Maghāzī*, vol. 1, p. 268.

³ *Asad al-Ghābah*, vol. 5, p. 406. See Hujjat al-Islām Muḥammad Jawād ‘Abasī, *Naqsh-e Zanān*.

⁴ Ibn ‘ammād, *Fitan*, p. 151; *Kanz al-‘Ummāl*, vol. 14, p. 602.

Chapter 2

The Leader of the Uprising

We have so far talked about the revolution and the uprising of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘*atfs*). In this chapter we shall discuss his physical and moral characteristics as well as his miracles by quoting *ḥadīths*.

Physical Features

1. Age and Features

‘Umrān ibn al-ʿuṣayn said: I said to the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ): “Kindly describe that man (al-Mahdī) to me and mention some of his characteristics.” The Prophet (ﷺ) said: “He is from my progeny; his stature is that of the men of the Children of Israel—firm and robust; at the time when my *ummah* is in difficulty and affliction, he will rise up; the color of his countenance is similar to that of the Arabs; his appearance is like that of a forty-year old; his face will shine like that of a half moon; he will fill the earth with justice and equity when it would have been full of oppression and injustice; he will take charge of affairs for twenty years and he will conquer all the cities of *kufr* such as Constantinople and Rome...”¹

Imām Ḥasan al-Mujtabā (‘*a*) said: “...God will extend the age of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘*atfs*) during the period of occultation [*ghaybah*]. Thereafter, by

¹ Ibn ʿawūs, *Malāʾim*, p. 142.

His infinite power, He will let him appear in the form of a young man less than forty years old.”¹

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: “During the advent of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs), the people will deny him and no one will cling to him except those with whom God has made a covenant in the 'ālam adh-dharr.² He ('atfs) will appear with a perfect, proportioned [muwaffaq] and normal young face.”³

The Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: “At the time of the uprising of al-Mahdī ('atfs), his age will be between thirty and forty.”⁴

Marwī said: I asked Imām ar-Riḍā ('a): “What is the sign and symbol of your Qā'im at the time of his uprising and appearance?” The Imām ('a) answered: “The sign is that he ('atfs) would be old but he will appear young such that anyone who would look at him will think that he ('atfs) is forty years old or even younger. Another sign is that the passage of time will not render him old till such time that his life would end.”⁵

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: “Certainly, like Ibrāhīm Khalīlullāh [Abraham the Friend of Allah], Walī Allāh [Friend of Allah] (Imām al-Mahdī) will be one hundred and twenty years old, and he will appear with a youthful perfect thirty-year-old face and visage.”⁶

The late Majlisī said: “Perhaps it (one hundred and twenty years) means the term of his ('atfs) governance and rule, or that it is his age but God has extended it.”

¹ *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 1, p. 315; *Kifāyah al-Athar*, p. 224; *A'lām al-Warā*, p. 401; *Al-Iqtijā*, p. 289.

² 'Ālam adh-dharr: the world prior to the creation of human beings on earth in which God obtained their acknowledgment of His divinity and lordship:

﴿وَإِذْ أَخَذَ رَبُّكَ مِنْ بَنِي آدَمَ مِنْ ظُهُورِهِمْ ذُرِّيَّتَهُمْ وَأَشْهَدَهُمْ عَلَى أَنْفُسِهِمْ أَلَسْتُ بِرَبِّكُمْ قَالُوا بَلَى شَهِدْنَا أَنْ تَقُولُوا يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ إِنَّا كُنَّا عَنْ هَذَا غَافِلِينَ﴾

“When your Lord took from the Children of Adam, from their loins, their descendants and made them bear witness over themselves, [He said to them,] ‘Am I not your Lord?’ They said, ‘Yes indeed! We bear witness.’ [This,] lest you should say on the Day of Resurrection, ‘Indeed we were unaware of this’.” (*Sūrah al-A'raf* 7:172)

Some exegetes [*mufasssīrīn*] have said that it refers to the appearance of the souls of Children of Adam in the world of the soul [*‘ālam ar-rū*] and their testimony to the unity of God and His lordship in the mundane and celestial worlds. It was meant that they could not say that they were not aware of that event or fact (the Day of Resurrection or the unity of God).

³ Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 188; *Aqd ad-Durar*, p. 41; *Bi'ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 287; *Yanābī' al-Mawaddah*, p. 492.

⁴ *Iqāq al-aqq*, vol. 19, p. 654.

⁵ *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 652; *A'lām al-Warā*, p. 435; *Kharā'ij*, vol. 3, p. 1170.

⁶ *Bi'ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 283.

What is meant by the word “proportioned” [*muwaffaq*] is the normalcy of the bodily limbs and it is an allusion to his being in middle age or the last phase of youth.¹

There are also other statements concerning the age of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) at the time of the advent [□*uhūr*]. Ar□āt said: “Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will be sixty years old (at the time of the advent).”² Ibn °ammād said: “Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will be eighteen years old.”³

2. Bodily Characteristics

Abū Ba□īr said: I said to Imām a□-□ādiq ('a): “I have heard from your father that the Imām of the Time ('atfs) has a broad chest and wide shoulders.” He ('a) said: “O Abū Muḥammad! My father tried on the armor of the Prophet (□) but it was so big for him that it would touch the floor. I also put it on but it was too large for my stature. That armor is as appropriate and fitting for Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs) as it was for the Prophet ('atfs). Its lower portion is short to the extent that anyone who saw it would think that they have formed a knot around it.”⁴

Riyān ibn □alt said: I asked Imām ar-Riḍā ('a): “Are you the master of this affair?” He ('a) replied: “I am the Imām and master of the affair but not the master of the affair who will fill the earth with justice and equity at the time when it would be full of oppression and injustice. How could I be the master of that affair when you can see my physical limitations? Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im is he who, at the time of his advent, will be of old age but he will look young. He will have a strong and well-built body such that if he would extend his hand toward the largest tree, he would be able to uproot it; if he shouted across the mountains, the rocks will crack and be pulled up. He will have the staff of Mūsā (Moses) ('a) and the ring of Sulaymān (Prophet Solomon) ('a).”⁵

His Moral Excellences

Like the other infallible Imāms, Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will have special moral excellences. As the Infallibles ('a) are perfect human beings and are

¹ *Ibid.*

² Ibn □āwūs, *Malā□im*, p. 73; *Kanz al-'Ummāl*, vol. 14, p. 586.

³ Ibn □ammād, *Fitan*, p. 102.

⁴ Ba□ā'ir *ad-Darajāt*, vol. 4, p. 188; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, pp. 440, 520; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 319.

⁵ *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 48; *A'lām al-Warā*, p. 407; *Kashf al-Ghumah*, vol. 3, p. 314; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 322; *Wāfī*, vol. 2, p. 113; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 478.

the models and exemplars of mankind in every aspect, they have the most excellent morality.

Ḥaḍrat ar-Riḍā ('a) said: "Al-Mahdī ('atfs) will be the most knowledgeable, humble and virtuous man (of his time). Of all men (during his time) he will be the most forgiving, brave and pious."¹

1. His Fear of God

Ka'b said that Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī's ('atfs) fear of and submissiveness to God is like the submissiveness of the eagle to its two wings.² Perhaps, what is meant by Ka'b is that although the eagle is a powerful bird, this power depends on the degree of the assistance of its two wings. If the wings would not assist it for only a moment, it will fall to the ground. Similarly, although Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) would be the most powerful divine leader, this power emanates from the Essence of God, the Exalted. If God would not help him for one moment, he will not have any capability to continue his work. Therefore, in facing the Divine Essence he has the utmost submissiveness, obeisance and fear.

Based on Ibn ʿāwūs' narration,³ the submissiveness of al-Mahdī ('atfs) to God has been likened to the submissiveness of the two points of a spear. The speed of action and precision involved in aiming at a target and throwing a spear depend on its two points which are like two wings; if one point is curved, it will miss the target.

Perhaps, it means that the power of al-Mahdī ('atfs) emanates from God and totally depends on divine succor.

2. His Asceticism [zuhd]

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "Why are you in a hurry for the advent of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī? God knows that his clothing is rough and coarse; his food is barley bread; his government is the government of the sword; and his death is at the point of the sword."⁴

ʿUthmān ibn ʿammād said: I was present in the assembly of Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) when a person said to the Imām ('a): "Alī ibn Abī ʿālib used to wear coarse clothing that cost only four dirhams while you wear valuable clothing!" In reply, the Imām ('a) said: "Alī ('a) used to wear that clothing,

¹ Yanābī' *al-Mawaddah*, p. 401; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 537; *I□qāq al-□aqq*, vol. 13, p. 367.

² Ibn ʿammād, *Fitan*, p. 100; *Iqd ad-Durar*, p. 158; Ibn ʿāwūs, *Malā□im*, p. 73; Muttaqī Hindī, *Burhān*, p. 101.

³ Ibn ʿāwūs, *Malā□im*, p. 73.

⁴ Nu'mānī, *Ḡaybah*, p. 233-234 with a slight difference; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 354.

which was not condemnable and detestable at that time.” The best clothing in every period is the clothing of the people of that period. At the time when our Qā’im would stage the uprising, he will wear something similar to the clothing of ‘Alī (‘a) and he will adopt the policy and course of action of ‘Alī (‘a).”¹

His Garments

The *ḥadīths* tell something about the special garment of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā’im (‘a) at the time of his advent. Some mention the shirt of the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) while others mention the shirt of Prophet Yūsuf (Joseph) (‘a) as his garments at the time of his advent.

Ya’qūb ibn Shu’ayb said: Imām a□-□ādiq (‘a) said: “Would you not like me to show you the shirt to be worn by Ḥaḍrat al-Qā’im at the time of his advent?” I said: “Of course, I’d like to see it.” The Imām (‘a) asked for a small chest. He opened it and took a denim shirt out of it and opened it. There was a blood stain in the corner of its left sleeve.

The Imām (‘a) said: “It is the shirt of the Prophet (ﷺ) which he was wearing on the day when his four front teeth were broken (in the Battle of Uhud). Ḥaḍrat al-Qā’im will stage the uprising wearing this shirt.” I kissed the blood (stain) and put it on my eyes. Then, the Imām (‘a) wrapped up the clothing and returned it.²

Mufa□□al ibn ‘Umar said: Imām a□-□ādiq (‘a) said: “Do you know what the shirt of Yūsuf (Joseph) was?” I said: “No.” The Imām (‘a) said: “Since they kindled a fire for Ibrāhīm (Abraham) (‘a), Jibra’īl (Archangel Gabriel) brought a shirt for him and let him wear it so that the heat and cold would not harm him. As the time of his departure from the world arrived, he wrapped it in a prayer cover and placed it on the arms of his son Is□āq (‘a). Is□āq gave it in turn to his son Ya’qūb (Jacob) (‘a). When Yūsuf (‘a) was born, Ya’qūb placed it on the arms of Yūsuf. Something happened to Yūsuf and he became the ‘Azīz of Egypt. When Yūsuf brought it out from the two prayer covers, Ya’qūb smelled it and made the statement which can be read in the Qur’an regarding Yūsuf: “*I sense the scent of Joseph, if you will not consider me a dotard.*”³ It is the same shirt that has come down from heaven.”

I asked: “May I be your ransom! In whose possession is the shirt now?” The Imām said: “It is in the possession of its owner; the shirt will be with our

¹ *Al-Kāfi*, vol. 6, p. 444; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 41, p. 159; vol. 47, p. 55.

² Nu’mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 243; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 542; □ilyah al-Abrār, vol. 2, p. 575; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 355.

³ *Sūrah Yūsuf* 12:94.

Qā'im when he appears." Then the Imām said: "Any knowledge or any other things acquired as a legacy by any prophet are all bequeathed to Muḥammad (ﷺ)."¹

His Weapon

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said to 'Alī ('a): "When our Qā'im rises up and the mission of his advent arrives, he will have a sword that will tell him: 'O Friend [*walī*] of Allah! Rise up and slay your enemies'."²

Imam aḥ-ḥādīq ('a) said: "During his advent °aḥ-rat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will wear the shirt the Prophet (ﷺ) had worn during the Battle of Uḥud as well as the Prophet's turban and armor on his body. He will take hold of Dhū'l-Fiqr, the sword of the Prophet (ﷺ), unsheathe it and for the period of eight months the slain among the wicked will be piled in mounds of corpses."³

Jābir Ja'fī reported that Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "°aḥ-rat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will appear along with his vizier and three hundred or so (thirteen) persons of his followers in Mecca between the station of *rukn* and *maqām* having the covenant and instruction of the Prophet (ﷺ) as well as his (ﷺ) banner and weapon. Then, the harbinger from the sky above Mecca will call out the Imām's name and the *wilāyah* [guardianship] such that all the people on earth will hear that name; his name is that of the Prophet (Muḥammad) (ﷺ)."⁴

Imām al-Mahdī's Knowledge of Others' Personalities

One of the salient features of °aḥ-rat al-Mahdī ('atfs) is that he can know the inner personalities of people through their faces; he would be able to distinguish pious from impious personalities, and with the same knowledge of the remuneration of their deeds, he will deal with the corruptors.

Imam aḥ-ḥādīq ('a) said: "When °aḥ-rat al-Qā'im rises up, no one will be left except the person he knows to be a righteous and good, or the deviant and corrupt."⁵

¹ *Al-Kāfī*, vol. 1, p. 232; *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 674; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 327.

² *Kifāyah al-Athar*, p. 263; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 36, p. 409; *Awālim*, vol. 15, section 3, p. 269; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 563.

³ Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 308; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 223. See Shaykh al-Mufīd, *Al-Irshād*, p. 275.

⁴ *Al-Uḥūl as-Sittah 'Ashar*, p. 79; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 588; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 26, p. 209; *Mustadrak al-Wasā'il*, vol. 11, p. 38.

⁵ *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 671; *Kharā'ij*, vol. 2, p. 930; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 493; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 51, p. 58; vol. 52, p. 389.

The Imām ('a) also said: "When our Qā'im rises up, he will recognize our enemies from their faces. Then he will take them in their foreheads (heads) and feet (and apprehend them), and he himself along with his supporters will slay them with the sword."¹

He similarly said: "When the Qā'im of Muḥammad's Progeny ('a) rises up, he would be able to distinguish his friends from his enemies through his power of recognition (of inner personalities of others)."

Mu'āwiyah Dehnī said that concerning the verse of the Qur'an which states that: "*The guilty will be recognized by their mark; so they will be seized by the forelocks and the feet,*"² Imām aḥ-ḥādīq ('a) said: "O Mu'āwiyah! What do others say about it?" I replied: "They imagine that on the Day of Resurrection God will recognize the sinners from their faces and they (the angels) will take them from their hair in the front of the head and their feet, and they will throw them in the fire." The Imām ('a) said: "What need does God have for the faces of the sinners in order to recognize them as He created them?" I asked: "What is the meaning of that verse then?" He ('a) answered: "When Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('a) rises up, God will grant him the power to know inner personalities and he will order the capture of the infidels from their heads and feet and that they be struck severely with the sword."³

His Miracles

At the end of time, although the people will be waiting passionately for the establishment of a powerful government, which at the same time, champions the cause of the oppressed, they would not be optimistic about most current governments. They would not accept the statement of any party or group, and in principle, they would not regard anybody capable of reviving order in a global society and of stabilizing the chaotic world.

As such, anyone who claims to be the one to put order in society and spread security in the world must possess power beyond that of other human beings, and to prove this point necessitates the performance of miracles and extraordinary acts. Perhaps, it is owing to this that as soon as he appears Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('a) will embark on performing a series of miracles and wonders. He will point to a flying bird and it will immediately descend on his

¹ *Iḥqāq al-āḥqāq*, vol. 13, p. 357. See Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 242; *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 366; *Irshād*, vol. 5, p. 36; *I'lām al-Warā*, p. 433; *Kashf al-Ghammah*, vol. 3, p. 256.

² *Sūrah ar-Raḥmān* 55:41.

³ *Ikhtīṣār*, p. 304; Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 128; *Baḥār al-Darajāt*, p. 356; *Bīḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 321; *Ash-Shī'ah wa'r-Raj'ah*, vol. 1, p. 431; *Al-Mu'ajjah*, p. 217; *Yanābī' al-Mawaddah*, p. 429.

hand. He will stick a dry piece of wood in the barren ground and it will immediately turn green, sprouting twigs and leaves.

These works of wonder will prove to the people that they are dealing with a person who is in control of, and has discretion over, the heaven and the earth by the decree of God. These miracles are glad tidings for the people who, for years, and in fact, for centuries had been under the pressure and wrath of the heaven and earth; people who have been subjected to the aggression of warplanes and bombs over their heads. They would have made many sacrifices, but they were not able to find any power to hinder all these aggressions. But now they would be facing a man who would seem to have control of the heaven and the earth and all the things in between.

People who, till yesterday were suffering from such famine that they had to endure all kinds of afflictions and adversities just to procure their daily bread and had been subjected to severe economic strangulation as the result of drought and lack of agricultural products, would now be meeting a person who, by just pointing a finger, will make barren ground fertile, fresh and green, and make water and rain available.

People who had been afflicted with incurable diseases will now meet a person who could cure even them and revive the dead. These are the miracles and wonders that bespeak of the power, sincerity and truthfulness of the words of this heavenly leader. In a nutshell, the people of the world would believe that this giver of glad tidings has no similarity with any of the preceding false claimants, and that he is the same true savior, the Remainder of Allah [*baqiyyatullāh*] and the Promised Mahdī.

The miracles of al-Mahdī ('atfs) will sometimes be shown to his combatants in order to strengthen their faith and conviction and at other times to his enemies and those who pose threats in order for them to believe in him ('atfs).

Now, we shall present some of these miracles and wonders:

1. The Speaking of Birds

The Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: "Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will meet on his way a descendant of Imām al-Ḥasan ('a) (*Sayyid*) who will have twelve thousand combatants with him. The *Sayyid* will be occupying a lofty station and regard himself more deserving of the leadership. In reply to him, the Imām ('atfs) will say: 'I am the Mahdī.' The *Sayyid* will ask: 'Do you have any proof and sign so that I can pay allegiance to you?' The Imām will point to a bird flying in the sky and it will descend upon his hands. Then, by the power of God, it will start talking and bear witness to the Imamate [*imāmah*] of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs).

“In order to give further proof to the *Sayyid*, the Imām ('a) will stick a piece of wood in the ground and it will turn green and sprout twigs and leaves. Again, the Imām ('atfs) will pick up a stone from the ground, and by just a slight pressure, it will be broken into small pieces like soft paste.

“By witnessing those miracles, the *Sayyid* will believe in the Imām ('a). He and all his forces will submit to the Imām ('a) and the Imām will designate him as the commander of the frontline forces.”¹

2. The Gushing Forth of Water and Provisions from the Ground

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: “When the Imām ('a) appears in the city of Mecca and wants to proceed to Kūfah, he will announce to his forces that they should not bring any water, food and other provisions. The Imām ('a) will have with him the stone of Mūsā ('a) (Prophet Moses) through which twelve springs gushed forth from the ground. Wherever they will stop along the way, he will set it up and springs will gush forth from the ground. Anyone who is hungry will be satisfied by drinking from it and anyone who is thirsty will be quenched by drinking from it.

“The soldiers will be provided with provisions and water along the way in this manner until they arrive at the city of Najaf. By setting up the stone there, water and milk will gush forth from the ground which will satisfy anyone who is hungry and thirsty.”²

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: “When Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('a) appears, he will have with him the banner of the Prophet (□), the ring of Sulaymān ('a) (Prophet Solomon), and the stone and staff of Mūsā ('a) (Prophet Moses). Then, by his order it will be announced that his soldiers should not bring provisions for themselves and forage for their four-footed animals (horses). Some of their companions will say: ‘He wants to bring us to perdition and annihilate our horses through thirst and hunger.’ The companions will set out along with the Imām. At the first place where they arrive, the Imām will strike the stone against the ground, and water and food for the forces as well as forage for the animals will emerge, and they will consume them until they arrive at the city of Najaf.”³

¹ *Aqd ad-Darar*, pp. 97, 138-139; *Al-Qawl al-Mukhta□ar*, p. 19; *Shī'ah wa'r-Raj'ah*, vol. 1, p. 158.

² *Ba□ā'ir ad-Darajāt*, p. 188; *Al-Kāfi*, vol. 1, p. 231; Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 238; *Kharā'ij*, vol. 2, p. 690; *Nūr ath-Thaqalayn*, vol. 1, p. 84; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 13, p. 185; vol. 52, p. 324.

³ *Kamāluddīn*, p. 670; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 351; *Al-Wāfi*, vol. 2, p. 112.

3. Traveling throughout the World and the Absence of a Shadow

Imām ar-Ridā ('a) said: "When Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) appears, the earth will be illuminated by the light of God and it will move quickly under his feet (and thus he would be able to quickly traverse great distance) and he will not have a shadow."¹

4. His Means of Transportation

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said to a person named Sūrah: "Dhū'l-Qarnayn had the option to choose either the gentle or the wild cloud. He chose the former and the latter is preserved for Ḥaḍrat a□-□ā□ib ('atfs)."²

Sūrah asked: "What do you mean by the wild cloud? The Imām ('atfs) replied: "It refers to clouds having thunder, lightning, storms, and thunderbolts. Whenever there is such a cloud, your □ā□ib is riding on it. Undoubtedly, he will ride on the cloud and by means of it he will go to the higher sky, and he will traverse the seven skies and earths/planets [*zamīn*] five of which are habitable while the other two are in ruins."³

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "God gave Dhū'l-Qarnayn the option to choose between the wild and gentle clouds. He chose the gentle cloud and it is the cloud without thunder and lightning, and if he had chosen the wild cloud, he would not have been able to utilize it because God has preserved it for Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs)."⁴

5. Slowness of the Movement of Time

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "When the Imām of the Time ('a) appears, he will set out toward Kūfah. He will rule there for seven years each year of which would be equivalent to ten years of yours. Then, he will do whatever God wishes." It was asked: "How could the years become longer?" The Imām ('a) answered: "God will order the (solar) system (and the angel managing it) to reduce the speed of its movement. As such, the days and years will become longer."

¹ *Kamāluddīn*, p. 372; *Kifāyah al-Athar*, p. 323; *I'lām al-Warā*, p. 408; *Kashf al-Ghammah*, vol. 3, p. 314; *Farā'id al-Samā'ayn*, vol. 2, p. 336; *Yanābī' al-Mawaddah*, p. 489; *Nūr ath-Thaqalayn*, vol. 4, p. 47; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 51, p. 157. See *Kifāyah al-Athar*, 324; *I□tijāj*, vol. 2, p. 449; *I'lām al-Warā*, p. 409; *Kharā'ij*, vol. 3, p. 1171; *Mustadrak al-Wasā'il*, vol. 2, p. 33.

² □ā□ib or □ā□ib az-Zamān [The Owner/Master or Owner/Master of the Time]: one of the titles of Imām al-Mahdī ('a). [Trans.]

³ Shaykh al-Mufīd, *Al-Ikhti□ā*, p. 199; *Ba□ā'ir ad-Darajāt*, p. 409; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 321.

⁴ *Al-Ikhti□ā*, p. 326; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 312; *Ghāyah al-Marām*, p. 77.

It was said: "It is said that if there were the least change in their (units of the system) movement, they will experience trouble and perish." The Imām ('a) said: "This statement is that of the materialists and deniers of God, but the Muslims (who believe in God as the Regulator of them all) do not make such a statement."¹

6. The Power of *Takbīr*

Regarding al-Mahdī's ('atfs) conquest of Constantinople, Ka'ab said: "He will put the banner on the ground and approach the water to perform ritual ablution [*wuḥūd*] for the morning prayer [*alāh aḥ-ḥub*] and the water will be taken away from him. He will remove the banner and move toward the water until such time that an area will be cleared of water. Then, he will place the banner on the ground and call the attention of the soldiers, saying: "O people! God will split the sea for you just as He did for the Children of Israel." Thereafter, the soldiers will pass through the sea and will arrive in the city of Constantinople. The soldiers will utter *takbīr* [the shout of *Allāhu akbar* (Allah is great)] and the walls of the city will crumble.

They will utter *takbīr* again and the walls will crumble again. The third time that they utter *takbīr*, the walls at the center of the twelve watchtowers will collapse."²

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: "...Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will arrive in Constantinople. At that time, the castle will have seven walls. The Imām will utter *takbīr* seven times and the walls will crumble and by slaying many of the Byzantines it will be conquered by Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) and a group will also embrace Islam."³

In this regard, the Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: "...Afterward, Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī and his supporters will continue to move and the walls of every castle of the Byzantines they pass by will crumble with their recitation of "*Lā ilāha illallāh*" [There is no god but Allah] until such time that they will arrive at the city of Constantinople. They will utter *takbīrs* there and suddenly the gulf⁴ in the vicinity of Constantinople will dry up and its water will go deep under the ground, and the walls of the city will also crumble. From there, they will move toward the city of Rome and when they arrive

¹ Shaykh al-Mufīd, *Al-Irshād*, p. 365; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 337; *Ash-Shī'ah wa'r-Raj'ah*, vol. 1, p. 400.

² *'Iqd ad-Durar*, p. 138.

³ *Al-'Ilal al-Mutanāhiyyah*, vol. 2, p. 855; *'Aqd ad-Darar*, p. 180.

⁴ Perhaps, it refers to the Dardanelles Strait and the Sea of Marmara. [Trans.]

there, the Muslims will utter *takbīr* three times and the city will disintegrate like fine sand and gravel in the face of strong winds.”¹

The Imām ('a) also said: “...The Mahdī ('atfs) will continue his advance until he arrives in one of the cities in the Orient by the sea. His soldiers will utter *takbīr* three times and subsequently the walls of the city will separate from each other and crumble.”²

7. Passing over the Water

Imām al-Ḥādī ('a) said: “My father said: ‘When Ḥaḍrat al-Qā’im stages the uprising... he will dispatch soldiers to the city of Constantinople. When they reach the gulf, they will write a sentence on their feet and they will pass over the water. When the Byzantines see this miracle and magnificence, they will say to one another: ‘If such are the soldiers of the Imām of the Time, how much greater would be the Imām himself?!’” As such, they will open the gates of the city for them and the soldiers of the Imām will enter the city and rule there.”³

8. Curing the Sick

The Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: “...Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('a) will hoist the banners and show his miracles, and by the decree of God he will create many things from nothing. He will cure the sick suffering from leprosy and vitiligo,⁴ revive the dead and let the living die.”⁵

9. The Staff of Mūsā (Moses) in His Hand

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: “The staff of Mūsā ('a) had belonged to Ādam ('a), which had been handed down to Shu‘ayb ('a) and after him, it had been given to Mūsā ibn ‘Imrān ('a). That staff is with us and as I saw it recently, it was still green like the day it was cut from the tree. If something is asked from the staff, it will talk and it would be ready for our Qā’im. Whatever Mūsā did with it will also be performed by Ḥaḍrat al-Qā’im, and whatever

¹ *Iqd ad-Durar*, p. 139.

² *Ash-Shī‘ah wa’r-Raj‘ah*, vol. 1, p. 161.

³ Nu‘mānī, *Ḡhaybah*, p. 159; *Dalā’il al-Imāmah*, p. 249; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 573; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 365.


⁴ Vitiligo or vitiligo vulgaris: a medical condition causing smooth white patches on the skin, usually on the hands, feet, and face, and later spreading to other parts of the body. Although the patches are painless, they lack protective skin coloration and are vulnerable to painful sunburn. [Trans.]

⁵ *Ash-Shī‘ah wa’r-Raj‘ah*, vol. 1, p. 169.

the staff is ordered, it will execute and wherever it is thrown, it will swallow all sorceries.”¹

10. The Call of the Cloud

Imām a□-□ādiq (‘a) said: “...Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘atfs) will appear at the end of time. There will be a cloud moving above the head of the Imām and it will move along with him to cover him from the sunlight. With a clear and understandable voice, it will proclaim, “This is Mahdī”.”²

Finally, based on the statement of Imām a□-□ādiq (‘a), “No miracle from among the miracles of the prophets and the executors of will [aw□iyā’] will remain without being performed by God, the Glorified and Honored, through our Qā’im so as to complete the proof for the enemies.”³ 

¹ *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 673; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 318, 351; *Al-Kāfi*, vol. 1, p. 232.

² *Tārīkh Mawālīd al-A’immah*, p. 200; *Kashf al-Ghammah*, vol. 3, p. 265; □irā□ *al-Mustaqīm*, vol. 2, p. 260; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 51, p. 240; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 615; *Nūr Kashf al-Astār*, p. 69.

³ *Khātūnābādī*, *Arba’in*, p. 67; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 700.

Chapter 3

The Soldiers of Imām al-Mahdī (‘atfs)

The forces of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘atfs) will be composed of various nationalities and at the time of uprising they will be called through unique means. The individuals who have been designated before as commanders will assume the responsibility of guiding the soldiers and planning war operations. The soldiers to be accepted in the army of al-Mahdī (‘atfs) under special circumstances have peculiar characteristics of their own. Some will be present in the primary staff and some will join the army. A group has been called the security guard corps.

In this chapter, we will take a look at the *ḥadīths* related to this topic:

Commanders of the Army

In the *ḥadīths* we can read the names of the individuals who have been associated with particular military operations and the command of a number of soldiers. In this section, we shall mention the names and functions of some of them:

1. *ʿaḥḥrat ʿĪsā (Jesus Christ) (ʿa)*

The Commander of the Faithful (ʿa) said in a sermon [*khutbah*]: “...Then the Mahdī (‘atfs) will appoint Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā (ʿa) as his representative in the offensive operations against ad-Dajjāl (the Anti-Christ). ʿĪsā (ʿa) will set out to capture and suppress ad-Dajjāl. Ad-Dajjāl who will then be controlling the entire world, destroying agriculture and human generation, will call the people toward him and anyone who accepts him will be treated with favor

and anyone who refuses to accept him would be killed. He will travel throughout the world, with the exception of Mecca, Medina and Bayt al-Muqaddas (Jerusalem), and all the illegitimate children from both the east and the west of the globe will rally around him.

“Ad-Dajjāl will set out toward the °ijāz and ‘Īsā (‘a) will intercept him at the passage of Harshā. ‘Īsā (‘a) will direct a horrible shout at him and strike him a decisive blow. Ad-Dajjāl will melt in a blazing fire like lead melting in fire.”¹

The penetration of the blow that will lead to the melting of ad-Dajjāl is perhaps due to the use of the ultramodern weapons at that time, or it could be due to one of the miracles of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā.

Concerning the salient features of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā (‘a), it is thus stated: “He has such magnificence that once the enemy sees him he will remember death as if ‘Īsā was demanding his life.”²

2. Shu‘ayb ibn □ālī□

The Commander of the Faithful (‘a) said: “The Sufyānī and the bearers of the black banners will confront each other while among the latter there will be a young man from the Banī Hāshim in the palm of whose left hand would be a black mole. He would be in front of his soldiers and would be from the tribe of Banī Tamīm. His name is Shu‘ayb ibn □ālī□.”³

Ḥasan al-Ba□rī said: “In the land of Rey a person named Shu‘ayb ibn □ālī□ will appear having broad shoulders, a dark complexion, and beardless. There will be an army of four thousand men under his command whose garments will be white and their banners will be black. They will constitute the vanguard of the Mahdī’s army.”⁴

‘Ammār ibn Yāsir said: “Shu‘ayb ibn □ālī□ is the standard-bearer of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī.”⁵

Shablanjī said: “The commander of the advance forces of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘atfs) will be a man from the tribe of Banī Tamīm with a slight beard and who will be called, Shu‘ayb ibn □ālī□.”⁶

Muḥammad ibn °anafīyyah said: “An army will set out from Khurāsān that will wear black belts and white shirts. One of the army’s vanguards will be the commander called Shu‘ayb ibn □ālī□ or □ālī□ ibn Shu‘ayb who is

¹ *Ash-Shī‘ah wa’r-Raj‘ah*, vol. 1, p. 167.

² Ibn □ammād, *Fitan*, p. 161.

³ Ibn □ammād, *Fitan*, p. 86; *Iqd ad-Durar*, p. 127; *Kanz al-‘Ummāl*, vol. 14, p. 588.

⁴ Ibn □āwūs, *Malā□im*, p. 53; *Iqd ad-Durar*, p. 130; *Ash-Shī‘ah wa’r-Raj‘ah*, vol. 1, p. 210.

⁵ Ibn □āwūs, *Malā□im*, p. 53; *Ash-Shī‘ah wa’r-Raj‘ah*, vol. 1, p. 211.

⁶ *Nūr al-Ab□ār*, p. 138; *Shī‘ah wa’r-Raj‘ah*, vol. 1, p. 211.

from the tribe of Banī Tamīm. They will defeat the soldiers of the Sufyānī and drive them away; they will arrive in Bayt al-Muqaddas and pave the ground for the government of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī.”¹

3. *Ismā‘īl the Son of Imām a□-□ādiq (‘a) and ‘Abdullāh ibn Sharīk*

Abū Khadijah said that Imām a□-□ādiq (‘a) said: “I asked God to keep [my son] Ismā‘īl alive after me but He did not grant it, but granted him another station. He will be the first person to reappear along with his ten companions. ‘Abdullāh ibn Sharīk will be his standard-bearer and one of his ten companions.”²

Imām al-Bāqir (‘a) said: “It is as if I can see ‘Abdullāh ibn Sharīk al-‘Āmirī who has put a black turban on his head with the two sides of his turban placed between his shoulders. With an army of four thousand men as vanguards of our Qā’im, they will climb the mountain slope and always utter *takbīr*.”³

4. *‘Aqīl and ‘Ārith*

Ḥaḍrat ‘Alī (‘a) said: “Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘a) will let the army advance until they will arrive in Iraq in such a manner that soldiers will be moving to his front and at the rear. The commander of the advance forces will be a man named ‘Aqīl while the commander of the rear soldiers will be a man named ‘Ārith.”⁴

5. *Jubayr ibn Khābūr*

Imām a□-□ādiq (‘a) quoted the Commander of the Faithful (‘a) as saying: “While their weapons have already been drawn from the scabbards, this person—Jubayr—along with four thousand men in Jabal al-Ahwāz will wait for the advent of the Qā’im from among us, the *Ahl al-Bayt*. Then, this person along with and beside the Imām will engage in combat against the enemy.”⁵

¹ Ibn □ammād, *Fitan*, p. 84; *Ibn al-Munādī*, p. 47; Dārmī, *Sunan*, p. 98; *Iqd ad-Durar*, p. 126; Ibn □āwūs, *Fitan*, p. 49.

² *Al-Ayqā□ min al-Haj’ah*, p. 266. See Kashī, *Ikhtiyār Ma’rifah ar-Rijāl*, p. 217; Ibn Dāwūd, *Ar-Rijāl*, p. 206.

³ *Al-Ayqā□ min al-Haj’ah*, p. 266. See Bi□ār al-Anwār, vol. 53, p. 67; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 561.

⁴ *Ash-Shī’ah wa’r-Raj’ah*, vol. 1, p. 158.

⁵ *Kharā’ij*, vol. 1, p. 185; Bi□ār al-Anwār, vol. 41, p. 296; *Mustadrakāt ‘Ilm Rijāl al-Ḥadīth*, vol. 2, p. 118.

Notwithstanding an extensive study of both Sunnī and Shī’ah books which I have conducted regarding Jubayr ibn Khābūr, I have found nothing except the following point:

6. 'Umar ibn Mufaḍḍal

Imām aḥ-ḥādīq said to Mufaḍḍal: "You, along with forty four other persons, will be with Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs). You will be on the right side of the Imām ('a) enjoining [good] and forbidding [evil], and the people at that time, compared to the people of today, will believe in you more sincerely."¹

7. The Companions of the Cave [aḥ-ḥāb al-kahf]

The Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: "The Companions of the Cave [aḥḥāb al-kahf] will come to assist the Mahdī ('atfs)."²

The Nationality of the Soldiers

The forces of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will be composed of various nationalities. In the *ḥadīths* there are various views in this regard. Sometimes, the soldiers of the Imām ('atfs) have been described as *a'jām*—interpreted as non-Arabs. Some *ḥadīths* cite the names of the cities and countries from which soldiers will hasten to assist the Imām ('atfs). At other times, they have mentioned particular communities [aḥwām] such as the repentant from among the Children of Israel, the faithful among the Christians, and upright people to be revived in the future, who will assist the Imām ('a).

In this chapter, we will mention some *ḥadīths* in this regard:

Imām aḥ-ḥādīq ('a) said: "Jubayr ibn Khābūr was a treasurer of Mu'āwiyah. His old mother was living in Kūfah. One day Jubayr said to Mu'āwiyah: "I missed my mother. Kindly permit me to see her so that I could fulfill some of those rights I owe to her."

Mu'āwiyah said: "What is your business in the city of Kūfah? There is a sorcerer there named 'Alī ibn Abī ḥālib and I am not sure that he would not deceive you." Jubayr said: "I have no business with 'Alī. I want to go there in order to see my mother and give to her some of her rights." After being granted permission, Jubayr set out for the journey. When he arrived in the city of Kūfah—since the Commander of the Faithful ('a) after the Battle of ḥiffīn had assigned guards to be posted around the city who used to control the traffic to and from the city—he was arrested by the guards and brought to the city center. 'Alī said to him: "You are among the Godly treasurers. Mu'āwiyah said to you that I am a sorcerer." Jubayr said: "By God! He has said exactly that."

The Imām ('a) said: "You have an asset along with you a portion of which you have buried in the 'Ayn at-Tamar district." Jubayr also admitted it. Afterward, the Commander of the Faithful ('a) ordered Imām al-Ḥasan ('a) to entertain him. The following day, 'Alī ('a) said to his followers: "This person in Jabal al-Ahwāz..." (The complete sentence is in the text of the book.)

¹ *Dalā'il al-Imāmāh*, p. 248; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 573.

² ḥuḥaynī, *Al-Hidāyah*, p. 31; *Irshād al-Qulūb*, p. 286; ḥilyah al-Abrār, vol. 2, p. 601.

The other persons are Dāwūd Raḥī and Najm ibn A'yūn, ḥamrān ibn A'īn, and Maysar ibn 'Abdul-'Azīz whose revival and presence at the time of Imām al-Qā'im ('atfs) have been mentioned in some *ḥadīths*, which we shall discuss later.

1. Iranians

It can be understood from the *ḥadīths* that a considerable number of the special soldiers in the army of al-Mahdī ('atfs) would be Iranians and they have been mentioned in various ways such as the people of Rey, the people of Khurāsān, the treasures of □āleqān, the Qummīs, the people of Persia, etc.

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "The forces with black banners that will rise up from Khurāsān will come to Kūfah, and when Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) appears in Mecca, they will pay allegiance to him."¹

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) also said: "The supporters of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('a) will be three hundred and thirteen persons who will be from the children of the *a'jām* [non-Arabs]."²

'Abdullāh ibn 'Umar said that the Prophet (□) said: "God will give your (Muslims') power to the *a'jām*; they are like lions that will never desert the battlefield. They will kill you (Arabs) and plunder your properties."³

°udhayfah also narrated a *ḥadīth* with the same content from the Prophet (□).⁴ Of course, the implication of the *ḥadīth* is debatable and problematic. Based on the *ḥadīths*, a time will come when the Iranians will unsheathe their swords against the Arabs to spread Islam and make them return to Islam, and they will slay those who oppose them. The condition of the Arabs at that time will be very deplorable with difficult and unpleasant days awaiting them.

Although *a'jām* is said to be the non-Arabs, the Iranians are definitely included. On the basis of other *ḥadīths*, both in preparing the ground for operations to be conducted prior to the advent [□uhūr] and at the time of the uprising of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs), the Iranians will have a pivotal role and they will constitute a large number of combatants.

In a sermon delivered by 'Alī ('a) regarding the supporters of al-Mahdī ('atfs) and their nationalities, the names of some Iranian cities have been mentioned.

A□bagh ibn Nabātah said that the Commander of the Faithful ('a) delivered a sermon in which he mentioned Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) and his supporters who will accompany him in the uprising, saying: "One is from Ahwāz; one from Shūshtar; three are from Shīrāz whose names are °af□, Ya'qūb and 'Alī; four are from Iṣfahān whose names are Mūsā, 'Alī, 'Abdullāh, and Ghalfān; one from Burūjerd named Qadīm; one is from

¹ Ibn □ammād, *Fitan*, p. 85; *Aqd ad-Darar*, p. 129; *Al-□āwī Li'l-Fatāwā*, vol. 2, p. 69.

² Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 315; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 547; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 369.

³ *Firdaws al-Akhbār*, vol. 5, p. 366.

⁴ 'Abdur-Razzāq, *Mu□annif*, vol. 11, p. 385; *Al-Mu'jam al-Kabīr*, vol. 7, p. 268; □ilyah al-Awliyā', vol. 3, p. 24; *Firdaws al-Akhbār*, vol. 5, p. 445.

Nahāvand named 'Abdur-Razzāq; three are from Hamedān¹ whose names are Ja'far, Isāq and Mūsā; ten are from Qum whose names are that of the *Ahl al-Bayt* of the Messenger of Allah (and in another *ḥadīth* eighteen have been mentioned); one from Shīrvān'; and one is from Khurāsān named Darīd. There are also five whose names are that of the Companions of the Cave; one from Āmul; one from Gorgān; one from Dāmghān; one from Sarakhs; one from Sāveh; twenty four from āleqān; two from Qazvīn; one from Fārs; one from Abhar; one from Ardebīl; three from Marāgheh; one from Khūy; one from Salmās; three from Ābādān; and one from Kāzerūn."

Then, the Commander of the Faithful said: "The Noble Prophet (ﷺ) mentioned to me three hundred and thirteen persons of the supporters of al-Mahdī ('atfs) equal to the number of the supporters in (the Battle of) Badr, and he said: 'God will bring them from both the east and the west to the precinct of the *Ka'bah*' faster than the blink of an eye."²

As you can observe, among the three hundred and thirteen persons constituting the special corps of Ḥadrat al-Mahdī ('atfs)—who will accompany him at the beginning of the uprising—seventy two will come from the present cities of Iran. If we also take into account what has been narrated in *Dalā'il al-Imāmah*³ of ābarī and the names of cities that were in Iran at that time, the number of Iranians will become more than this.

In this *ḥadīth* the name of a city is sometimes mentioned twice, sometimes the names of some cities in a country, and at other times the name of the very country has been mentioned.

In case the *ḥadīth* has been correctly recorded, it perhaps bespeaks of the divisions and the names used at that time, thus geographical divisions in the present age cannot serve as the criteria to interpret and understand this *ḥadīth*; for, the names of cities change over time; sometimes, the name of one city is used for a country at the present time or vice versa.

The other point is that by collating the names of cities (mentioned in the *ḥadīth* in question) with the present geographical map of the world, it can be concluded perhaps that the supporters of the Imām are scattered throughout the world and it is possible that the word "*afranjah*" mentioned in the *ḥadīth* refers to the western hemisphere. If this collation and statement were correct, the *ḥadīth* will become meaningful with the dictum, "لو خليت قلبت". It is because at no time will the earth be devoid of good men; otherwise, it will come to an end.

¹ Probably it refers to the Arab tribe of Hamdān.

² Ibn āwūs, *Malā'im*, p. 146.

³ *Dalā'il al-Imāmah*, p. 316.

In other *ḥadīths*, some cities have been especially mentioned. Here, we will suffice to mention some *ḥadīths* concerning the cities of Qum, Khurāsān and ʔāleqān:

a. Qum

Imām aʔ-ʔādiq ('a) said: "The soil of Qum is holy... Aren't they the supporters of our Qā'im and callers toward our right?"¹

'Affān al-Baʔīrī said that Imām aʔ-ʔādiq ('a) said to him: "Do you know why Qum is named 'Qum'?" I replied: "God, His Messenger and you know better." He said: "It is called Qum because its inhabitants will rally behind the Qā'im of Muḥammad's Progeny ('atfs) and rise up along with him ('atfs). Along this line, they will show their perseverance and assist him ('atfs)."²

b. Khurāsān

The Commander of the Faithful ('a) said that the Messenger of Allah (ʔ) said: "...There are treasures in Khurāsān but they are not gold and silver. Instead, they are men who will gather together on their belief in God and His Messenger."³ Perhaps, it means that what they have in common is the correct belief in God and His Messenger, or it may mean that God will gather them one day in Mecca.

c. ʔāleqān

The Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: "Blessed is ʔāleqān! It is because God has treasures there which are neither gold nor silver. Instead, they are men of faith who have really recognized God and they will be the companions of the Mahdī (Guided One) of Muḥammad's Progeny ('atfs) at the end of time."⁴

2. Arabs

The *ḥadīths* related to the participation of Arabs in the uprising of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('a) can be classified into two. Some indicate their lack of participation in the revolution of al-Mahdī while a number of other *ḥadīths* mention some cities in Arab countries in which there are those who will rise up to support the Imām.

¹ Biʔār al-Anwār, vol. 60, p. 218.

² Ibid., p. 216.

³ Ibn ʔāwūs, *Malāʔim*, p. 147; Rawʔah al-Wā'iʔīn, p. 310; Biʔār al-Anwār, vol. 52, p. 304.

⁴ Shāfi'ī, *Bayān*, p. 106; Muttaqī Hindī, *Burhān*, p. 150; *Kanz al-'Ummāl*, vol. 14, p. 591; *Yanābī' al-Mawaddah*, p. 491; *Kashf al-Ghammah*, vol. 3, p. 268.

Assuming that they are authentic, the *ḥadīths* that talk about the lack of participation of the Arabs can be justified. For, it might be possible that there will be no Arabs among the soldiers who will accompany the Imām at the beginning of the uprising. Shaykh ʿurr ʿĀmilī in the book, *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, has interpreted it this way. Concerning the Arab cities mentioned in the *ḥadīths*, perhaps non-Arab soldiers residing there will hasten to aid the Imām, and not those who are Arab in origin. It may also mean that it refers to Arab governments and states. Let us look at this category of *ḥadīths*:

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "Keep aloof from the Arabs for they will have a gloomy and dangerous future; isn't it that no one from among them will accompany Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī in his uprising?"¹ Shaykh ʿurr ʿĀmilī said: "Perhaps this statement of Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) refers to the beginning of the Mahdī's uprising, or it alludes to their minimal participation..."

The Messenger of Allah (□) said: "Great and noble personalities from the land of Shām will join al-Mahdī ('atfs) as well as those from the various tribes and lands adjacent to Shām; they are the ones whose hearts are said to be like pieces of iron. They are worshippers at night and lions during the day."²

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "Three hundred and thirteen persons, the same number as that of the supporters (Muslim soldiers) in the Battle of Badr, will pay allegiance to Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī in between the *rukn* and *maqām* (in the *Ka'bah*). From among them, great figures from among the people of Egypt, good men from Shām, and good men from among the people of Iraq can be seen and the Imām will rule to the extent that God would wish."³

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) also said concerning the city of Kūfah: "When Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im appears and proceeds to Kūfah, God will choose from behind Kūfah (Najaf al-Ashraf) seventy thousand truthful and upright people. They will be among the supporters and companions of the Imām."⁴

3. The Followers of Various Religions

Mufa□□al ibn ʿUmar reported that Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "During the advent of the Qā'im of Muḥammad's Progeny ('a), some people will come from behind the *Ka'bah* such as the twenty seven persons from the

¹ Shaykh a□-□ūsī, *Ghaybah*, p. 284; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 517; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 333.

² Ibn □āwūs, *Malā□im*, p. 142; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 304.

³ Shaykh a□-□ūsī, *Ghaybah* (new edition), p. 477; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 334; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 518.

⁴ Ibn □āwūs, *Malā□im*, p. 43; *Yanābī' al-Mawaddah*, vol. 2, p. 435; *Ash-Shī'ah wa'r-Raj'ah*, vol. 1, p. 456.

community [*qawm*] of Mūsā (Moses)—those who rightfully give judgment; the seven persons from the Companions of the Cave; Yūsha‘ the executor of Mūsā’s will [*waḥī*] (Joshua); the believer from the family of Pharaoh; Salmān al-Fārsī; Abū Dujānah al-Anḥārī,¹ and Mālik al-Ashtar.”²

Imām aḥ-ḥādīq ('a) said: “The souls of the believers can see the Progeny of Muḥammad ('a) in the mountains of Raḥawī, partake of their food, drink their beverages, participate in their assemblies, and talk with them until such time that the Qā'im from among us, the *Ahl al-Bayt*, rises up. At that time, God will incite them; they will accept the call of the Imām in large groups and accompany him. During that time, those who possess false beliefs will fall into doubt and skepticism, and the groups, parties, and claimants to fellowships and partisanship will disintegrate while those who are near to God [*muqarrabīn*] (and the believers) will attain salvation.”³

Ibn Jarī reported: “I have heard that when the twelve tribes of the Children of Israel killed their prophets and turned infidels, one tribe regretted doing such an act and was disgusted with it; they asked God to separate them from the rest of the tribes. God opened a tunnel underground in which they travelled for the period of one year and a half until they came out behind the land of China, and up to now they are still there. They are Muslims and they face our *Qiblah*.”⁴

Some say that on the night of the ascension [*mi'rāj*], Jibra'īl brought the Noble Prophet (ﷺ) to them, and the Prophet (ﷺ) read for them ten Meccan chapters [*suwar*] of the Qur'an. They were convinced and acknowledged his prophetic mission. The Prophet (ﷺ) ordered them to stay there, abandon work on Saturday (which is the Sabbath day for the Jews), establish prayer, and give the poor-rate [*zakāt*]. They accepted it and performed these duties.⁵ And the other obligations had not been made incumbent upon them.

Ibn 'Abbās said: “In the exegesis of the blessed verse [*āyah*]:

﴿وَقُلْنَا مِنْ بَعْدِهِ لِبَنِي إِسْرَائِيلَ اسْكُنُوا الْأَرْضَ فَإِذَا جَاءَ وَعْدُ الْآخِرَةِ جِئْنَا بِكُمْ لَفِيفًا﴾

¹ His name is Sammāk ibn Kharshah Anḥārī. The late Māmqānī said concerning him: “I regard him as Ḥasan al-ḥāl...” See *Tanqīḥ al-Maqāl*, vol. 2, p. 68.

² *Rawḥ al-Wā'iḥ*, vol. 2, p. 266; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 55.

³ *Al-Kāfi*, vol. 3, p. 131; *Al-Īqā*, p. 290; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 27, p. 308.

⁴ *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 54, p. 316.

Qiblah: the direction where the Muslims face in times of prayer and other acts, which is the Ka'bah in Mecca. [Trans.]

⁵ *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 54, p. 316.

*"After him We said to the Children of Israel, 'Take up residence in the land, and when the occasion of the other [promise] comes, We shall gather you in mixed company,'"*¹

it is said that the "promise in the end" [*wa'dah al-ākhirah*] refers to the advent of Ḥaḍrat 'Īsā ('a) who, along with the Children of Israel, will rise up. Our companions, however, have narrated that they will rise with the Qā'im of Muḥammad's Progeny ('a).²

On the exegesis of the noble verse, *"Among the people of Moses is a nation who guide [the people] by the truth and do justice thereby,"*³ the late Majlisī said: "There is a difference of opinions as to who constitute this *ummah*."

Others such as Ibn 'Abbās say: "They are a community that lives beyond China. Their land has been largely separated from China by a desert full of sand. They will never make any changes in the law of God."⁴

In describing them, Imam al-Bāqir ('a) said: "They do not regard property as exclusive to them unless their brethren in faith are treated as partners to it. They also rest at night and are awake in the day, and are engaged in agriculture. But none of us (people) could go to their land and none of them will come to us (people), and they are on the right path."⁵

Concerning the noble verse,

﴿وَمِنَ الَّذِينَ قَالُوا إِنَّا نَصَارَى أَخَذْنَا مِيثَاقَهُمْ فَنَسُوا حَظًّا مِمَّا ذُكِّرُوا بِهِ﴾

*"Also from those who say, 'We are Christians,' We took their pledge; but they forgot a part of what they were reminded,"*⁶

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "The Christians will be reminded of this path and rule, and a group from them will accompany Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs)."⁷

4. Jābalqā and Jābarsā

Imam a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "God has a city called Jābalqā in the eastern hemisphere having twelve gates of gold. The distance of one gate to another is one *farsang* (6 kilometers). There is a tower in each of the gates that can

¹ *Sūrah al-Isrā'* (or *Banī Isrā'īl*) 17:104.

² *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 54, p. 316.

³ *Sūrah al-A'raf* 7:159.

⁴ *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 54, p. 316.

⁵ *Ibid.*

⁶ *Sūrah al-Mā'idah* 5:14.

⁷ *Al-Kāfī*, vol. 5, p. 352; *At-Tahdhīb*, vol. 7, p. 405; *Wasā'il ash-Shī'ah*, vol. 14, p. 56; *Nūr ath-Thaqalayn*, vol. 1, p. 601; *Tafsīr Burhān*, vol. 1, p. 454; *Yanābī' al-Mawaddah*, p. 422.

accommodate an army of twelve thousand men. Their equipment, weapons and swords have been ready and they are waiting for the advent of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im. God has also a city called Jābarsā in the western hemisphere (with the same features), and I am the proof of Allah for them.”¹

There are numerous other □adīths about the other cities and lands in the world whose inhabitants never commit sins against God. For further information, refer to volume 54 of the book, *Bi□ār al-Anwār*.

It can be understood from the □adīths as a whole that Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) has armies and bases on standby, which at the time of his advent, will participate in combat. From some other □adīths, however, it can be understood that they have passed away a long time ago and in order to assist the Imām, God will revive them and let them return to the world.²

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: “Najm ibn A'yun is among those who will engage in *jihād* after their *raj'ah* (return to life).”³ He also said regarding °amrān and Maysar: “It is as if I can see °amrān ibn A'in and Maysar ibn 'Abdul-'Azīz holding swords and delivering sermons to the people [“الناس بين يخطان”] between □afā⁴ and Marwah⁵ (in Mecca).”⁶

In *Mu'jam ar-Rijāl al-°adīth*, the late Āyatullāh al-'U□mā Sayyid Abū'l-Qāsim al-Khū'i interprets “يخطان الناس” as “striking the people with the sword”.

Similarly, Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) looked at Dāwūd Raqī⁷ and said: “Anyone who wants to see a man from among the supporters of Ḥaḍrat al-

¹ *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 54, p. 334; vol. 26, p. 47.

² The Shī'ah believe that in this very world and after the advent of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs), the Infallible Imāms and a group of the believers as well as a group of the infidels will be revived and return again to the world. There are tens of □adīths in this regard. My father, the late Āyatullāh Shaykh Mu□ammad Ri□ā □abasī Najafī (r) has discussed it in detail in the second volume of the book, *Ash-Shī'ah wa'r-Raj'ah* (Najaf, 1385 AH). Recently, this book has been translated into Persian by □ujjat al-Islām Shaykh Mīr Shāvalad and published as *Setāreh-ye Derakhshān* [Brilliant Star]. Fifteen years ago, by making use of the writings and words of my late father, I have also published a relevant lecture note.

³ *Al-Ayqā□ min al-Haj'ah*, p. 269.

⁴ Šafā: a hill in Mecca which is an extension of Abū Qubays Mountain to the east of the Masjid al-Ḥarām. Traversing the distance between this place and Marwah (another place in Mecca) is another devotional *hajj* rite and is termed *sa'ī* [literally: effort, trial, attempt]. [Trans.]

⁵ Marwah: a hill located between the east and the southeast of Mecca, north of Šafā. [Trans.]

⁶ Kashī, *Rijāl*, p. 402; *Al-Khulā□ah*, p. 98; Qahbā'i, *Rijāl*, vol. 2, p. 289; *Al-Ayqā□ min al-Haj'ah*, p. 284; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 54, p. 4; *Mu'jam Rijāl al-□adīth*, vol. 6, p. 259.

⁷ Regarding the reliability of Dāwūd Raqī, the 'ulamā' of *rijāl* have extensive discussions. Some have considered this *ḥadīth* as “weak” [□a'īf] while others treated it reliable [mu'athḥaq]. Another *ḥadīth* has been reported from Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) as he has said:

Qā'im should look at this man (i.e., this man is among the supporters of al-Mahdī who will return to life again)."¹

The Number of Soldiers

Regarding the number of the soldiers and supporters of the Imām of the Time ('atfs), there are various *ḥadīths* available. Some *ḥadīths* say that their number is three hundred and thirteen while others say ten thousand and more. It is necessary here to highlight two points:

1. The three hundred and thirteen persons—as mentioned in the *ḥadīths*—are the special forces that will be in the company of the Imām at the beginning of the uprising. They will be the administrators of the global government of the Imām of the Time ('a). As the late Arbēlī has stated in *Kashf an-Ni'mah*: "From this *ḥadīth* (regarding ten thousand persons), it can be deduced that the number of supporters of the Imām cannot be limited to three hundred and thirteen, for it is only the number of supporters who will be in the company of the Imām at the beginning of the uprising."

2. The number, four thousand, ten thousand, etc. which has been mentioned in some *ḥadīths*, is not the total number of the military forces of the Mahdī ('a). Instead—as can also be deduced from the *ḥadīths*—each of these figures indicates the number of forces who will participate in the uprising at a particular juncture of the Imām's advent or in a particular battle in a certain part of the world. Perhaps, there are other issues we do not know, which will be clarified with the advent of the Imām ('atfs).

1. Special Forces

Yūnus ibn ʿĪbyān said: "I was in the company of Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) when he mentioned the name of one of the supporters of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im and said: "They are three hundred and thirteen persons and each of them sees himself as being among the three hundred persons."²

As the Imām ('a) said that "Each of them sees himself as being among the three hundred," there are two probabilities that can be entertained in this regard: (1) that the physical strength of each of them would be equivalent to that of three hundred persons just as the strength of one of the believers at that time would be equivalent to that of forty men; and (2) that each of them would have three hundred forces and sees himself among three hundred forces under his command. Therefore, they will probably be commanders of

"The station and position of Dāwūd to me is that of Miqdād to the Prophet (□)." *Tanqīḥ al-Maqāl*, vol. 2, p. 414.

¹ *Al-Ayqāḥ min al-Haj'ah*, p. 264.

² *Dalā'il al-Imāmah*, p. 320; *Al-Muḥajjah*, p. 46.

approximately three hundred soldiers. It is equally probable that it only means what it literally says. That is, each of them regards himself part of that number as some have said.

Imām Zayn al-‘Ābidīn ('a) said: “Those who will disappear from their locations in order to assist Imām al-Qā’im ('atfs) are three hundred and thirteen—equal to that of Badr—who will gather together in Mecca in the morning of the following day.”¹

Imām al-Jawād ('a) said that the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: “The Imām of the Time ('a) will appear in the land of Tuhāmah (Mecca). He has treasures that are not gold and silver, but powerful horses and illustrious men who are equal in number to that of the Companions in Badr. They are three hundred and thirteen from different parts of the world who will come to rally around him. There is a sealed book in his possession in which the number of his supporters has been written along with their names, cities, races, characteristics, and epithets. They will all be under the command of al-Mahdī ('atfs).”²

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: “The people will gather around him like birds until they reach three hundred and fourteen persons—some of whom will be women, and the Imām will prevail over any tyrant and son of a tyrant, and justice will be as the people would wish. I wish the dead among them were among the living and benefit from justice!”³

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: “Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will appear with three hundred and thirteen persons—equal to the number of Companions in Badr—without any prior notice and arrangement. This is when they would have been scattered like an autumn cloud. They are lions in the day and worshippers at the night.”⁴

Ibn al-Taghlab said that Imām al-Qā’im ('a) said: “Three hundred and thirteen persons will soon come to your mosque (Mecca). The people of Mecca know that these persons are not related to their fathers and forefathers (and are not among the people of Mecca). Each of them has a sword on which a word is inscribed from which thousands of words (problems) can be unravelled and solved.”⁵

In some *ḥadīths*, the names of some of them have been mentioned of which it shall suffice to quote two *ḥadīths*:

¹ *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 654; ‘Ayyāshī, *Tafsīr ‘Ayyāshī*, vol. 2, p. 56; *Nūr ath-Thaqalayn*, vol. 1, p. 139; vol. 4, p. 94; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 323.

² ‘*Uyūn Akhbār ar-Ridā*, vol. 1, p. 59; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 310.

³ *Majma‘ az-Zawā‘id*, vol. 7, p. 315.

⁴ Ibn al-‘Awās, *Malā‘im*, p. 64; *Al-Fatāwā al-‘Adhiyyah*, p. 31.

⁵ *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 671; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 286.

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said to Mufa□□al ibn 'Umar, one of his companions: "You and forty four other men are among the supporters and companions of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im."¹

Perhaps, what is meant by "forty four" is the number from among the companions of Imām a□-□ādiq ('a).

The Imām also said: "During the advent of the Qā'im from Muḥammad's Progeny ('a), twenty seven persons will come out from behind the *Ka'bah* and twenty five persons from the community [*qawm*] of Mūsā (Moses); those who were judges that were always on the path of truth and justice; the seven persons from the Companions of the Cave; Yusha' the executor of Mūsā's will [*waqī*] (Joshua); the believer from the family of Pharaoh; Salmān al-Fārsī; Abū Dujānah al-An□ārī,² and Mālik al-Ashtar will return to the world."³ In some *ḥadīths* Miqdād ibn Aswad has also been mentioned.

Based on the *ḥadīths*, the angels who move things from place to place will transfer the good among the dead to holy places such as the House of God (*Ka'bah*).⁴ Therefore, these persons are perhaps those whose bodies will be transferred near the *Ka'bah* and their *raj'ah* or return to life will take place right there. Based on other reports, this place is behind the city of Kūfah, i.e. Najaf al-Ashraf, which again will render the meaning of the *ḥadīth* correct; for their bodies will be transferred there, i.e. Najaf al-Ashraf.

It is worthy of note that these individuals have experience in struggle in the political and military arenas against the *ṭāghūtīs*⁵ of their time, particularly Salmān al-Fārsī, Abū Dujānah, Mālik al-Ashtar, and Miqdād ibn al-Aswad who had participated in the wars during the early period of Islam and had demonstrated their own acts of bravery. Some of them have also experience in leadership and command.

2. The Army of Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs)

Abū Ba□īr said: "A man from among the inhabitants of Kūfah asked Imām a□-□ādiq ('a): 'How many persons will be with Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im in

¹ *Dalā'il al-Imāmah*, p. 248; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 573.

² His name is Samāk ibn Khurshah An□ārī. The late Māmqañī said concerning him: "I regard him as Ḥasan al-□āl..." See *Tanqīh al-Maqāl*, vol. 2, p. 68.

³ *Rawḥ al-Wā'i□īn*, p. 266; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 55.

⁴ *Durar al-Akhbār*, vol. 1, p. 258.

⁵ The term *ṭāghūt* applies to any idol, object, or individual that prevents men from doing what is good, and leads them astray. The term has been used eight times in the Qur'an. Prior to Islam, *ṭāghūt* had been the name of the one of the idols of the Quraysh tribe. This name is used also to mean Satan. Moreover, the term is used to indicate one who rebels against lofty values, or who surpasses all bounds in his despotism and tyranny and claims the prerogatives of divinity for himself whether explicitly or implicitly. [Trans.]

his uprising? People are saying that the companions of Imām are equal in number to the soldiers (of Islam) in (the Battle of) Badr, i.e. three hundred and thirteen persons.’ The Imām (‘a) said: ‘Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī will not appear unless he is with a strong and powerful army and a powerful army will not have less than ten thousand combatants’.”¹

The Imām (‘a) also said: “When God grants Ḥaḍrat al-Qā’im (‘atfs) the permission to stage the uprising, three hundred and thirteen persons will pay allegiance to him. The Imām will stay in Mecca until the number of his companions will reach ten thousand persons. Then, he will set out toward Medina.”²

The Commander of the Faithful (‘a) said: “The Mahdī will appear with an army of at least twelve thousand persons and a maximum number of fifteen thousand persons. Fear and intimidation (of the enemies) with respect to his military forces will go ahead of his soldiers. No enemy will confront them without being defeated. He and his soldiers will not reproach anybody in the way of Allah. The slogan of his soldiers is this: ‘Let them die! Let them die!’”³

Imām a□-□ādiq (‘a) said: “The Imām of the Time (‘atfs) will not appear unless their assembly and number would be completed.” The narrator asked: “How much is their number?” The Imām (‘a) replied: “Ten thousand persons.”⁴

Shaykh ʿurr ‘Āmilī said: “It is stated in the *ḥadīth* that the total number of the army of the Imām of the Time (‘atfs) is one hundred thousand persons.”⁵

3. Security Guard Corps

Ka‘b said: “A man from Banī Hāshim will reside in Bayt al-Muqaddas. The number of his security forces is twelve thousand.” In another *ḥadīth* he said: “The number of his guards is thirty six thousand persons, and twelve thousand will be stationed at the beginning of every highway leading toward Bayt al-Muqaddas.”⁶

¹ *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 654; ‘Ayyāshī, *Tafsīr ‘Ayyāshī*, vol. 1, p. 134; *Nūr ath-Thaqalayn*, vol. 4, p. 98; vol. 1, p. 340; *Al-‘Adad al-Qawīyyah*, p. 65; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 548.

² *Al-Mustajāḍ*, p. 511.

³ Ibn □āwūs, *Malā□im*, p. 65.

⁴ Nu‘mānī, *Ḡaybah*, p. 307; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 545.

⁵ *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 578; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, pp. 307, 367; *Bishārah al-Islām*, p. 190.

⁶ Ibn □ammād, *Fitan*, p. 106; *Aqd ad-Darar*, p. 143.

Of course, the word *ḥaras* in the *ḥadīth* also means “aid” and “help” but this meaning in the context of *ḥadīth* is not appropriate because it possibly means the *supporters* and *friends* of the Imām ('atfs).

Mustering the Soldiers

As stated earlier, the soldiers of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will gather around him from the different corners of the world. The *ḥadīths* indicate various means by which the soldiers become aware of the uprising and how they gather in Mecca. Some who are asleep in their beds at night will find themselves in the presence of the Imām ('a) in the morning. Others will travel by traversing long distances within very short periods of time and come into the presence of the Imām ('a). After being informed of the uprising, a certain group will join the Imām ('a) by riding on the clouds.

Let us look at a certain *ḥadīth* in this regard:

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: “When the permission (of God) for the appearance and uprising is to be granted to Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs), he will recite “God” in His Hebrew name. At that time his supporters will be ready; they will number three hundred and thirteen persons who will be scattered like the autumn clouds and they will also be the standard-bearers (and commanders). While resting at night, some of them will disappear and in the morning they will find themselves in Mecca. Others will be seen riding on clouds in the daytime. They will be recognized by their names, their fathers, their families, and their reputations.”¹

Mufa□□al ibn 'Umar said: “I asked: ‘May I be your ransom! Which group has a higher station in terms of faith?’ The Imām ('a) said: ‘They are those who will move on top of the clouds, those who will disappear about whose station this blessed verse [*āyah*] has been revealed:

﴿أَيْنَ مَا تَكُونُوا يَأْتِ بِكُمُ اللَّهُ جَمِيعًا﴾

“Wherever you may be, Allah will bring you all together.””²

The Messenger of Allah (□) said: “A community [*qawm*] will emerge after you that will gather the world under their feet, and the world will be spread out for them, while the men and women of Persia will serve them. The earth will be traversed under their steps in less than the blink of an eye in such a manner that anyone of them could cover the distance from east to west

¹ *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 672; 'Ayyāshī, *Tafsīr 'Ayyāshī*, vol. 1, p. 67; Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 315; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 2, p. 368; *Al-Kāfi*, vol. 8, p. 313; *Al-Mu□ajjah*, p. 19.

² *Sūrah al-Baqarah* 2:148.

in an instant. They are not of this world and the world has also no benefit and portion for them.”¹

Imām al-Bāqir (‘a) said: “The Shī‘ah and supporters of Mahdī (‘atfs) will go toward him from different parts of the world; the earth will be gathered under their feet and by traversing the world they will reach the Imām (‘a) and pay allegiance to him.”²

‘Abdullāh ibn ‘Ajlān said: “I was in the company of Imām a□-□ādiq (‘a) when he was talking about the uprising of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘a). I asked him: ‘How can we be informed of the advent of the Mahdī?’ He answered: ‘While getting up in the morning you will see a letter under your pillow in which it would be written: ‘Following the Mahdī is an excellent and good deed’.”³

Imām ar-Riḍā (‘a) said: “By Allah! If our Qā’im stages the uprising, God will gather the Shī‘ah from all cities (and countries) to be around him.”⁴

Imām a□-□ādiq (‘a) also said: “While the young Shī‘ah will be sleeping on rooftops, suddenly and without prior notice, they will be brought in multitudes in one night beside him (‘atfs). Then in the morning everybody will be gathered around him (‘atfs).”⁵

Things Necessary in Recruiting and Training the Soldiers

In this regard, the Commander of the Faithful (‘a) said: “The supporters of the Mahdī (‘atfs) who number three hundred and thirteen will go to him and they will find him who had been hidden, and they will ask: ‘Are you the Promised Mahdī?’ He will answer: ‘Yes, O my supporters!’ Then he will again hide himself from them and go to Medina. Because they will become aware of this, his supporters will leave for Medina and when they arrive at the city of Medina, the Imām (‘a), still being hidden will return to the city of Mecca and in order to join him, his supporters will go to Mecca. Once again, the Imām (‘a) will go to the city of Medina and his supporters will go to Medina (for the second time), again he will go to Mecca, and this routine will be repeated three times.

“The Imām (‘a) will test his supporters in such a manner in order to be aware of their degree of adherence to him. Thereafter, he will appear

¹ *Firdaws al-Akhhbār*, vol. 2, p. 449.

² *Rawḍah al-Wā‘iḥīn*, vol. 2, p. 263; *Aqd ad-Darar*, p. 65; *Muttaqī Hindī*, *Burhān*, p. 145.

³ *Biḍā’ al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 324; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 582; *Biḍā’ al-Anwār*, vol. 13 (Persian translation), p. 916.

⁴ *Majma‘ al-Bayān*, vol. 1, p. 231; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 524; *Nūr ath-Thaqalayn*, vol. 1, p. 140; *Biḍā’ al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 291.

⁵ *Nu‘mānī*, *Ghaybah*, p. 316; *Biḍā’ al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 198; *Bishārah al-Islām*, p. 198.

between ʔafā and Marwah and while addressing his supporters he will say: 'I will not pursue any activity unless you pay allegiance to me under certain conditions, adhere to it and not violate it in any way. I am also obliged with respect to eight things.' In reply to him, the Imām's ('a) supporters will say in unison: 'We do render our total submission to you, follow you, and accept whatever conditions you set. Kindly tell us what those conditions are.'

"The Imām ('atfs) will go to Mount ʔafā in Mecca and his supporters will also follow him. Addressing them there, he will say: 'I will make a covenant with you under these conditions: (1) You shall not desert the battlefield; (2) you shall not steal; (3) you shall not perform any illegitimate act; (4) you shall not commit unlawful acts; (5) you shall not do any evil and obnoxious act; (6) you shall not unjustly strike anyone; (7) you shall not amass gold and silver; (8) you shall not hoard wheat and barley; (9) you shall not destroy any mosque; (10) you shall not bear witness to falsehood; (11) you shall not despise and belittle any believer; (12) you shall not consume anything earned from usury; (13) you shall endure adversities and difficulties; (14) you shall not curse any theist and monotheist; (15) you shall not drink wine; (16) you shall not wear brocade; (17) you shall not wear silk clothing; (18) you shall not pursue an escapee; (19) you shall not shed blood unlawfully; (20) you shall not nourish the hypocrite and infidel; (21) you shall not wear fur garments; (22) you shall make the soil as your pillow (perhaps it means that "you shall be humble and meek"); (23) you shall shun unworthy acts; and (24) you shall enjoin what is good and forbid what is wrong.

"If you abide with and act upon these conditions, it is incumbent upon me to choose no one but you as my assistants; I have to wear nothing but what you wear; I have nothing to eat but what you eat; I have nothing to ride but what you ride; I should be with you wherever you go; I have to go wherever you set out for; I have to be satisfied and pleased with a small force and fill the earth with justice and equity just as it has been full of injustice and oppression; and I have to worship God as He is worthy to be worshipped. I will remain committed to what I have said while you also have to remain committed to your pledges.'

"The companions said: 'We are satisfied and we promise to be committed to what you have said.' Then, the Imām ('a) will shake the hands of each of his supporters (as a sign of allegiance)'."¹

Of course, it must be noted that the Imām ('atfs) will set these conditions and impose this test on his special forces because they will serve as

¹ *Ash-Shī'ah wa 'r-Raj'ah*, vol. 1, p. 157; *'Aqd ad-Darar*, p. 96.

administrators in his global government and they are ones who, having good deeds, will play crucial roles in spreading justice in the world.

Meanwhile, it must be borne in mind that the chain of transmission of this *ḥadīth* is dubious as it is from the *Khuṭbah al-Bayān*, which some scholars regard as “weak” [*a‘īf*] notwithstanding the fact that some prominent figures have come to its defense and reinforcement.¹

Peculiarities of the Soldiers

Many peculiarities and salient characteristics of the companions and supporters of al-Mahdī ('a) have been stated in the *ḥadīths* and we will mention some of them below:

1. Worship and Devotion

In describing the supporters of al-Mahdī ('atfs), Imām aḥ-ḥādiq ('a) said: “They keep regular vigils and spend the night standing in worship of God. During their prayers, their silent supplications are like the buzz of

¹ In a footnote pertaining to the *Khuṭbah al-Bayān* in the first volume of *As-Shī'ah wa'r-Raj'ah*, my late father has thus written: “We have quoted this sermon [*khuṭbah*] from the book *Dawḥah al-Anwār* of Shaykh Muḥammad Yazdī but it is not only confined to this book. In fact, it has also been quoted in other books as Āqā Buzurg Tehrānī mentions the titles of the following books in volume 7 of his *Adh-Dharī'ah*:

- a. Qāṭi Sa'īd Qummī, *Sharḥ-e Ḥadīth Ghamāmah*, 1103 AH;
- b. Muḥaqqiq Qummī, *Jāmi' ash-Shitāb*, p. 772;
- c. A manuscript in Imām ar-Riḍā ('a) Library dated 729 AH;
- d. A manuscript inscribed by 'Alī ibn Jamāluddīn dated 923 AH;
- e. *Khulā'ah at-Tarjumān*; and
- f. *Ma'ālīm at-Tanzīl*.

This sermon has some expressions that are repugnant to the essence of monotheism [*tawḥīd*], but in all the manuscripts these lines are not included and as such, there is no doubt that they are among the forgeries of the *Ghullahs* (a certain group that attributes divinities to the infallible Imāms ('a)).

But the expressions such as

انا مورك الاشجار و مشر النمار

and the like are also numerous in other *ḥadīths*. The same is true with this phrase,

بنا اثرت الاشجار و أيعت النمار و جرت الأنهار و بنا يزل الغيث و تبت عشب الأرض.

In *Ziyārah al-Muḥaqqiq*, it is thus stated:

و بكم تبت الأرض أشجارها و بكم تخرج الأشجار و أثمارها...

And in *Ziyārah ar-Rajabiyyah*, it is also stated:

أنا سائلكم و آملكم فيما إليكم التفويض و عليكم التعويض فيكم بجر المبيض و يشفى المريض و...

Therefore, every expression or phrase that was apparently contradictory to the apparent meaning of the Qur'an and couldn't be justified as authentic has nothing to do whatsoever with the Infallibles ('a). The presence of some expressions in the sermon that are forgeries should not necessarily render the whole noble sermon as unauthentic.

honeybees. They mount their horses during the daytime in line with the performance of their duties. They are worshippers at night and lions during the day. On account of fear of God, they are in a particular state. God will extend succor to the rightful Imām through them.”¹

The Imām ('a) also said: “It is as if I can see the Qā'im of Muḥammad's Progeny ('a) and his supporters behind the city of Kūfah. As if birds are spreading their wings over their heads. They are running out of travel provisions and their garments are worn out and patched. There are marks of prostration on their foreheads. Yes, they are lions in the day and worshippers in the night. Their hearts are like pieces of iron, firm and formidable. Each of them has the strength equal to that of forty men. They will not be killed by anyone but by hypocrites and infidels. God has thus described them in the Qur'an:

﴿إِنَّ فِي ذَلِكَ لَآيَاتٍ لِّلْمُتَوَسِّمِينَ﴾

“There are indeed signs in that for the percipient.”^{2,3}

2. Love for the Imām and Obedience to Him

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: “The Master of the Affair [□ā□ib al-amr] ('atfs) will be in occultation in some of these valleys (*Dhī □awā*). Two nights prior to his advent, his closest attendant will go to meet some of the Imām's supporters, asking them: ‘How many of you are here?’ They will answer: ‘Forty persons.’ He will ask: ‘What will happen to you if you see your leader?’ They will reply: ‘By God! If he lives in a mountain, we will be with him and live the same way’.”⁴

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: “The supporters of the Imām ('atfs) will place their hands on the saddle of his horse and by doing so, they will be asking for blessings. They will form a ring around him and in battles they will offer their bodies and souls for him. They will accept and do whatever he would ask from them.”⁵

The same Imām ('a) also stated the following in describing the supporters of al-Mahdī ('a): “He has men whose hearts will seem to be as if they were from pieces of iron... They are more obedient to the Imām than a

¹ *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 308.

² *Sūrah al-□ijr* 15:75.

³ *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 386.

⁴ ‘Ayyāshī, *Tafsīr ‘Ayyāshī*, vol. 2, p. 56; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 341.

⁵ *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 308.

slave girl would be in relation to her master and owner, and they are subservient to his command.”¹

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: “God will gather warriors for Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī from the different corners of the world whose number would be equal to that of the (Muslim) combatants in (the Battle of) Badr. They are very diligent and determined in their obedience to him.”²

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: “It is as if I can see Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im and his supporters stationed in Najaf (Kūfah) and (they are so steady and unflinching there) that it is as if birds are sitting on their heads.”³

The warriors are standing with such discipline, lack of motion and total submission to him that it is as if birds are sitting over their heads, for if they would show the least movement, the birds will fly away.

3. Strong and Young Soldiers

The Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: “The supporters of al-Mahdī are all young. There are no old and aged among them but a few who are like antimony for the eye and salt for the food. Of course, the least amount of a thing needed in food is salt.”⁴

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: “What Prophet Lū□ (Lot) ('a) meant in his statement addressed to his enemies when he said, ‘I wish I had a potent force against you or I can take refuge in a formidable column,’ was a force similar to the potent force of the Promised Mahdī ('atfs) and his supporters each of whom has the strength equal to that of forty men. They have hearts firmer than steel and when they traverse mountains, the rocks tremble. They do not sheathe their swords unless when God wants and is pleased with it.”⁵

In this regard, Imām as-Sajjād ('a) said: “When our Qā'im stages the uprising, God will keep away sluggishness and weakness from our Shī'ah and make their hearts as firm and resolute as steel; He will grant each of them the strength of forty men and they will become rulers and leading figures on earth.”⁶

¹ *Loc. cit.*

² *Ibid.*, p. 310.

³ *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 585.

⁴ Shaykh a□-□ūsī, *Ghaybah*, p. 284; Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 315; Ibn □āwūs, *Malā□im*, p. 145; *Kanz al-Ummāl*, vol. 14, p. 592; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 334; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 517.

⁵ *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 673; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, pp. 317, 327.

⁶ *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 673; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, pp. 317, 327, 372; *Yanābī' al-Mawaddah*, p. 424; *I□qāq al-□aqq*, vol. 13, p. 346.

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "In the government of al-Mahdī ('atfs) our Shī'ah will be the rulers and leading figures on earth and each of them will have the strength of forty men."¹

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "There is fear of the enemy in the hearts of our Shī'ah (today), but when our government is established and Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs) appears, each of our Shī'ah will be more fearless than a lion and sharper than a spear. They will crush our enemies underfoot and slay them with their hands."²

'Abdul-Malik ibn A'yūn said: "As I got up to say goodbye to Imām al-Bāqir ('a), I leaned on my hands and said: 'I wish I could perceive the advent of °a□rat al-Qā'im ('atfs) in my youth (at the moment when I am physically sound).' The Imām ('a) said: 'Are you not satisfied that your enemies are killing one another while you are safe in your own houses? If the Imām ('a) appears, each of you will be given the strength of forty men and your hearts will be like steel so much so that if you struck the mountains with such hearts, the mountains will rend asunder and be pulled up. And you will become the leaders and trustees on earth'."³

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "At the time of our affair (the government of °a□rat al-Mahdī), God will remove fear from the hearts of our Shī'ah and place it on the hearts of our enemies. At that moment, each of our Shī'ah would be sharper than a spear and braver than a lion. A single Shī'ah will hit his enemy with a spear, strike him with a sword, and crush him underfoot."⁴

The same Imām ('a) also said: "The supporters of al-Mahdī ('atfs) are men whose hearts are as firm and formidable as iron. Doubt and skepticism about the Essence of God are never entertained in those hearts. They are firmer than stone. If they were given the mission to shuffle the mountains and interchange them, they would quickly do it, and if the mission of destroying a city is given to them, they would be able to destroy it [with such speed and decisiveness that it would be] as if they were eagles sitting on horses."⁵

¹ Shaykh al-Mufīd, *Ikhtīāf*, p. 24; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 372.

² Shaykh al-Mufīd, *Ikhtīāf*, p. 24; *Ba□ā'ir ad-Darajāt*, vol. 1, p. 124; *Yanābī' al-Mawaddah*, pp. 448, 489; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 557; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, pp. 318, 372.

³ *Al-Kāfī*, vol. 8, p. 282; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 335.


⁴ *Kharā'ij*, vol. 2, p. 840; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 336. See □ilyah al-Awliyā', vol. 3, p. 184; *Kashf al-Ghumah*, p. 345; *Yanābī' al-Mawaddah*, p. 448. Similar □adīth has also been reported from Imām al-Bāqir ('a) as recorded in *Ba□ā'ir ad-Darajāt*, p. 24; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 2, p. 189.

⁵ *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 308.

4. Beloved Soldiers

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "It is as if I can see the supporters of al-Mahdī ('atfs) dominating heaven and earth and there is nothing in the world that would not be under their rule and sovereignty. Fierce animals and predatory birds also seek their pleasure. They will be so beloved that everywhere on earth will brag and boast to the other, saying: 'Today, one of the supporters of al-Mahdī ('atfs) dropped in and passed by here'."¹

5. Lovers of Martyrdom

Regarding the characteristics of °a□rat al-Qā'im ('atfs), Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "They have an intense fear of God and they aspire for martyrdom. Their aspiration is to be slain in the way of Allah. Their slogan is 'O avengers of °usayn ('a)!' As they move, the fear and dread of them in the hearts of their enemies move with the distance of one month's travel."² 

¹ *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 673; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 493; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 327.

² *Mustadrak al-Wasā'il*, vol. 11, p. 114.

Chapter 4

The Wars of Imām al-Mahdī (‘*afs*)

Since the objective behind the uprising of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī is the establishment of divine government throughout the world and the elimination of tyranny and tyrants, it is natural that the Imām will face many difficulties and obstacles in realizing this objective. By conducting military operations, he has to remove those hurdles along the way and overrun one country after another so as to prevail in the east and west of the world and establish the government of divine justice on earth. In this chapter we shall draw your attention to the *ḥadīths* related to this.

The Reward for the Strugglers [*mujāhidīn*] and Martyrs [*shuhadā’*]

Since the objective behind the wars at the time of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘*a*) is the annihilation of corruption and tyranny for the formation of worldwide Islamic government, participation in the war on the side of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā’im (‘*atfs*) also has multiple rewards so much so that if a combatant eliminates one person from the enemy, his reward would be that of twenty or twenty five martyrs [*shuhadā’*]. If he attained martyrdom, he will have the reward of two martyrs. Similarly, the disabled and wounded veterans will have special value in the government of the Imām of the Time in addition to their spiritual station. The families of martyrs will have also special value.

While addressing the Shī‘ah, Imām al-Bāqir (‘*a*) said: “If you would be as we have enjoined and you would not go against our commands—if in such a condition one of you would die prior to the advent of our Qā’im—he will be a martyr, and if he perceive the Imām and attained martyrdom on his side,

he will have the reward of two martyrs, and if he slew one of our enemies, he would have the reward of twenty martyrs.”¹

In this *ḥadīth*, the value of eliminating an enemy is regarded as much higher than attaining martyrdom because killing the enemy brings about the pleasure of God, relief of the servants of God and honor for Islam whereas in earning the grace of martyrdom, the martyr merely attains perfection. Therefore, combatants in the warfront have to think more about the enemy than about attaining martyrdom.

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: “Martyrdom on the side of the Imām of the Time ('atfs) has the reward of two martyrs.”²

It is thus stated in *Al-Kāfi*: “If a soldier of the Imām kills one of our enemies, he shall have the reward of twenty martyrs and anyone who attains martyrdom on the side of our Qā'im, the reward of twenty five martyrs shall be his.”³

Regarding the way the Imām of the Time ('atfs) would behave with the martyrs and their families, the Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: “[After the operations, Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('a)] will proceed to Kūfah and stay there... And there will be no martyr whose debts will not be paid by the Imām, and he will give stipends and remuneration to his family.”⁴

This *ḥadīth* bespeaks of the Imām's attention to be paid to the families of martyrs.

War Armaments

The type of weapons that Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('a) will use in the conflicts would be fundamentally different from that of other weapons at that time. The word “*ṣayf*” [sword] mentioned in the *ḥadīths* might allude to a particular weapon and not refer to a particular sword. This is because the weapon of the Imām is one which when used will make the walls of cities crumble to pieces and make a pulverized city turn into mere smoke. By only a single blow, the enemy will melt like salt or heated lead.

Based on a *ḥadīth*, the weapons of the Imām's soldiers are made of iron but they are such that if they fell on a mountain, the latter will be divided into two.

¹ Shaykh a□-□ūsī, *Amālī*, vol. 1, p. 236; *Bishārah al-Muṣṭafā*, p. 113; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 529; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 123, 317.

² *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 490. See Shaykh a□-□ūsī, *Amālī*, vol. 1, p. 236; Burqī, *Ma□āsin*, p. 173; *Nūr ath-Thaqalayn*, vol. 5, p. 356.

³ *Al-Kāfi*, vol. 2, p. 222.

⁴ 'Ayyāshī, *Tafsīr 'Ayyāshī*, vol. 2, p. 261; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 224.

Perhaps, the enemy will also use incendiary weapons because the Imām ('a) will wear an anti-heat garment. It is the same garment from heaven that Jibrā'il (Archangel Gabriel) ('a) brought to Ibrāhīm (Prophet Abraham) ('a) for him not to die in the fire of Namrūd (Nimrod) and thus be saved. That garment will be at the disposal of Ḥaḍrat Baqiyyatullāh ('atfs), and if it were not the case—that is, if advanced weapons and industry were not at the disposal of the enemy—maybe there would be no need for the Imām to wear such a garment. It is also possible that it hints that there is a miraculous aspect to it.

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "When our Qā'im stages the uprising, the swords of combat will descend—on each of which the name and father's name of each of the combatants will be written."¹

Regarding a group of supporters of al-Mahdī ('atfs), Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "The supporters of al-Mahdī ('a) have swords made of iron, but this is different from common iron. If one of them would strike a mountain with his sword, the mountain will be divided into two. With such soldiers and equipment, Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs) will wage war on India, Daylām, Kurdistān,² Rome,³ the Berbers, Fārs, and between Jābarsā and Jābalqā."⁴

The means of defense possessed by the forces of al-Mahdī ('atfs) will be such that the weapons of the enemy will be rendered useless (and harmless) against them. In this regard, Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "If the supporters of al-Mahdī ('a) encountered an army stretching from east to west, they would be able to crush them in a moment, and the weapons of the enemy would never have any effect upon them."⁵

The Imām's Conquest of the World for the Liberation of Mankind

There are two sets of *ḥadīths* concerning the military operations of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) and the conquest of cities and countries. Some *ḥadīths* have made mention of the conquest of the east and west, the south and the *Qiblah*, and finally the entire world while others indicate the conquest of particular portions of the world.

There is no doubt that the Imām ('atfs) will dominate and rule over the entire world. But the reason why some cities have been mentioned is probably on account of the importance they will have at that time. This

¹ Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 244; *Bi'ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 369; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 542.

² *Kurdhā* [Kurds] in the original text; that is, with the Kurds. [Trans.]

³ *Rūmyān* [Romans] in the original text; that is, with the Romans. [Trans.]

⁴ *Ba'ā'ir ad-Darajāt*, p. 141; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 523; *ab'irah al-Walī*, p. 97; *Bi'ār al-Anwār*, vol. 27, pp. 41; vol. 54, p. 334.

⁵ *Ibid.*

importance might be due to the fact that they will be centers of power in those days and will have control over some parts of the world. It is also possible that those lands would be vast in which the bulk of the world's population are concentrated, or that they are the center of the hopes and aspirations of particular sects and religions so much so that if such a city fell, all the followers of a certain belief system would surrender. It could also be because of their military and strategic importance such that their fall would result in the failure of enemy operations and pave the way for the offensive operations of the forces of the Imām ('a).

The selection of Mecca as the point of origin of the uprising and then the selection of Iraq, the city of Kūfah in particular, as the military-political capital of the government, the march toward Shām (Syria) and the conquest of Bayt al-Muqaddas emphasize this point. This is because today, the political, religious and military importance of these three places is proverbial to all.

The first set of *ḥadīths* concern the Imām's dominance over the entire world, some of which are as follows:

Ḥaḍrat ar-Riḍā ('a) reported from his forefathers that the Messenger of Allah said: "When they took me on the ascension [*mi'rāj*]... I asked: 'O God! Will they (Imāms) be my successors after me?' The voice replied: 'O Muḥammad! Yes, they are My friends, chosen ones, and proofs after you for My servants, and they will be the successors and best servants (of God) after you. By My Honor and Glory! Through them I will let My religion and creed prevail among mankind, and exalt My word [*kalimah*] through them. Through the last of them, I will purge the world of the existence of rebellious people and sinners, and I will grant him sovereignty over the east and west.'"¹

On the exegesis of the noble Qur'anic verse [*āyah*],

﴿الَّذِينَ إِن مَّكَّنَّاهُمْ فِي الْأَرْضِ أَقَامُوا الصَّلَاةَ وَآتَوُا الزَّكَاةَ﴾

*"Those who, if We granted them power in the land, maintain the prayer, give the zakāt,"*²

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "This verse is related to the Progeny of Muḥammad ('a) and the Last Imām. God will grant 'aḥmad al-Mahdī ('atfs) and his supporters control and influence over the east and west of the world."³

¹ *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 1, p. 366; *Uyūn Akhbār ar-Riḍā*, vol. 1, p. 262; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 18, p. 346.

² *Sūrah al-ʿajj* 22:41.

³ *Tafsīr Burhān*, vol. 2, p. 96; *Yanābī' al-Mawaddah*, p. 425; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 51, p. 1.

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: "The Mahdī is from my progeny and through him God will conquer the east and west."¹

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) also said: "At the time of the advent of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs), God will let religion return to its original state, and he will attain glorious victories for Him and through Him. At that time, no one will remain on earth except the Muslims who recite the formula of faith, "*Lā ilāha illallāh*" [There is no god worthy to be worshipped but Allah]."²

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "°a□rat al-Qā'im is from us and his rule will extend from the east to the west."³

The same Imām also said: "At the time of the uprising of °a□rat al-Qā'im ('atfs), God will make Islam prevail over all other religions."⁴

The Prophet is reported to have said: "°a□rat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will dispatch his soldiers to the entire world."⁵

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: "If only one day is left in the life of this world... God will send al-Mahdī ('atfs) and through him the religion will regain its grandeur and through him and for Him, glorious victories will be attained. At that time, no one will remain on earth except the Muslims who recite the formula of faith, "*Lā ilāha illallāh*" [There is no god worthy to be worshipped but Allah]."⁶

Jābir ibn 'Abdullāh al-An□ārī quotes the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) as saying: "Dhū'l-Qarnayn was a meritorious servant that God appointed as a proof for His other servants. He invited his community [*qawm*] toward God and enjoined piety, but they struck a blow on his head and he hid from them for so long that they imagined him to be dead. After sometime, he returned to his community, but they struck him another blow on the other side of his head.

"There is a person from among you who will behave according to the *Sunnah*. God, the Honorable and Glorious, gave Dhū'l-Qarnayn authority on earth, put everything at his disposal, and made him reach the east and west of the globe. God, the Exalted, will make his character and manner be adopted by the Hidden Imām [*imām al-ghā'ib*] who is from my progeny, and make him reach the eastern and western lands. No pond and house whether on the top of a mountain or in the desert that was visited by Dhū'l-Qarnayn will

¹ *I□qāq al-□aqq*, vol. 13, p. 259; *Yanābī' al-Mawaddah*, p. 487; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 378; *Ash-Shī'ah wa'r-Raj'ah*, vol. 1, p. 218.

² *Iqd ad-Durar*, p. 222; *Farā'id Fawā'id al-Fikr*, p. 9.

³ *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 1, p. 331; *Al-Fu□ūl al-Muhimmah*, p. 284; *As 'āf ar-Rāghibīn*, p. 140.

⁴ *Yanābī' al-Mawaddah*, p. 423.

⁵ *Al-Qawl al-Mukhta□ar*, p. 23.

⁶ *'Uyūn Akhbār ar-Riḍā*, p. 65; *I□qāq al-□aqq*, vol. 13, p. 346; *Ash-Shī'ah wa'r-Raj'ah*, vol. 1, p. 218.

remain unvisited by him (Imām al-Mahdī). God will manifest the treasures and minerals of the earth for him, help him by striking fear in the heart of the enemy, and fill the earth with justice and equity as it would have been full of injustice and oppression prior to the uprising.”¹

Another set of *ḥadīths* points to the conquest of certain cities. It would suffice to quote a few *ḥadīths* in this respect:

Concerning the march of al-Mahdī ('a) toward Shām (Syria), the Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: “At the order of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs), transportation of the armies will be organized. After this order, four hundred ships will be constructed and berthed along the shore of Acre.² Rome (or Constantinople) with one hundred crosses—along with each cross being ten thousand forces—will emerge and overrun Tarsus.³ The Imām along with his soldiers will arrive there and kill so many of them that the water of the Euphrates will change its color and due to their corpses, the shore will emit a fetid smell. [On hearing this news,] those remaining in Rome (or Constantinople) will flee to Antioch⁴.”⁵

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: “When Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im stages the uprising... he will dispatch soldiers to the city of Constantinople. When they reach the gulf, they will write a sentence on their feet and pass over the water.”⁶

The Messenger of Allah (□) said: “If only one day is left in the world, God will surely send a man from my progeny who is my namesake and whose forehead is radiant. He will conquer Constantinople and Jabal Daylam (Mountain of Daylam).”⁷

¹ *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 394; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, pp. 323, 336; *Ash-Shī'ah wa'r-Raj'ah*, vol. 1, p. 218. See Ibn □ammād, *Fitan*, p. 95; *□irā□ al-Mustaqīm*, vol. 2, pp. 250, 262; Shaykh al-Mufīd, *Al-Irshād*, p. 362; *A'lām al-Warā*, p. 430.

² Acre (also called Akko): a city in Occupied Palestine, near Haifa, located on the Bay of Haifa, an arm of the Mediterranean Sea, is one of the oldest continuously inhabited cities in the world. [Trans.]

³ Tarsus (city) (ancient Cydnus): a city in southern Turkey, on the Tarsus River, near Adana and also near the Mediterranean Sea. [Trans.]

⁴ Antioch or Antakya (in Turkey): a city in southern Turkey, the capital of Hatay Province, on the Orontes River, near the Mediterranean Sea. The fact that Antioch is mentioned in the *ḥadīth* as the place of refuge of the people in *Rūm* [Rome] seems to indicate that the name “Rome” refers to Constantinople (capital of Byzantine or the Eastern Roman Empire). It is because it seems illogical to flee from a far place (Rome in Italy) to a place (Antioch in Turkey), which is near the spot of a perceived danger. This is corroborated by the fact that the same word, *Rūm* [“Rome”] mentioned in the Qur'an (*Surah ar-Rūm*) refers historically to the Byzantine or Eastern Roman Empire. [Trans.]

⁵ Ibn □ammād, *Fitan*, p. 116; *'Aqd ad-Durar*, p. 189.

⁶ *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 365.

⁷ *Firdaws al-Akhbār*, vol. 3, p. 83; Shāfi'ī, *Bayān*, p. 137; *I□qāq al-□aqq*, vol. 13, p. 229; vol. 19, p. 660.

°udhayfah said: “Constantinople, Daylam and ̤abaristān will not be conquered except by a man from Banī Hāshim.”¹

Imām al-Bāqir (‘a) said: “When Ḥaḍrat al-Qā’im (‘atfs) stages the uprising, he will conquer Constantinople, ̤in (China),² and the mountains of Daylam, and he will rule for seven years.”³

The Commander of the Faithful (‘a) said: “Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘atfs) and his supporters will advance until they enter Constantinople. They will go to the place where the king resides and they will take out three types of treasure: jewelry, gold and silver. Then, the Imām will divide the assets and booty among his armies.”⁴

Imām al-Bāqir (‘a) said: “Ḥaḍrat al-Qā’im (‘a) will prepare three banners for (operations in) three regions. He will dispatch a banner to Constantinople⁵ and God will open it for him (i.e., he will conquer it); he will send another banner to China and it will also be opened for him, and he will send the third banner for the mountains of Daylam,⁶ which will be overrun by his forces.”⁷

°udhayfah said: “Balanjar⁸ and the mountains of Daylam will not be conquered except by a man from the Progeny of Muḥammad (‘a).”⁹

The Commander of the Faithful (‘a) said: “...Then, with a thousand ships Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘atfs) will leave the city of Qā’i’ for the holy city of Quds, and from Acre, Tyre, Gaza, and ‘Asqalān¹⁰ he will enter the Land of Palestine. He will take out its wealth and booty. Thereafter, Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘atfs) will enter Quds ash-Sharīf where he will dismount and stay until the coming out of ad-Dajjāl (the Anti-Christ).”¹¹

¹ Ibn Abī Shaybah, *Mu’annif*, vol. 13, p. 18.

² ̤in (China) is said to refer to East Asia which includes the former Soviet Union, India, Nepal, Burma (Myanmar), Vietnam, Japan, the China Sea, and the Korean Peninsula. See *Al-Munjid*.

³ *Bi’ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 339; *I’qāq al-’aqq*, vol. 13, p. 352; *Ash-Shī’ah wa’r-Raj’ah*, vol. 1, p. 400.

⁴ *Ash-Shī’ah wa’r-Raj’ah*, vol. 1, p. 162.

⁵ Constantinople: a city in Turkey built in the 7th century BCE and has been the capital of the Eastern Roman empire for sometime. See *Mu’jam al-Buldān*, vol. 4, p. 347; *A’lām al-Munjid*, p. 28.

⁶ Daylam: a place in the mountainous part of Gīlān which is located in the north of Qazvīn. See *Mu’jam al-Buldān*, vol. 1, p. 99; *A’lām al-Munjid*, p. 227; *Burhān-e Qā’i’*, vol. 1, p. 570.

⁷ *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 585; *Bi’ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 388. See *Bi’ār al-Anwār*, vol. 54, p. 332, *ḥadīth* nos. 1, 6, 11, 14, 17-19, 34-36, 46.

⁸ Balanjar refers to Khazar (former Soviet Union). See *Mu’jam al-Buldān*, vol. 1, p. 99; *A’lām al-Munjid*, p. 214.

⁹ *Iqd ad-Durar*, p. 123 as quoted from Ibn al-Munādī, *Malā’im*.

¹⁰ ‘Asqalān: a city in Shām which is a dependency of Palestine and along the seashore. It is located between the cities of Gaza and Bayt al-Jabayn. See *Mu’jam al-Buldān*, vol. 3, p. 673.

¹¹ *Iqd ad-Durar*, p. 201.

Abū °amzah ath-Thumālī said: "I heard Imām al-Bāqir ('a) saying: 'At the time of the advent of the Qā'im of Muḥammad's Progeny ('a), he will have a sword with him, which he will unsheathe, and through him God will conquer the lands of Rome,¹ China, Turkistan,² Daylam, Sind, Hind,³ Kabul, Shām, and Khazar."⁴

Ibn °ajar writes: "...The first banner that Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will prepare for war would be dispatched to the Turks."⁵

Perhaps, what is meant by the sword mentioned in the *ḥadīth* reported by ath-Thumālī (*as-sayf al-mukhtari*) alludes to a particular weapon at the disposal of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs). It is because in order to conquer all these lands, which requires extraordinary offensive capability, an appropriate weapon, superior to all weapons would be necessary especially if we would say that the Imām will perform various activities through natural and common ways.

Regarding the conquest of Hind, Ka'b said: "The ruler in Bayt al-Muqaddas will dispatch an army to Hind and conquer it. Then that army will enter the territory of Hind and it will send the treasures there to the ruler of Bayt al-Muqaddas. He will also embellish it (Hind) and the kings of Hind will be brought to him as captives. The eastern and western lands will be opened for them and the forces will be present in Hind till the emergence of ad-Dajjāl."⁶

°udhayfah reported that the Prophet (ﷺ) said: "°āhir ibn Asmā' fought with the Children of Israel and took them in captivity, setting Bayt al-Muqaddas on fire while taking the amount of one thousand and seven (or nine) hundred ships of gold and jewelry from there to the city of Rome. Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will definitely take them out from that city and return them to Bayt al-Muqaddas."⁷

¹ Rome is presently the capital of Italy. At that time, it was the political capital of kings who used to rule there under the official title of Cesar and dominate a considerable portion of the world such that its sphere of influence encompassed the Mediterranean Sea, North Africa, Greece, Turkey, Syria, Lebanon, and Palestine, and all these territories were regarded as Rome (Roman Empire).

² Turkistān is located in the continent of Asia and divided between China and the ex-Soviet Union including Uighur China, Turkmenistan, Uzbekistan, Tashkand, Tajikistan, Qaranjīr, and Kazakhstan. See *I'lām al-Munjid*.

³ Hind: the triangle-shaped subcontinent in South Asia including India, Pakistan, Bhutan, and Nepal. See *Burhān-e Qā'ī*, vol. 1, p. 703; *I'lām al-Munjid*, p. 542.

⁴ Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 108; *Bi'ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 348.

⁵ *Al-Qawl al-Mukhtār*, p. 26.

⁶ *Iqd ad-Durar*, pp. 97, 319; Ibn °āwūs, *Malā'im*, p. 81; °anafī, *Burhān*, p. 88.

⁷ *Iqd ad-Durar*, 201; Shāfi'ī, *Bayān*, p. 114; *I'qāq al-°aq*, vol. 13, p. 229.

Although the uprising of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will commence in Mecca, he will conquer the land of 'ijāz¹ after the advent. In this regard, Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will appear in Mecca and God will conquer the land of 'ijāz and the Imām will set free anyone from the Banī Hāshim who is in prison."²

Concerning the conquest of Khurāsān, the Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: "Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will continue in his advance until he conquers Khurāsān³ and then he will again return to the city of Medina."⁴

Regarding the conquest of Armenia⁵ at the hand of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs), the same Imām ('a) said: "Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will continue in his advance till he arrives in Armenia. When the people of that land see him, they will send one of their erudite priests to negotiate with him ('atfs). The priest will ask the Imām ('atfs): 'Are you the Mahdī?' The Imām will reply: 'Yes, I am; the one whose name has been mentioned in the Evangel (Gospel) and the glad tidings of my advent at the end of time has been given.' He will pose some questions and the Imām will answer (each of them satisfactorily).

"The Christian priest will embrace Islam but the people in Armenia will be defiant and disobey. Thereafter, the soldiers of the Imām will enter the city and exterminate five hundred thousand men from the Christian forces. By His infinite power, God will suspend their city between heaven and earth so much so that the king and those around him who will be stationed outside the city will see the city being suspended there.

"Out of fear, the king of Armenia will flee and will also order those around him to seek refuge in a certain sanctuary. Along the way, a lion will pass close to them and being terrified, they will throw away and abandon the weapons and possessions at their disposal. The soldiers of the Imām who will be pursuing them will take the properties and divide them among themselves such that each one of them will receive one hundred thousand dīnārs."⁶

¹ 'ijāz stretches from the north to the Gulf of 'Aqabah, from the west to the Red Sea, from the east to Najd, and from the south to 'Asīr. See *I'lām al-Munjid*, p. 229. As reported by 'amūyinī, from the depth of San'ā in Yemen to Shām is called 'ijāz in which Tabūk and Palestine are also included. See *Mu'jam al-Buldān*.

² Ibn 'ummād, *Fitan*, p. 95; Muttaqī Hindī, *Burhān*, p. 141; Ibn 'āwūs, *Malā'īm*, p. 64; *Al-Mukhta'ar*, p. 23.

³ Khorāsān at that time included a portion of Iran, Afghanistan and the ex-Soviet Union. See *I'lām al-Munjid*, p. 267.

⁴ *Ash-Shī'ah wa'r-Raj'ah*, vol. 1, p. 158.

⁵ Armenia is in Asia Minor and bordering the mountains of Ararat and the Caucasus, as well as Iran, Turkey, and the Euphrates River. It once had an independent government and after the downfall of the Byzantine Empire this land was divided among Iran, Russia and the Ottoman Empire. See *I'lām al-Munjid*, p. 25.

⁶ *Ash-Shī'ah wa'r-Raj'ah*, vol. 1, p. 162.

Another part of the Imām's ('atfs) global conquest will be in the cities of Zanj. Ḥaḍrat Amīr (Imām Alī) ('a) said in this regard: "Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will continue in his advance until he arrives at the city of Zanj al-Kubrā. There are one thousand markets in the city and in each of the markets, there are one thousand shops. The Imām will conquer that city.¹ After its conquest, the Imām will go to a city called Qā'ī', which is an island on the sea."²

Regarding the dispatching of al-Mahdī's ('atfs) soldiers throughout the world, Ḥaḍrat al-Bāqir ('a) said: "It is as if I can see Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs) dispatching his armies throughout the globe."³

The same Imām ('a) also said: "Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (a'tfs) will send his armies throughout the world to solicit the pledge of allegiance [*bay'ah*], and annihilate tyranny and tyrants. The conquered cities will be stabilized for him, and through his blessed hand, God will conquer Constantinople."⁴

Suppression of Revolts

After the advent of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) and the conquest of various cities and countries, some cities and tribes will mount resistance to the Imām ('atfs), which will be suppressed by his forces. A deviant group will not accept the view of the Imām on some issues and launch an insurrection against him, which will be also defeated by his forces. Let us look at some *ḥadīths* pertaining to this:

Imām a□-□ādīq ('a) said: "There are thirteen cities and clans whose people will wage war against Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs) and the Imām, in turn, will confront them. They are the people of Mecca, Medina, Shām (Syria), Ba□rah, and Rey; the Banī 'Umayyah, Damansiyān, Kurds, and Arabs such as the Banī □abbah,⁵ Ghani,⁶ Bāhilah,⁷ and Azd."¹

¹ *Ibid.*, p. 164.

² *Ibid.* See *'Iqd ad-Durar*, p. 200; *I□qāq al-□aqq*, vol. 13, p. 229.

³ Shaykh al-Mufīd, *Al-Irshād*, p. 341; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 337.

⁴ Ibn □āwūs, *Malā□im*, p. 64; *Al-Fatāwā al-Ḥadīthiyyah*, p. 31.

⁵ □abbah is the name of a village in □ijāz located on the way to Shām along the seashore. Adjacent to it is the village of Ḥaḍrat Ya'qūb ('a) called Badā.

Banī □abbah is a tribe that stood up in support of the enemies of 'Alī ('a) in the Battle of Jamal, and most of the famous poets and epic versifiers there belonged to the tribes of □abbah and Azd. In that battle they surrounded the camel of 'Ā'ishah and supported her. See Sam'ānī, *Insāb*, vol. 4, p. 12; Ibn Abī'l-□ādīd, *Shar□ Nahj al-Balāghah*, vol. 9, p. 320; vol. 1, p. 253.

⁶ Ghani is a tribe that lives in Hār in the Arabian Peninsula between Mū□il and Shām, and it is associated with a certain person named Ghani ibn Ya'□ur. See Sam'ānī, *Insāb*, vol. 4, p. 315.

⁷ Bāhilah is a tribe associated with a certain person named Bāhilah ibn A'□ar. The Arabs at that time used to avoid establishing relationships with this tribe because no noble and honorable men could be found in it. Members of the Bāhilah tribe were despicable people.

Concerning the opposition of a group to the words of al-Mahdī ('atfs), Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "When Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) would elaborate on some of the laws and talk about some parts of the *Sunnah*, in opposing the Imām, a group will go out of the mosque as a gesture of protest. The Imām will order his followers to pursue them. The army of the Imām will catch them up in the Tamārīn district; they will capture them and bring them to him. The Imām ('atfs) will give the order for all of them to be beheaded. This will be the last revolt and movement to emerge against the Imām."²

Regarding the revolt in Ramaylah and its suppression, Ibn Abī Ya'fūr said: "I came to Imām a□-□ādīq ('a) while a group of his followers was in his company. The Imām said to me: 'Have you read the Qur'an?' I replied: 'Yes, but only a normal reading.' He said: 'My point was that very (normal) reading.' I said: 'What is meant by this question?' He said: 'Ḥaḍrat Mūsā ('a) said something to his community [*qawm*] but they could not endure it, and they rose up against him in Egypt. Mūsā also fought against them and killed them."

"Ḥaḍrat 'Isā ('a) also said something to his community but they could not tolerate it also, and they also rose up against him in the city of Takrīt. 'Isā ('a) also confronted them and eliminated them. This is the meaning of the words of God when He says:

﴿فَأَمَّتْ طَائِفَةٌ مِّنْ بَنِي إِسْرَائِيلَ وَكَفَرَتْ طَائِفَةٌ فَأَيَّدْنَا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا عَلَىٰ عَدُوِّهِمْ فَأَصْبَحُوا ظَاهِرِينَ﴾

*"So a group of the Children of Israel believed, and a group disbelieved. Then We strengthened the faithful against their enemies, and they became the dominant ones."*³

"At the time of his advent, Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('a) will also deliver a speech to you, which you will not be able to accept. Therefore, you will rise up against him in the city of Ramaylah and wage war against him. The Imām will also confront you and will kill you, and this revolt will be the last uprising against him."⁴

Before leaving for the Battle of □iffīn Ḥaḍrat 'Alī ('a) said to them: "I swear to God that I am angry with you in the same manner that you are angry with me. So, you come and claim your right, and migrate from Kūfah to Daylam. See Sam'ānī, *Insāb*, vol. 1, p. 275; *Waq'ah □iffīn*, p. 116; *An-Nafyī wa 't-Taghrīb*, p. 349; Ibn Abī'l-□ādīd, *Shar□ Nahj al-Balāghah*, vol. 3, p. 272; *Al-Ghārāt*, vol. 2, p. 21.

¹ Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 299; *Ba□ā'ir ad-Darajāt*, p. 336; □ilyah al-Abrār, vol. 2, p. 632; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 363; vol. 48, p. 84.

² 'Ayyāshī, *Tafsīr 'Ayyāshī*, vol. 2, p. 61; *Tafsīr Burhān*, vol. 2, p. 83; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 345.

³ *Sūrah a□-□aff* 61:14.

⁴ *Ba□ā'ir ad-Darajāt*, p. 336; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 375; vol. 47, p. 84; vol. 14, p. 279.

The End of War

By the establishment of the divine system or global government of the Imām of the Age ('atfs) and the downfall of the satanic powers, the flames of war will be extinguished and there will be no more powers that would be able to confront the army of al-Mahdī ('atfs). As such, there will be no demand for military equipment in the markets and as a result they will become cheap remain unsold.

'Alī ('a) said: "...And war will also come to an end."¹

Ka'b said: "The days will not end unless a man from Quraysh will descend in Bayt al-Muqaddas... And war will also cease to exist."²

In a sermon regarding the Dajjāl and how he will be killed, the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: "Thereafter, the price of a horse will become a few dirhams."³

Ibn Mas'ūd said: "Among the signs of the Day of Resurrection is that women and horses will become expensive. Afterward, they will become cheap and until the Day of Resurrection their respective prices will not be exorbitant."⁴

Perhaps, what is meant by the expensiveness of women prior to the advent of the Imām of the Time ('a) alludes to the fact that as a result of worsening economic conditions, maintaining and keeping a woman and having a family will become very problematic. Similarly, as a result of the proliferation of wars and the need for horses, procuring a horse (and war equipment) will become difficult and expensive. However, with the end of war after the uprising of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs), weapons will become cheap, and as a result of improved economic conditions, the difficulties of life and marriage will be removed and as such women will become cheap to maintain.

Zamakhsharī narrates: "One of the signs of the uprising of al-Mahdī ('atfs) is that they will use swords instead of scythes."⁵

Since there will be no more war at that time, people will therefore utilize instruments and industries intended for use in war for agricultural activities.

In this regard, the Noble Prophet of Islam ('a) said: "...The price of cows will soar while the price of horses will become insignificant."⁶

¹ Ibn ʿammād, *Fitān*, p. 162; *Al-Muʿjam al-ʿaḡhūr*, p. 150; *Iḡqāq al-ʿaqq*, vol. 13, p. 204.


² *ʿIqd ad-Darar*, p. 166. See ʿAbd ar-Razzāq, *Muʿannif*, vol. 11, p. 401.

³ Ibn ʿāwūs, *Malāʾim*, p. 152.

⁴ *Al-Muʿjam al-Kabīr*, vol. 9, p. 342 and similar topic has also been reported by Khārijah ibn aḡ-ʿalt in *ʿIqd ad-Darar*, p. 331.

⁵ *Al-Fāʾiq*, vol. 1, p. 354.

⁶ Ibn ʿammād, *Fitān*, p. 159; Ibn ʿāwūs, *Malāʾim*, p. 82.

Perhaps, this *ḥadīth* may also be interpreted in this manner: this is because cows are used in agriculture and their meat and milk can be consumed. Horses however are largely used as means of transportation in war. 

Chapter 5

Hidden Help

In numerous *ḥadīths* the wars after the advent of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘*atfs*) will be waged by combat forces that will hasten from around the globe to assist the Imām in prevailing over the entire world. When we consider the advance in military science and technology prior to the advent of the Imām, this would indeed be a difficult task unless the leadership is shouldered by a person who will receive divine aid.

The divine help would sometimes be manifested in the power that God has bestowed on the Imām, and by performing miracles, the Imām could remove hurdles in his path. This help can also be manifested through the fear and dread that God will create in the hearts of the enemy, or in God sending angels to assist the Imām. Some *ḥadīths* indicate that forces having angelic characteristics are waiting for the Imām’s advent in order to assist him. Coffins and their contents have been equally mentioned.

In this chapter, we shall point to some of these *ḥadīths*:

Dread and Fear as Weapons of the Imām

Imām a□-□ādiq (‘*a*) said: “The Qā’im from among us, the *Ahl al-Bayt*, will be assisted by dread and fear (struck by God in the hearts of the enemy).”¹

The same Imām (‘*a*) also said: “God will assist Ḥaḍrat al-Qā’im with three armies: angels, believers, and dread (struck on the enemy’s heart).”¹

¹ *Mustadrak al-Wasā’il*, vol. 12, p. 335; vol. 14, p. 354.

In this regard, Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "Dread and terror—as parts of al-Mahdī's ('atfs) power—will move in advance of his soldiers a distance of one month's journey as well as at their rear with an equal distance of one month's journey."²

The same Imām ('a) also said: "Fear and dread will be moving in advance of the banner of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) a distance of one month's journey, at the rear with the same distance of one month's journey, on the right flank with the equal distance of one month's journey, and on the left flank with the identical distance of one month's journey."³

It can be deduced from these *ḥadīths* that when Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('a) intends to go to a certain place, the enemy (there) will experience dread and fear in advance and will lose the power and agility to confront and stand against the Imām's soldiers. Similarly, when his armies move from a certain place, no one there will have the courage to stage an insurrection because the enemy will experience dread of the Imām's armies. This interpretation and explanation concords with the purport of some of the *ḥadīths* quoted earlier.

The Angels and Jinn

Ḥaḍrat 'Alī ('a) said: "...God will assist Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) through the angels, *jinn* and sincere Shī'ah."⁴

Abān ibn Taghlib said that Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "It is as if I can now see Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('a) behind the city of Najaf when he arrives at that point on the earth. He will ride a black horse with white dapples and between its eyes would be a white portion that shines (and will conquer the cities of the world). There will be no city in the world where its inhabitants would not think that al-Mahdī ('atfs) is in their midst and in their city. When he hoists the banner of the Messenger of Allah (□), thirteen thousand and thirteen angels who have been waiting for his advent for many long years, will gather under his banner (and be ready for war). They were the very angels who were with Prophet Nū□ (Noah) ('a) in the ark, Ibrāhīm al-Khalīl (Abraham the Friend of Allah) ('a) in the fire, and 'Isā (Jesus) during his ascension to heaven.

"Similarly, four thousand angels will hasten to assist the Imām—they are the same angels who descended on the land of Karbalā' to fight on the side of al-Ḥusayn ('a), but they were not given permission to do so and returned to heaven. When they returned with the permission to make *jihād*, Imām al-

¹ *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 356.

² *Ibid.*, p. 343.

³ Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 308; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 361.

⁴ □u□aynī, *Al-Hidāyah*, p. 31; *Irshād al-Qulūb*, p. 286.

Ḥusayn ('a) was already martyred and out of the agony of missing this great favor, they have remained always uncomfortable and sorrowful, and until the Day of Resurrection they are flying around the shrine of Imām al-Ḥusayn ('a) shedding tears.”¹

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: “It is as if I can see Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im and his supporters now... Archangel Gabriel ('a) is on the right side of al-Mahdī ('atfs) while Angel Michael is moving on the Imām's left, with fear and dread moving in the front and at the rear of his armies with a distance of one month's journey, and God will assist him with five thousand angels from heaven.”²

The same Imām ('a) also said: “The angels who helped the Prophet (ﷺ) during the Battle of Badr have not yet returned to heaven in order to help Ḥaḍrat a□-□ib al-Amr ('atfs) and their number is five thousand.”³

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: “Nine thousand three hundred and thirteen angels will come down for Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs). They are the same angels who had been in the company of Ḥaḍrat 'Īsā ('a) when God brought him to heaven.”⁴

Imām 'Alī ('a) said: “Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('a) will be assisted with three thousand angels; they will strike the faces and backs of the enemies.”⁵

On the commentary of the noble Qur'anic verse [āyah]:

﴿ أَتَىٰ أَمْرُ اللَّهِ فَلَا تَسْتَعْجِلُوهُ ﴾

“Allah's edict is coming! So do not seek to hasten it,”⁶

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: “This commandment and affair of Allah [amrullāh] is our commandment and affair. That is, God has commanded that we should not be in haste for the uprising of al-Mahdī because He will support the master of our affair ('atfs) with the three armies of angels, believers and dread, and we will obtain our rights.”⁷

¹ Kamāluddīn, vol. 2, p. 672; Nu'mānī, Ghaybah, p. 309; Kāmil az-Ziyārāt, p. 120; Al-'Adad al-Qawiyyah, p. 74; Mustadrak al-Wasā'il, vol. 10, p. 245.

² Bi□ār al-Anwār, vol. 52, p. 343; Nūr ath-Thaqalayn, vol. 1, p. 388; Al-Qawl al-Mukhta□ar, p. 21.

³ Ithbāt al-Hudāh, vol. 3, p. 549; Nūr ath-Thaqalayn, vol. 12, p. 388; Mustadrak al-Wasā'il, vol. 2, p. 448.

⁴ Bi□ār al-Anwār, vol. 14, p. 339. See Nu'mānī, Ghaybah, p. 311.

⁵ Ibn □ammād, Fitan, p. 101; Shāfi'ī, Bayān, p. 515; Al-□āwī Li'il-Fatāwā, vol. 2, p. 73; A□-□awā'iq al-Ma□riqah, p. 167; Kanz al-'Ummāl, vol. 4, p. 589; Ibn a□-□āwūs, Malā□im, p. 73; I□qāq al-□aqq, vol. 19, p. 652.

⁶ Sūrah an-Na□l 16:1.

⁷ Ta'wīl al-Āyāt a□-□āhirah, vol. 1, p. 252; Ithbāt al-Hudāh, vol. 3, p. 562; Bi□ār al-Anwār, vol. 52, p. 356.

Ḥaḍrat ar-Riḍā ('a) said: "At the time of the uprising of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs), God will command the angels to convey peace [*salām*] to the believers and participate in their gatherings. If one of the believers has an appointment with him, the Imām ('atfs) will command some of the angels to take that person on their shoulders and bring him to the Imām. Once his appointment is finished, they will return him to his previous location.

"Some of the believers will travel above the clouds while others will fly along with the angels in the sky. Yet others will walk with the angels while others will overtake them. Some of the believers will be placed by the angels as judges, and the believer in the sight of God is loftier than an angel to such an extent that some of the believers will be appointed as judges by the Imām over a hundred thousand angels."¹

Probably, the judgment of these believers among the angels is meant to resolve their differences over intellectual issues and subjects, and these types of differences have no contradiction with the infallibility [*iḥṣāmat*] of the angels.

Angels of the Earth

Muḥammad ibn Muslim said that he asked Imām aḥ-ḥādīq ('a) regarding the legacy of knowledge and its extent. The Imām said in reply: "God has two cities; one in the east and another in the west. In those two cities, there is a group residing there that is aware neither of Iblīs nor of his creation. I visit them from time to time; they ask us questions about things important to themselves and about how to supplicate and we teach them. They also ask about the time of the advent of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs). They worship God much and are striving hard in matters related to devotion.

"Each of the two cities has gates; between each of its doorposts there is a distance of one hundred *farsangs* (600 kilometers). They do much with respect to worship, praising (God), invocation, and struggle. Once you see them, you will consider your acts and traits in comparison with theirs insignificant. When some of them perform the prayer, they stay in a state of prostration for one month. Their food is extolling God while their clothing is of leaves. Their faces are glowing with light. Once they meet any of us (Imāms), they will encircle him, and take the dust from the soles of his feet and seek blessings through it. During their prayers, their wailings and lamentations are more dreadful than the sound of thunder. A group of them—from the day they have been waiting for Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs)—has never laid down their weapons and they have so far been in the same state. They

¹ *Dalā'il al-Imāmah*, p. 241; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 573.

are always praying to God to be shown the Master of the Affair [Ba‘ib al-amr].

“Each of them lives for a thousand years and the mark of humility, worship and proximity to God, the Honorable and Glorious, is conspicuous on their faces. When we do not visit them, they imagine that we are displeased with them, and they remember the times we are going to visit them, at which time they will be waiting for us and they will never be tired of working.

“They are reciting the Qur’an just as we taught them, and if a portion of the recitals we have taught to them is recited to the people, they will not accept it. Once we give the answer to a question they ask about the Qur’an, they will open their hearts (and minds) to learn the things to be heard. They pray to God for our long lives so that they do not lose us. They know that whatever they learn from us is a grace of God to them.

“At the time of the advent of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā’im, they will be in the company of the Imām (‘atfs) and they will go in advance of his other soldiers. They will pray to God to help His religion through them.

“Their assembly consists of both young and old. If a youngster would see an old one, he will sit down like a slave as a gesture of respect and he will not move from there without obtaining permission from the old person. They will be aware of the ideas of the Imām (‘atfs) through ways they know best. When the Imām gives them an order, they will always follow it unless the Imām himself would give them another assignment.

“If they wage war against the people of the east and west, they can exterminate everybody easily, and weapons can never harm them. They have swords and weapons made of iron but their alloys are different from common iron. If they would strike a mountain with the sword, it will be divided into two and removed from its location. The Imām (‘atfs) will send these soldiers into the wars of Hind, Daylam, Kurdistān, Rome, Berber, Fārs, and Jābarsā and Jābalqā—the two cities in the east and west.

“They will not do anything against the followers of other religions except inviting them to Islam and calling them to monotheism, the prophethood of the Prophet and the *wilāyah* of us, the *Ahl al-Bayt*, then they will release anyone who would respond and kill anyone who would not accept so much so that no one will be left in the east and west without having accepted the faith.”¹

¹ Ba‘ā’ir ad-Darajāt, p. 144; Ithbāt al-Hudāh, vol. 3, p. 523; Tab‘irah al-Walī, p. 97; Bi‘ār al-Anwār, vol. 27, p. 41; vol. 54, p. 334.

It can be understood from this brief sketch of these soldiers that they are possibly the same angels who have remained on earth and are waiting for the uprising of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs).

The Ark of Prophet Mūsā (Moses) ('a)

In the book, *Ghāyah al-Marām*, the Noble Prophet (ﷺ) is reported to have said: "During the advent of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs), Ḥaḍrat 'Īsā ('a) will descend and collect the books from Antioch. God will lift the veil covering the face of "[And] Iram, [the city] of the pillars"¹ for him and make manifest the palace that Ḥaḍrat Sulaymān (Prophet Solomon) ('a) built before his death. He will gather together the properties of the palace and divide them among Muslims, and he will take out the ark which had been thrown into the Caspian Sea by the order of God to Aramyā (Jeremiah).

"Whatever has been left for posterity by the family of Mūsā (Moses) and Hārūn (Aaron) ('a) exists in that ark. Also in the same ark are the tablets (where the Ten Commandments were inscribed); the staff of Mūsā; the cloak of Hārūn; the ten types of foods that used to descend to the Children of Israel; and the roasted chickens preserved by the Children of Israel for their future generations. Then cities will be conquered with the help of the ark just as they have done before him."²

With only a slight variation, *Yanābī' al-Mawaddah* attributes the same thing to Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs), stating: "Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will take out books from a cave in the land of Antioch and he will take out the *Zabūr* of Dāwūd ('a) (Psalms of David) from the Caspian Sea. The relics of the family of Mūsā and Hārūn ('a) exist in that book and the angels will carry it on their shoulders, and the tablets and staff of Mūsā are there as well."³

¹ It refers to these noble Qur'anic verses:

﴿إِرمَ دَاتِ الْعِمَادِ * الَّتِي لَمْ يُخْلَقْ مِثْلُهَا فِي الْبِلَادِ﴾

"[And] Iram, [the city] of the pillars, and the like of which was not created among cities."
(*Sūrah al-Fajr* 89:7-8)

The purport of the *ḥadīth* is that such a magnificent and grandiose city will be made manifest for Ḥaḍrat 'Īsā ('a) and this hidden city will be permanent.

² *Ghāyah al-Marām*, p. 697; *Ḥilyah al-Abrār*, vol. 2, p. 620; *Ash-Shī'ah wa'r-Raj'ah*, vol. 1, p. 136. See Ibn Qāwūs, *Malā'īm*, p. 66; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, pp. 489, 541.

³ *Yanābī' al-Mawaddah*, p. 401. It is also recorded in Ibn Qammād, *Fitan*, p. 98; Muttaqī Hindī, *Burhān*, p. 157; Ibn Qāwūs, *Malā'īm*, p. 67.

Chapter 6

Imām al-Mahdī's Mode of Conduct with Enemies

After many centuries of waiting and agony, the days of tyranny and darkness will finally come to an end; the rays of the sun of felicity will become visible; and the great personage who, by the help of God, is supposed to wipe out the remnants of tyranny and oppression, will appear. He will affect extensive reforms and fundamental transformations in both the spiritual and material realms, and he will establish order in human society in a manner that will earn the pleasure of Allah.

Meanwhile, if certain persons, parties and groups would like to hinder this magnificent uprising by creating problems or slowing down the pace of his uprising by fanning the fire of agitation, they will be considered the staunch enemies of humanity and the divine religion, and they will deserve nothing but annihilation at the powerful hand of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('*atfs*).

Saboteurs of the revolution of the Imām ('*atfs*) would be those whose hands are stained with the blood of humanity, the indifferent, who had remained silent with respect to the crimes of the aggressors but raise the banner of opposition against the Imām ('*atfs*), or the crooked-minded who regard their understanding as superior to the words of the Imām ('*atfs*). Naturally, they have to be repressed with the utmost decisiveness so that human society would become forever safe from their mischief. As such, the approach of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('*atfs*) toward them is decisive and uncompromising.

In this chapter, we shall examine two basic issues that can be deduced from the *ḥadīths*:

The Decisiveness of the Imām ('atfs) in Confronting Enemies

What has been under consideration in this section is that in dealing with enemies, the Imām ('atfs) will apply not only one type of punishment. In fact, he will exterminate some of them in war and he will pursue even the fugitives and injured among them. He will execute some of them and destroy their houses while banishing and amputating the hands of others.

1. War and Killing

Zurārah asked Imām a□-□ādiq ('a): "Will the approach and policy of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs) be the same as that of the Prophet (□)?" The Imām ('a) replied: "O Zurārah! Never; never. He will not adopt the policy of the Prophet (□) (in dealing with enemies). The Prophet (□) used to deal with enemies leniently, gently and kindly in order to win their hearts and for the people to be acquainted with him. Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs), however, will adopt the policy of killing; he will act according to his order and accept no one's repentance. Thus, woe be to anyone who would oppose him!"¹

Ḥasan ibn Hārūn said: "I was in the company of Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) when Mu'allā ibn al-Khanīs asked the Imām ('a): 'During his advent, will Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs) act contrary to the approach of the Commander of the Faithful ('a) in dealing with opponents?' The Imām ('a) answered: 'Yes. 'Alī ('a) adopted leniency and clemency because he knew that after him enemies would prevail over his supporters and Shī'ah. The policy of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs), however, is rage toward them as well as overpowering and subduing them because he knows that after him no one will ever prevail over the Shī'ah."²

Ḥaḍrat ar-Riḍā ('a) said: "During the advent of our Qā'im ('atfs), there will be nothing but the shedding of blood, sweating³ (on account of war and extreme exertion), and sleeping in the saddle (because of so many battles)."⁴

Mufa□□al ibn 'Umar said: "Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) made mention of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs). I said: "I hope that his ('atfs) program would be easily implemented while his government would be easily established." The

¹ Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 231; *Aqd ad-Darar*, p. 226; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 539; *□ilyah al-Abrār*, vol. 2, p. 628; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 353.

² Burqī, *Ma□āsin*, p. 320; *Al-Kāfī*, vol. 5, p. 33; *Ilal ash-Sharā'i*, p. 150; *At-Tahdhīb*, vol. 6, p. 155; *Wasā'il ash-Shī'ah*, vol. 11, p. 57; *Mustadrak al-Wasā'il*, vol. 11, p. 58; *Jāmi' A□ādīth ash-Shī'ah*, vol. 13, p. 101.

³ Perhaps what is meant by "*al-'araq*" [perspiration] is "*rag*" [a blood vessel], which alludes to the series of beheadings to be done at that time.

⁴ Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 285; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 543.

Imām ('a) said: "No. It will not be so; you would instead experience so many difficulties."¹

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "Alī ('a) said: 'It was permissible for me to kill deserters and the wounded, but I did not do so because if the Shī'ah rose up, the wounded among them would not be killed. For Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs), however, it is permissible and allowed, and there are grounds to kill deserters and to eliminate the wounded'."²

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "If only the people knew what program Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs) had and what actions he would take, most of them would wish not to see him at all because he would do a lot of killing and certainly the first killing will occur in the tribe of Quraysh. After the Quraysh, he will not take anything but the sword or give to them anything but the sword. Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will act in such a way that most of the people will say, 'This person is not from the Progeny of Muḥammad (□) and if he were really from the *Ahl al-Bayt* of the Prophet (□), he would have been compassionate'."³

The same Imām ('a) also said: "Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will stage the uprising with a new program, a novel tradition and innovative judgment. It will be a very difficult moment for the Arabs, and it does not behoove him anything but to kill enemies."⁴

2. Execution and Banishment

'Abdullāh al-Mughayrah said that Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "During the advent of the Qā'im of Muḥammad's Progeny ('a), he will execute five hundred persons from the Quraysh while standing. Then, he will execute five hundred other people in the same manner, and this act will be repeated six times." 'Abdullāh asked: "Will their number reach this?" The Imām ('a) replied: "Yes; they as well as their friends."⁵

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "During the uprising of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs), he will present the faith to each of the *Nā□ibīs*.⁶ If they accept the truth, he

¹ Nu'mānī, *Ḡhaybah*, p. 284; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 543

² Nu'mānī, *Ḡhaybah*, p. 231. See *At-Tahdhīb*, vol. 6, p. 154; *Wasā'il ash-Shī'ah*, vol. 11, p. 57; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 353; *Mustadrak al-Wasā'il*, vol. 11, p. 54.

³ Nu'mānī, *Ḡhaybah*, p. 231; *Aqd ad-Darar*, p. 227; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 539; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 354.

⁴ *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 349.

⁵ Shaykh al-Mufīd, *Al-Irshād*, p. 364; *Raw□ah al-Wā'i□īn*, vol. 2, p. 265; *Kashf al-Ghammah*, vol. 3, p. 255; *□irā□ al-Mustaqīm*, vol. 2, p. 253; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 527; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, pp. 338, 349.

⁶ *Nā□ibīs* or *Nawā□ib* (s. *nā□ibī*) are those who declare their faith in Islam but display enmity toward the *Ahl al-Bayt* ('a). [Trans.]

would release them. He will behead anyone who would not accept the faith, or ask him to pay the *jizyah*¹ just as what they collect from the *Ahl adh-Dhimmah*,² and he ('atfs) will banish him in remote villages and small towns.”³

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: “When our Qā'im stages the uprising, he will recognize our enemies from their faces. Then, he will take them by their feet and heads and strike them with the sword (thus, eliminating them).”⁴

3. The Amputation of Hands

Hirawī said: “I asked Imām ar-Riḍā ('a): ‘What is the first thing Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im will do?’ The Imām ('a) replied: ‘He will first go to the tribe of Banī Shaybah and amputate their hands because they are robbers of the House of God’.”⁵

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: “When our Qā'im rises up, he will detain the tribe of Banī Shaybah, amputate their hands, and present them to the people, saying: ‘They are robbers of the House of God’.”⁶

The same Imām ('a) also said: “The first confrontation will be the Imām's ('atfs) encounter with the tribe of Banī Shaybah. He will amputate their hands and hang them in the *Ka'bah*. It will thus be announced by the Imām, ‘These are robbers of the House of God’.”⁷

Shaybah became Muslim during the conquest of Mecca and the Prophet (□) appointed him as the key-keeper of the *Ka'bah*, and for a long time the tribe of Banī Shaybah was the key-keeper of the *Ka'bah* and its doorkeeper.⁸

The late Māmqānī said: “Banī Shaybah is among the robbers of the House of God, and God willing, their hands will be amputated for this crime and they will be hung on the wall of the *Ka'bah*.”⁹

¹ *Jizyah*: a tax levied on non-Muslim citizens of the Muslim state in exchange for the protection they receive and in lieu of the taxes, such as *zakāt*, that only Muslims pay. [Trans.]

² *Ahl adh-Dhimmah*: non-Muslim citizens of the Muslim state, whose rights and obligations are contractually determined. [Trans.]

³ *Al-Kāfi*, vol. 8, p. 227; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 450; *Mir'āh al-'Uqūl*, vol. 26, p. 160; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 375.

⁴ *I□qāq al-□aqq*, vol. 13, p. 357; *Al-Mu□ajjah*, p. 429.

⁵ *Uyūn Akhbār ar-Riḍā*, vol. 1, p. 273; *Ilal ash-Sharā'i'*, vol. 1, p. 219; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 313.

⁶ *Ilal ash-Sharā'i'*, vol. 2, p. 96; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 317.

⁷ Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 165; *Bi□ār al-Anwar*, 52, pp. 351, 361.

⁸ *Asad al-Ghābah*, vol. 3, pp. 7, 372.

⁹ *Tanqī□ al-Maqāl*, vol. 2, p. 246.

Dealing with Different Groups

During the uprising of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs), he will confront various groups and bands. Some of them would be a particular community [*qawm*] or ethnicity and some would be the followers of religions other than Islam. Although apparently Muslim, another group would act hypocritically, or would be one of the sanctimonious who will oppose the Imām ('atfs) or would be the followers of deviant sects. The Imām ('atfs) will have a particular dispute with each of them, which we shall examine by quoting some relevant *ḥadīths*:

1. The Arab Nation

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "When our Qā'im rises up, there will be no way between him, and the Arabs (in general) and the Quraysh (in particular) except the sword (and armed confrontation)."¹

While pointing to his own throat, the same Imām ('a) also said: "No way has been left between us and the Arabs except beheadings."² Perhaps, it refers to their autocratic leaders and rulers, or the followers of other religions.

Regarding the confrontation with the Quraysh, Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "During the uprising of the Imām ('atfs)... He will take aim at the Quraysh. He will not get anything from them except the sword; neither will he give anything to them but the sword."³

Maybe what is meant by "He will not get anything from them except the sword," is that the Quraysh will not submit to him. They will engage in insurrection and creating disturbances. They will directly or indirectly wage war against the Imām and the Imām in turn would not be able to find any appropriate way (to deal with them) except with the use of weapons.

2. The People of the Book [*ahl al-kitāb*]

‘Abdullāh ibn Bakīr asked Imām al-Kā□im (a) regarding the interpretation of this noble verse:

﴿وَلَهُ أَسْلَمَ مَنْ فِي السَّمَاوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ طَوْعًا وَكَرْهًا﴾

*"While to Him submit whosoever there is in the heavens and the earth, willingly or unwillingly."*⁴

¹ Nu'mānī, *Ḡhaybah*, p. 122; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 355.

² *Ibid.*

³ Nu'mānī, *Ḡhaybah*, p. 165; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 355.

⁴ *Sūrah Āl 'Imran* 3:83.

The Imām ('a) replied: "This verse has been revealed about al-Qā'im ('atfs); it is when he rises up against the Jews, Christians, Sabians, materialists, those who turned back from Islam, and the infidels of the east and west while offering Islam to them. He will command anyone who accepts it out of his own volition to perform the prayers, pay the *zakāt* and do whatever a Muslim ought to do. He will behead anyone who refuses to become Muslim so much so that not a single infidel will remain in both the east and west of the globe."

'Abdullāh ibn Bakīr asked: "May I be your ransom! There are a lot of people on earth. How could the Imām ('atfs) make them Muslims or behead them?"

Imām al-Kā'im ('a) replied: "If God wills something, that which is few will become plenty and something plenty will become few."¹

Shahr ibn 'awshab said: "°ajjāj said to me: 'O Shahr! There is a verse in the Qur'an that has exhausted me (and I do not understand its meaning).' I asked: 'Which verse?' He replied: 'It is when God says:

﴿وَإِنْ مِنْ أَهْلِ الْكِتَابِ إِلَّا لَيُؤْمِنَنَّ بِهِ قَبْلَ مَوْتِهِ﴾

*"There is none among the People of the Book but will surely believe in him before his death."*²

And it has always happened that they would bring to me a Christian or a Jew and I would behead him, and then I would stare at his lips but they do not move (to utter the formula of faith) until his breath expires.'

Shahr ibn 'awshab said: "I said to him: 'The meaning of the verse is not what you imagine; the meaning, instead, is that before the Day of Resurrection 'Īsā ibn Maryam (Jesus the son of Mary) ('a) will come down from heaven and follow Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs). At that time no Jew and Christian will be left except those who would believe in him before his death.'

"°ajjāj inquired: 'From where have you learned this interpretation and who taught it to you?' I answered: 'Imām al-Bāqir ('a) taught this interpretation.' °ajjāj said: 'You have obtained it from the pure fountain'."³

¹ 'Ayyāshī, *Tafsīr 'Ayyāshī*, vol. 1, p. 183; *Nūr ath-Thaqalayn*, vol. 1, p. 362; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 549; *Tafsīr al-Ḥāfi*, vol. 1, p. 267; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 340.

² *Sūrah an-Nisā* 4:159.

³ Qummī, *Tafsīr Qummī*, p. 146; *Iḥqāq al-ḥaqiqah*, vol. 13, p. 332; *Al-'Arā'is al-Wā'iḥah*, p. 209; *Biḥār al-Anwar*, vol. 14, p. 349.

Ibn Athīr said: "At that time no *Ahl adh-Dhimmah* will be left to pay the *jizyah*." Perhaps, what is meant by this is that the *Ahl adh-Dhimmah* will either embrace Islam or be killed. Of course, there have been other *ḥadīths* contrary to this purport. See *Nahāyah*, vol. 5, p. 197.

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: "The Day of Resurrection will not happen until you wage war against the Jews. Then, the (defeated) Jews will flee and hide behind rocks, but the rocks will cry: 'O Muslims! O servants of God! These Jews are hiding behind us.'"¹

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) also said: "...The Jews who are with ad-Dajjāl will flee and conceal themselves, but the trees and stones will cry: 'O Spirit of Allah (Jesus)! Here are the Jews.' He will also kill them and no one will be left."²

Of course, it can be understood from other *ḥadīths* that the confrontations and encounters of the Imām ('atfs) with the People of the Book would not always be the same. In fact, in some cases, he will allow them to remain in their religions by paying the *jizyah*. He will engage another group in discussion and debate, and in doing so, he will invite them to Islam. We can probably say that at the beginning of the uprising, he will engage in discussion with them and wage war with those who hide the truth.

Abū Baṣīr said: "I asked Imām aḥ-ḥādīq ('a): 'Will Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs) remain in the Sahlah (Kūfah) Mosque till the end of his life?' The Imām ('a) said: 'Yes.' I asked: 'How will be the *Ahl adh-Dhimma* in his opinion?' He replied: 'He will deal with them conciliatorily just as the Prophet (ﷺ) used to behave with them. As subjects (of the Islamic state) they will pay the *jizyah*'."³

Ibn Athīr said: "At that time no *Ahl adh-Dhimma* will be left to pay the *jizyah*."⁴

Ibn Shawdhab said: "It is because of this that they refer to Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs) as al-Mahdī (the Guided One) because he will be guided toward one of the mountains of Shām and from there he will take out the books of *Tawrat* (Torah). Through them he will discuss and debate with the Jews, and a group of them will embrace Islam through him."⁵

3. False and Deviant Sects

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "Woe betide the Murji'ites! Tomorrow, when our Qā'im rises up, to whom could they seek refuge? Rāwī asked: "Is it when you and us would be equal under the scale of justice as they say?" He replied: "Anyone of them who repents will be forgiven by God. If there is

¹ Aḥmad ibn ḥanbal, *Musnad Ibn ḥanbal*, vol. 2, pp. 398, 520.

² Aḥmad ibn ḥanbal, *Musnad Ibn ḥanbal*, vol. 3, p. 367; ḥākim, *Mustadrak*, vol. 4, p. 503. See Ibn ḥammād, *Fitan*, p. 159; Ibn Mājah, *Sunan Ibn Mājah*, vol. 2, p. 1359.

³ Biḥār al-Anwār, vol. 52, p. 376.

⁴ Nahāyah, vol. 5, p. 197.

⁵ 'Iqd ad-Durar, p. 40.

hypocrisy and two-facedness in his heart, God will not banish and expel anyone except him and if he manifests such hypocrisy, God will shed his blood." Then, the Imām ('a) said: "By Him in whose hand is my soul! Just as the butcher slaughters his sheep, He will kill them," and he pointed to his blessed neck with his hand.

Rāwī said: "They say if the Imām appears, all actions and activities will be to his advantage and he will not shed blood." The Imām ('a) said: "It is not so. By God! (It will not be like that) so much so that you and us will shed their blood and wipe the sweat from ourselves" and then he pointed to his forehead with his blessed hand.¹

When passing by the *Khawārij*² killed after their defeat, the Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: "He who killed you is the one who beguiled you."

It was asked: "Who is he?" He answered: "Satan and corrupt souls." His companions said: "God uprooted them till the end of the world."

The Imām ('a) answered: "No. By Him in whose hand is my soul! They will be in the loins of men and the wombs of women, and they will come out continuously until they come out under the leadership of a person named Ashma between the Tigris and Euphrates rivers. At that time, a man from our *Ahl al-Bayt* will fight him and send him to perdition. Afterward, there will be no more revolt on the part of the *Khawārij* until the Day of Resurrection."³

Regarding the Batriyyah⁴ sect, the same Imām ('a) also said: "After the uprising of Ḥadrat al-Qā'im ('atfs), he will proceed to Kūfah; ten thousand

¹ Nu'mānī, *Ḡhaybah*, p. 283; *Biṭār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 357.

² *Khawārij* (Kharijites or dissenters) were a group of quasi-holy, narrow-minded Muslims who were originally followers of Imām 'Alī ('a) and fought with him at the Battle of Ṣiffīn. Initially they supported arbitration, pushing Imām 'Alī to accept it; however, later they revolted against it arguing that because God was the only true arbitrator, Imām 'Alī and those who agreed with him in the arbitration were not just wrong they were unbelievers, hence they could have no dealings with them. On Imām 'Alī's return to Iraq from Ṣiffīn, this group split off from his army and set up camp on the banks of the Nahrawān canal where they began terrorizing the people whom they regarded as unbelievers. Imām 'Alī was at first able to talk to them and persuade some of them to cease in their hostilities, but eventually he was forced to take up arms against them. In 659 CE he attacked their army under the leadership of 'Abdullāh ibn Wahhāb al-Rasībī at Nahrawān almost annihilating them. Nahrawān was the third and last battle Imām 'Alī had to wage with his enemies. [Trans.]

³ *Murūj adh-Dhahab*, vol. 2, p. 418.

⁴ Batriyyah is one of the Zaydī sects whose members follow Kathīr an-Nawī. The beliefs of the followers of this sect have similarities with that of the Sulaymāniyyah, another Zaydī sect. They suspend their judgment on 'Uthmān ibn 'Affān as to his being a Muslim or infidel. On religious issues they are followers of Mashrab-e I'tizāl while on the questions of jurisprudence most are followers of Abū Ḥanīfah. There is also a group among them who are Shāfi'ī or Shī'ah. See *Bihjah al-Āmāl*, vol. 1, p. 95; *Milal wa Naḥḥ*, vol. 1, p. 161.

people named Batriyyah, bearing arms, will hinder the Imām ('atfs) there, saying: 'Return to where you have been as we are not in need of the progeny of Fāṭimah.' The Imām will unsheathe his sword and kill them all."¹

4. The Sanctimonious

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "...Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will proceed to Kūfah. Sixteen thousand armed men from the Batriyyah (sect) will stand in his way. They are Qur'an reciters and religious scholars with callused foreheads from excessive prostrations in worship whose faces are pale because of many night vigils, both of them are full of hypocrisy. They will cry in unison: 'O descendant of Fāṭimah! Return to where you have been as we have no need of you.'

"Behind the city of Najaf from the noon of Monday until the night Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī will draw his sword against them and put them all to death. In this encounter none of the supporters of the Imām ('atfs) will suffer even a wound."²

Abū 'amzah ath-Thumālī reported that Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "The problems that the master of this affair will experience from the people during his advent will be the same as the problems encountered by the Prophet (ﷺ), or even more."³

Faḍl reported: "Imām aḥ-ḥādīq ('a) said: 'During the uprising of our Qā'im, he will experience more pain and agony from the ignorant than what the Prophet (ﷺ) had from them.'

"I asked: 'How and why?' He answered: 'The Prophet (ﷺ) was commissioned at a time when the people were worshipping engraved stone, wood and idols, but our Qā'im will rise up at the time when the people will resort to the Qur'an in opposing him and quote Qur'anic verses against him."⁴

The same Imām ('a) also said: "Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs) will kill so many people that the flowing blood will be as high as the foreleg. A person from the progeny of his father will register strong protest against him, saying: 'You are driving away the people from you like frightened sheep! Is this approach based on the order of the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ)?'

¹ Shaykh al-Mufīd, *Al-Irshād*, p. 364; *Kashf al-Ghammah*, vol. 3, p. 255; *Ḥirā' al-Mustaḳīm*, vol. 2, p. 354; *Rawḥ al-Wā'iḥ*, vol. 2, p. 265; *I'lām al-Warā*, p. 431; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 328.

² *Dalā'il al-Imāmah*, p. 241; Shaykh aḥ-ḥādīq, *Ghaybah*, p. 283; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 516; *Biḥār al-Anwar*, vol. 2, p. 598.

³ Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 297; *Ḥilyah al-Abrār*, vol. 2, p. 361; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 362; *Bishārah al-Islām*, p. 222.

⁴ *Ibid.*

“One of the Imām’s supporters will rise up and say: ‘Keep silent or else I will behead you!’

The Imām ('atfs) will bring out and show the covenant and pledge from the Prophet (ﷺ) which will be at his disposal.”¹

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: “During the uprising of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs), a group will leave aside the religion and *wilāyah* albeit they will be imagined to be among his followers. There are also some individuals who will acknowledge the *wilāyah* of the Imām and they would be like the splendorous sun and radiant moon.”²

5. *Nā□ibīs*

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: “During the uprising of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs), all the *Nā□ibīs* and enemies of the *Ahl al-Bayt* ('a) will be presented to the Imām ('a). If they acknowledge Islam, which is the very *wilāyah* of the *Ahl al-Bayt* ('a), he will release them and if not, he will kill them, or he will oblige them to pay the *jizyah* just as the *Ahl adh-Dhimmah* do.”³

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: “During the uprising of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs), he will present his faith to each of the *Nā□ibīs*. If they accept it, he would release them and if they do not he would behead them, or ask them to pay the *jizyah* just as they collect from the *Ahl adh-Dhimmah* today, and he will banish them from the cities to the villages (and farms).”⁴

The late Majlisī said: “Maybe this order is related to the beginning of the uprising because the apparent purport of the *ḥadīths* is that none of them will be accepted except those embracing the faith and if they refuse they will be executed.”⁵

Abū Ba□ir said: “I asked Imām a□-□ādiq ('a): How will Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs) behave with the *Nā□ibīs* and those who are inimical to you?” He replied: “O Abū Muḥammad! In our state and government, opponents will not have any favor. God will make their blood lawful for us (to shed) at that time, but today their blood is unlawful for us and you (to shed). Thus, no one should deceive you, and it is at that time when our Qā'im rises up that he will take revenge for God, His Messenger and for us.”⁶

¹ *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 585; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 387.

² Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 317; Shaykh a□-□ūsī, *Ghaybah*, 273; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, pp. 329, 363.

³ *Tafsīr Furāt*, p. 100; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 372.

⁴ *Al-Kāfī*, vol. 8, p. 227; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 450; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 375; *Tanqīh al-Maqāl*, vol. 2, p. 43.

⁵ *Mir'āh al-'Uqūl*, vol. 26, p. 160.

⁶ *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 376.

6. Hypocrites

On the interpretation of the Qur’anic verse [āyah],

﴿لَوْ تَرَيُّوْا لَعَذَّبْنَا الَّذِيْنَ كَفَرُوْا مِنْهُمْ عَذَابًا اَلِيْمًا﴾

*“And had they been separate, We would have surely punished the faithless among them with a painful punishment,”*¹

Imām a□-□ādiq (‘a) said: “In the loins of the infidels and hypocrites, God has trusts from the believers. Our Qā’im will not appear unless those trusts come out of their loins (and believers would be born). Thereafter, the Imām will kill the infidels and hypocrites.”²

Imām a□-□ādiq (‘a) said: “When Ḥaḍrat al-Qā’im (‘atfs) rises up, there would be no need for him to ask help from you, and with respect to most of you, hypocrites, he will implement the punishment [□add]³ of God.”⁴

Imām al-Ḥusayn (‘a) said to his son, Imām as-Sajjād (‘a): “By God! My blood will not cease from flowing till God incites al-Mahdī (‘atfs) (to rise up). By taking revenge for my blood upon the corrupt and faithless hypocrites, he will kill seventy thousand people.”⁵

Imām al-Bāqir (‘a) said: “When Ḥaḍrat al-Qā’im rises up... he will come to Kūfah and kill all the hypocrites (who do not believe in his *imāmah*) there; destroy their palaces; and fight with their warriors, and he will kill so many of them that God would be pleased.”⁶

7. The Satan

Wahhab ibn Jamī‘ said: “I asked Imām a□-□ādiq (‘a): ‘That God said to Satan, ﴿فَاِنَّكَ مِنَ الْمُنْظَرِيْنَ * اِلٰى يَوْمِ الْوَقْتِ الْمَعْلُوْمِ﴾ “You are indeed among the reprieved until the day of the known time,”⁷ is it specified when will it be?’ The Imām (‘a) said in reply: “Have you imagined that it is the Day of Resurrection? God has given respite to Satan till the day of the uprising of our Qā’im. When God commissions him and (permits him to stage the

¹ *Sūrah al-Fatā* 48:25.

² *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 461; *Al-Muqajjah*, p. 206; *Iqāq al-□aq*, vol. 13, p. 357.

³ In Islam the term *ḥadd* (pl. *ḥudūd*) applies to punishments decreed for the commission of certain sins. [Trans.]


⁴ *At-Tahdhīb*, vol. 6, p. 172; *Wasā’il ash-Shī’ah*, vol. 11, p. 382; *Malādh al-Akhyār*, vol. 9, p. 455.

⁵ Ibn Shahr Āshūb, *Manāqib*, vol. 4, p. 85; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 45, p. 299.

⁶ *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 528; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 338.

⁷ *Sūrah al-□ijr* 15:38.

uprising), he will go to the Kūfah Mosque. At that time, walking on his knees, Satan will go there and say: 'Woe is me from this day!'

"Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will take hold of his forehead and slaughter him and that moment is the 'appointed time' when the respite given to Satan will come to an end."¹ 

¹ 'Ayyāshī, *Tafsīr 'Ayyāshī*, vol. 2, p. 243; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 551; *Tafsīr al-Āfī*, vol. 1, p. 906; *Tafsīr Burhān*, vol. 2, p. 343; *Bi-ān al-Anwār*, vol. 60, p. 254.

'Allāmah Sayyid Muḥammad Ḥusayn Ṭabāṭabā'ī has quoted another *ḥadīth* with the same content from *Tafsīr Qummī*. Thereafter, he said: "There are *ḥadīths* reported from the *Ahl al-Bayt* ('a) on the interpretation of most of the verses on *Qiyāmah* (literally, state of standing), which sometimes interpret the verses as the advent of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs), at other times as the *raj'ah* [return to life prior to the Day of Resurrection], and yet at other times as the Day of Resurrection itself. Perhaps, it is because these three days are in common in revealing truths although there is difference in terms of magnitude." See *Al-Mīzān fī Tafsīr al-Qur'ān*, vol. 12, p. 184; *Ar-Raj'ah fī Aḥādīth al-Farīqīn*.

Chapter 7

The Revival of the Muḥammadan (ﷺ) *Sunnah*

There are many *ḥadīths* concerning the new laws and judgments of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘a) and the reforms he will pursue, laws that are at first glance inconsistent with existing jurisprudential texts and sometimes with the apparent purport of the *ḥadīths* and Prophetic tradition [*Sunnah*]. Among these new laws are laws of inheritance based on brotherhood in the “world of souls” [‘*ālam adh-dharr*’],¹ the killing of winebibbers, the killing of non-praying persons, the execution of liars, prohibitions on taking interest from Muslims in transactions, the elimination of minarets from mosques, and the removal of the roofs of mosques. The approaches adopted by the Imām (‘a) in the actions and affairs indicated in the previous chapter are also related to these.

In the *ḥadīths* these changes have been mentioned in such terms as new judgment, new tradition [*sunnah*], new invocation, and new book, which we

¹ It refers to the following Qur’anic verse:

﴿وَإِذْ أَخَذَ رَبُّكَ مِنْ بَنِي آدَمَ مِنْ ظُهُورِهِمْ ذُرِّيَّتَهُمْ وَأَشْهَدَهُمْ عَلَى أَنْفُسِهِمْ أَلَسْتُ بِرَبِّكُمْ قَالُوا بَلَى شَهِدْنَا أَنْ تَقُولُوا يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ إِنَّا كُنَّا عَنْ هَذَا غَافِلِينَ﴾

“When your Lord took from the Children of Adam, from their loins, their descendants and made them bear witness over themselves, [He said to them,] ‘Am I not your Lord?’ They said, ‘Yes indeed! We bear witness.’ [This,] lest you should say on the Day of Resurrection, ‘Indeed we were unaware of this’.” (Sūrah 7:172) [Trans.]

regard as nothing else but the revival of the Muḥammadan (□) *Sunnah*. However, the magnitude of the transformations would be so far-reaching that when people are confronted with them they will say, "He has brought a new religion!"

Granting that the *ḥadīths* are indeed transmitted from the Infallibles ('a), it is necessary to pay attention to the following pertinent points:

1. The conditions for the announcement and implementation of some divine laws will exist during the time of the advent of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs), notwithstanding their being established by God, and it is he who will announce and implement those laws.

2. With the passage of time, changes and distortions in the divine laws have been made by tyrants and corruptors, and after his advent Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs) will rectify and regulate them.

In the book, *Al-Qawl al-Mukhtaḥar*, it is thus stated: "No innovation will be left unless he removes it and no tradition unless he revives it."¹

3. Since the jurists [*fuqahā*] apply rules [*qawā'id*] and principles [*uṣūl*] in deducing religious rulings, sometimes a ruling they deduce might not be consistent with the true ruling although the product of such a deduction or inference [*istinbāḥ*] is a religious proof for the *mujtahid*² and his followers [*muqallidīn*].³ In the government of the Imām of the Time ('atfs), however, he will proclaim the true laws.

4. Some religious laws have been announced in particular situations and in emergencies and have not been in their true form due to dissimulation [*taqiyyah*].⁴ During the period of the Imām ('atfs) there will be no more *taqiyyah* and the true rulings shall be expressed.

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "During the uprising of our Qā'im, there will be no more *taqiyyah* and the Imām will unsheathe his sword; he will neither take anything from the people but the sword nor give anything to them but the sword."⁵

¹ *Al-Qawl al-Mukhtaḥar*, p. 20.

² *Mujtahid*: an authority on the divine law who practices *ijtihād*, i.e. "the search for a correct opinion in the deduction of the specific provisions of the law from its principles and ordinances." [Trans.]

³ *Muqallidīn* [literally, imitators, followers] (sing. *muqallid*): the persons who follow a certain *marja'* [reference authority] in matters of religious jurisprudence. [Trans.]

⁴ *Taqiyyah*: prudential dissimulation of one's true beliefs under conditions of acute danger to one's life, property, or honor, a practice based on Qur'an, 3:28. As its observance depends on certain terms and conditions, it may be obligatory [*wājib*], recommended [*mustahab*], abominable [*makrūh*], or forbidden [*ḥarām*]. For a discussion of *taqiyyah*, see Sayyid Saeed Akhtar Rizvi, *Taqiyyah* (Dar es Salaam: Bilal Muslim Mission of Tanzania, 1992), <http://www.al-islam.org/taqiyyah>.

⁵ *Ta'wīl al-Āyāt a□-□āhirah*, vol. 2, p. 540; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 564.

Regarding the abovementioned cases, it shall suffice to quote some *ḥadīths*:

In a lengthy *ḥadīth* Imām a□-□ādiq (‘a) said: “It is (incumbent) upon you (Muslims) to submit (to our command), to entrust affairs to us, to wait for our and your government, and to wait for our and your relief and deliverance.

When our Qā’im rises up, and our speaker speaks and teaches you anew the Qur’anic instructions, and the religious precepts and laws—in the same form that they have been revealed to Muḥammad (□)—your scholars will reject his style and protest against him while you will not remain steadfast and firm in the religion of God and His path unless under the sword—the sword which is over your head.

“God has given the tradition of the previous communities to these people but they changed the traditions and distorted the religion. No law exists among the people but that which is distorted from its revealed form. May God have mercy on you! Accept whatever has been asked from you so that the one who will revive the religion would come.”¹

Imām a□-□ādiq (‘a) said: “During the advent of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā’im, he will invite the people to Islam anew and guide them toward it (Islam) when Islam had faded and become antiquated and the people had drifted away from it.”²

It can be deduced from these *ḥadīths* that Imām al-Mahdī (‘atfs) will not present a new religion in the world. Instead, since the people would have drifted away from the true Islam, he will invite them again to the religion just as the Prophet (□) invited them to it.

Imām a□-□ādiq (‘a) said to Barīd: “O Barīd! By God! In this world no sanctuary for God would be left without being violated and the Book of God and the *Sunnah* of His Prophet would not be implemented. From the day the Commander of the Faithful (‘a) passed away, the legal punishments [□udūd] of God have never been observed among the people.” Then he said: “By God! Days and nights will not come to an end unless God revives the dead, lets the living die, returns the right to its owner (claimant), and establishes the religion acceptable to Him and His Prophet. Glad tidings to you and give glad tidings to you! By God! The truth is only in your hand.”³

¹ Kashī, *Rijāl*, p. 138; *Iḥbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 560; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 2, p. 246; *Al-‘Awālim*, vol. 3, p. 558.

² Shaykh al-Mufīd, *Al-Irshād*, p. 364; *Raw□ah al-Wā’i□īn*, vol. 2, p. 264; *I’lām al-Warā*, p. 431; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 51, p. 30.

³ *Ath-Tahdhīb*, vol. 4, p. 96; *Malādh al-Akhyār*, vol. 6, p. 258.

This *ḥadīth* shows that the changes for the non-Shī'ah are very remarkable although some cases would also be new for them.

In this chapter, we shall discuss the changes and reforms at the time of the Imām of the Time ('atfs) in three parts: new laws, reforms, and the renewal of foundations and new judgments.

New Laws

1. Execution of Adulterers and Those Who Prevent Zakāt

Abān ibn Taghlib reported: "Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said to me: 'In Islam, based on the law of God, there are two types of blood that are lawful (to shed), however, no one will implement its ruling unless God sends the Qā'im of the *Ahl al-Bayt* ('a). He will judge according to the law of God and seek no proof and witness. He will stone adulterers and adulteresses to death, and behead non-payers of *zakāt*.'" ¹

Imām a□-□ādiq and Imām al-Kā□im ('a) said: "During the uprising of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('a), he will pass judgment on three cases in such a manner that no one before him had done so. He will execute old adulterers, kill anyone who hinders the payment of *zakāt*, and give the inheritance of a brother to his positional brother (who were both brothers in the "world of souls")." ²

Regarding the ruling on the execution of those who do not pay *zakāt*, the late 'Allāmah °illī said: "In all periods the Muslims share consensus of opinion regarding the existence of *zakāt*, as one of the five pillars of Islam. As such, anyone, who denies its compulsoriness [*wujūb*], who is a 'natural Muslim' [*fi□rī Muslim*], ³ and has grown up among Muslims, will be executed regardless of his repentance. And if this person is a 'national/community Muslim' [*millī Muslim*], ⁴ he has to repent three times of his apostasy [*irtidād*] and thereafter he shall be executed (in case it persists). This ruling is implemented on condition that the person in question is knowledgeable and aware of its being obligatory [*wājib*]. If he does not know its compulsoriness, the ruling shall not be passed for his infidelity [*kufr*]." ⁵

On the commentary of this *ḥadīth*, Majlisī al-Awwal said: "Perhaps it means that in these two cases the Imām ('atfs) will pass judgment based on

¹ *Al-Kāfī*, vol. 3, p. 503; *Al-Faḥīh*, vol. 2, p. 11; *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 671; *Wasā'il ash-Shī'ah*, vol. 6, p. 19; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 325.

² Shaykh a□-□ādīq, *Khī□āl*, section 3, p. 133; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 495.

³ "Natural Muslim" [*Muslim fi□rī*]: a Muslim born of Muslim parents. [Trans.]

⁴ "National/community Muslim" [*Muslim millī*]: a Muslim who converted to Islam and thus joined the Islamic community [*millī*]. [Trans.]

⁵ *Tadhkirah al-Fuqahā*, vol. 5, p. 7, *kitāb az-zakāt*. See also *Mir'āh al-'Uqūl*, vol. 16, p. 14.

his (esoteric) knowledge, and there will be no need for witnesses as this method will also be employed in other judgments of the Imām. The secret behind the emphasis on these two cases has something to do with their importance.”¹

2. The Law of Inheritance

Imām al-Kāẓim ('a) said: “God created souls two thousands years before bodies. Those who were acquainted with one another in the heavens will also be acquainted with one another on the earth. Similarly, those who were alien to one another in the heavens will also be unfamiliar with one another on the earth. When Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs) rises up, he will give inheritance to one's brother-in-faith while cutting off the inheritance of one's consanguineous brother. This is the purport of God's saying in *Sūrah al-Mu'minūn* when He says:

﴿ فَإِذَا نُفِخَ فِي الصُّورِ فَلَا أَنْسَابَ بَيْنَهُمْ يَوْمَئِذٍ وَلَا يَتَسَاءَلُونَ ﴾

“And when the Trumpet is blown, there will be no ties between them on that day, nor will they ask [about] each other.”^{2,3}

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: “Two thousand years before creating bodies, God established brotherhood among the souls. When the Qā'im among us, the *Ahl al-Bayt*, rises up, brothers whose brotherhood had been established will inherit from one another while the consanguineous brothers having the same father and mother will not inherit from one another.”⁴

3. The Execution of Liars

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: “When our Qā'im appears, he will first go to Shī'ah liars and kill them.”⁵

They are probably referring to the hypocrites, false Mahdīs and innovators in religion who caused people to deviate.

¹ *Rawḍah al-Muttaqīn*, vol. 3, p. 18.

² *Sūrah al-Mu'minūn* 23:101.

³ *Dalā'il al-Imāmah*, p. 260; *Tafsīr Burhān*, vol. 3, p. 120; *Ash-Shī'ah wa'r-Raj'ah*, vol. 1, p. 402.

⁴ *Al-Faqīh*, vol. 4, p. 254; Shaykh a□-□ādūq, *'Aqā'id*, p. 76; □u□aynī, *Hidāyah*, p. 64, 87; *Mukhtaṣar al-Ba□'ir*, p. 159; *Rawḍah al-Muttaqīn*, vol. 11, p. 415; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 6, p. 249; vol. 101, p. 367.

⁵ *Kashī, Rijāl*, p. 299; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 561.

4. Termination of the Ruling on Jizyah

The Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: "God will not destroy the world unless our Qā'im rises up; extinguishes our enemies; accepts the *jizyah* no more; breaks the cross and idols; puts an end to the period of war and bloodshed; invites the people to receive assets and properties; fairly distributes properties among them; and behaves justly with the people."¹

Regarding the breaking of the cross and the killing of pigs, which means the end of the period of Christianity and the ruling on the *jizyah*, the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: "Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will appear as a just ruler and he will break the crosses, kill the pigs, and order his functionaries to take assets and properties—to place them in the cities so that anyone who is in need can take from them—but no one would be found who would express his need."²

Perhaps, this *ḥadīth* alludes to the end of Christianity and the decline of the People of the Book [*ahl al-kitāb*].

5. Revenge against the Remaining Offspring of Imām al-Ḥusayn's ('a) Murderers

Hirawī said: "I asked Ḥaḍrat ar-Riḍā ('a): 'O son of the Messenger of Allah! What is your opinion regarding this statement of Imām al-Ḥusayn ('a) when he said: 'When our Qā'im rises up, the living offspring of Imām al-Ḥusayn's ('a) murderers will be killed as punishment for the act of their forefathers?' Ḥaḍrat ar-Riḍā ('a) said: 'That statement is correct.'

"I asked: 'So, what does this verse of the Qur'an mean:

﴿وَلَا تَزِرُ وَازِرَةٌ وِزْرَ أُخْرَى﴾

"No bearer shall bear another's burden,"³?

"The Imām replied: 'What God states is true, but the remaining offspring of Imām al-Ḥusayn's ('a) murderers would be pleased with the act of their forefathers and take pride in it, and anyone who is pleased with an act is like the one who has done it. If a certain man in the east is killed and another man in the west is pleased with the killing of the former, in the sight of God he has a share in the sin.'

¹ *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 496.

² *Iqd ad-Durar*, p. 166; *Al-Qawl al-Mukhtaṣar*, p. 14.

³ *Sūrah al-An'ām* 6:164; *Sūrah al-Isrā'* (or *Banī Isrā'īl*) 17:15; *Sūrah Fāṭir* (or *al-Malā'ikah*) 35:18; *Sūrah az-Zumar* 39:7.

“Ḥaḍrat al-Qā’im (‘atfs) will exterminate the descendants of Imām al-Ḥusayn’s (‘a) murderers during his advent because of the fact that they are pleased with the act of their forefathers.’

“I asked: ‘With which tribe will your Qā’im start?’ He replied: ‘He will start from the Banī Shaybah and amputate their hands because they are robbers of the House of God in the holy city of Mecca [Makkah al-Mu‘aqqamah].’¹

6. The Ruling on Mortgage [rahn] and Deposit [wathīqah]

‘Alī reports that his father, Sālim, asked Imām a□-□ādiq (‘a) regarding the ḥadīth, “I loathe anyone who has more confidence in mortgage [rahn] and deposits [wathīqah] than his faithful brother.”

Imām a□-□ādiq (‘a) said: “This subject belongs to the period of the Qā’im among us, the *Ahl al-Bayt*.”²

7. Business Profit

Sālim reported: “I said to Imām a□-□ādiq (‘a): ‘A ḥadīth has been reported which states that earning profit and interest from a believer by his fellow brother-in-faith is unlawful and usurious.’” The Imām (‘a) said: “This subject belongs to the time when the Qā’im from among us, the *Ahl al-Bayt*, rises up. But today it is permissible for a person to sell something to a believer and earn a profit from him.”³

After regarding the chain of transmission of this ḥadīth as strong [qawīyy], Majlisī al-Awwal said: “It can be learnt from this ḥadīth that the ḥadīths stating that making a profit off a believer is discouraged or reprehensible [makrūh], regarding it as usurious, are not exaggerations. It is possibly makrūh at the present but during the time of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā’im (‘atfs) it will be unlawful [□arām].”⁴ While regarding this ḥadīth as unknown [majhūl], Majlisī ath-Thānī, however, said: “Maybe the unlawfulness [□urmat] mentioned in this two cases refers to the time of the uprising of Ḥaḍrat al-°ujjah.”⁵

¹ ‘Ilal ash-Sharā’i’, vol. 1, p. 219; ‘Uyūn Akhbār ar-Riḍā, vol. 1, p. 273; Bi□ār al-Anwār, vol. 52, p. 313; Ithbāt al-Hudāh, vol. 3, p. 455.

² Man Lā Ya□uruḥu’l-Faqīh, vol. 3, p. 200; Ath-Tahdhīb, vol. 7, p. 179; Wasā’il ash-Shī’ah, vol. 13, p. 123; Ithbāt al-Hudāh, vol. 3, p. 455; Malādh al-Akhyār, vol. 11, p. 315.

³ Ibid.

⁴ Raw□ah al-Muttaqīn, vol. 7, p. 375.

⁵ Malādh al-Akhyār, vol. 11, p. 315.

8. The Brethren-in-Faith Helping One Another

Isqāq said: "I was in the company of Imām aq-ādiq ('a) when he was talking about help and cooperation between brethren-in-faith and then he said: 'When Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('a) appears, it will be obligatory to help brethren-in-faith and they have to be assisted and supported'."¹

9. Ruling on Qaāyi' (Private Estates)

Imām aq-ādiq ('a) said: "When our Qā'im rises up, qaāyi' (and the ownership of immovable properties) will cease to exist in such a way that there will be no more qaāyi'."²

The qaāyi' which refers to huge properties such as villages, vast tracks of land and castles that kings and powerful individuals see as their own, will belong to the Imām of the Time ('atfs) during his time.

10. Ruling on Wealth

Mu'adh ibn Kathīr reported that Imām aq-ādiq ('a) said: "Our Shī'ah are at liberty. They are free in the sense that they spend whatever they earn in the way of good and righteousness, but when our Qā'im rises up, it will be unlawful [arām] for every rich man to amass wealth except that he would turn it over to the Imām and spend the same in war against the enemy, and this is the statement of God when He says:

﴿وَالَّذِينَ يَكْنِزُونَ الذَّهَبَ وَالْفِضَّةَ وَلَا يُنْفِقُونَهَا فِي سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ فَبَشِّرْهُمْ بِعَذَابٍ أَلِيمٍ﴾

"Those who treasure up gold and silver, and do not spend it in the way of Allah, inform them of a painful punishment."^{3,4}

Social Reforms and the Structural Renovation of Mosques

1. The Destruction of the Kūfah Mosque and the Fixing of Its Qiblah

Aqbagh ibn Nabātah said: "On his entrance into the Kūfah Mosque—which at that time was made up of sundried earth and baked clay—the

¹ Shaykh aq-ādiq, *Muādiqah al-Akhawān*, p. 20; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 495.

² *Qurb al-Asnād*, p. 54; *Biār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 309; vol. 97, p. 58; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, pp. 523, 584; *Bishārah al-Islām*, p. 234.

³ *Sūrah at-Tawbah* (or, *Barā'ah*) 9:34.

⁴ *Al-Kāfi*, vol. 4, p. 61; *At-Tahdhīb*, vol. 4, p. 143; 'Ayyāshī, *Tafsīr 'Ayyāshī*, vol. 2, p. 87; *Al-Mu'ajjah*, p. 89; *Tafsīr āfi*, vol. 2, p. 341; *Tafsīr Burhān*, vol. 2, p. 121; *Nūr ath-Thaqalayn*, vol. 2, p. 213; *Biār al-Anwār*, vol. 73, p. 143; *Mir'āh al-'Uqūl*, vol. 16, p. 193.

Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: 'Woe unto him who destroyed you! Woe unto him who facilitated the way to your destruction! Woe unto him who built you with mud and baked clay, and changed the direction of Nūḥ's (Noah) ('a) *qiblah*!' Then, he continued: 'Blessed is he who will be the witness of your destruction during the time of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im of the *Ahl al-Bayt*! They are the excellent ones of the *ummah* who are in the company of the excellent ones of the progeny [*itrat*].'¹

The same Imām ('a) also said: "Undoubtedly, when our Qā'im rises up, he will destroy the Kūfah Mosque and fix its *qiblah*."²

2. Destruction of Embellished Mosques and Those along the Highways

Abū Baḥr reported that Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "During the uprising of our Qā'im, he will destroy four mosques in Kūfah and he will not allow any embellished mosque to remain without having destroyed its crenation and extravagance and make it simple, free from any extravagance. He will also destroy all mosques located along highways."³

Perhaps, the four mosques refer to those built in Kūfah after the martyrdom of Imām al-Ḥusayn ('a) by the commanders of Yazīd's army as a gesture of gratitude for the murder of the Imām, and which later on became known as "the cursed mosques" [*masājid al-mal'ūnah*]. Although those mosques do not exist now, a group will possibly rebuild them later on account of its enmity with the *Ahl al-Bayt* ('a).⁴

Regarding these mosques, Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "Out of joy for the murder of al-Ḥusayn ('a), four mosques were constructed in Kūfah such as Ash'ath Mosque, Jarīr Mosque, Samāk Mosque, and Shabath ibn Rub'ī Mosque."⁵

3. The Destruction of Minarets

Abū Hāshim Ja'farī said: "I was in the company of Imām Ḥasan al-'Askarī ('a) when he said: 'During the uprising of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im, he will

¹ Shaykh aḥ-ḥusaynī, *Ghaybah*, p. 283; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 516; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 332.

² Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 317; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 364; *Mustadrak al-Wasā'il*, vol. 3, p. 369; vol. 12, p. 294.

³ *Man Lā Yaḥḥurūhū'l-Faqīh*, vol. 1, p. 53; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 333; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, pp. 517, 556; *Ash-Shī'ah wa'r-Raj'ah*, vol. 2, p. 400. See *Man Lā Yaḥḥurūhū'l-Faqīh*, vol. 1, p. 232; *Al-Irshād*, p. 365; *Rawḥ al-Wā'iḥ*, vol. 2, p. 264.

⁴ *Mahdī-ye Maw'ūd*, p. 941; *Al-Ghārāt*, vol. 2, p. 324, footnote.

⁵ *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 45, p. 189.

order the destruction of the minarets and *maqā'ūrah*¹ in the mosques.' I said to myself: 'Why will the Imām do so?' Imām al-'Askarī ('a) turned toward me and said: 'It is because they are innovations, which neither the Prophet nor any Imām has built'.²

Based on a *ḥadīth*, the late Shaykh a□-□adūq said: "On passing by a mosque whose minaret was high, the Commander of the Faithful ('a) ordered the destruction of its minaret."³

Majlisī al-Awwal said: "From these *ḥadīths*, the unlawfulness of building high minarets can be inferred because the presence of extravagance and dominance over the houses of Muslims is unlawful [□arām]. Most jurists [*fuqahā*], however, infer that what is meant by this *ḥadīth* is the abominable (instead of □arām).⁴ As reported by Mas'ūdī and □abarsī, "He will order the destruction of minarets."⁵

4. Destruction of the Roofs and Pulpits of Mosques

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "The first thing Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will do from the beginning is related to the roof of mosques. He will destroy them and in its stead he will place roofs similar to the 'arīsh⁶ of Mūsā (Moses) ('a)."⁷

This *ḥadīth* is related to the acceptance of prayers. It is because the absence of obstacles and buffers between the worshippers and the sky is recommended [*musta□abb*] while the removal of buffers is one of the conditions for the acceptance of prayers and the granting of requests in invocations.

¹ *Maqā'ūrah*: a place in the mosque used to be built for the caliph or congregational prayer leader where he would stand in prayer and be away from the access of his enemy. See *Farhang-e Fārsī-e 'Amīd* ['Amīd Persian Dictionary].

² Shaykh a□-□ūsī, *Ghaybah*, p. 123; Ibn Shahr Āshūb, *Manāqib*, vol. 4, p. 437; *I'lām al-Warā*, p. 355; *Kashf al-Ghammah*, vol. 3, p. 208; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 412; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 50, p. 215; vol. 52, p. 323; *Mustadrak al-Wasā'il*, vol. 3, pp. 379, 384.

³ *Man Lā Ya□□uruḥu'l-Faqīh*, vol. 1, p. 155

⁴ *Raw□ah al-Muttaqīn*, vol. 2, p. 109.

⁵ *Ithbāt al-Wa□īyah*, p. 215; *I'lām al-Warā*, p. 355.

⁶ 'Arīsh: a shade or bower for one's protection from the sunlight. □arī□ī is quoted as saying it is made up of date palm leaves and until the end of the date season, one could stay there. Maybe the destruction of the roofs of mosques is because mosques prior to the advent of Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs) will go beyond their state of simplicity since they will acquire ceremonial status. The destruction of minarets is perhaps based on the same reason; that they will have already lost their function as the locus of guidance and enlightenment of the people. In fact, on the contrary, they will be transformed as platforms for the consolidation of the rule of tyrants and traitors and to justify the interference of enemies in Muslim lands.

⁷ *Man Lā Ya□□uruḥu'l-Faqīh*, vol. 1, p. 153; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 425; *Wasā'il ash-Shī'ah*, vol. 3, p. 488; *Raw□ah al-Muttaqīn*, vol. 2, p. 101.

5. Restoration of Masjid al-°arām (the Sacred Mosque in Mecca) and Masjid an-Nabī (in Medina) to Their Respective Original Sizes

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs) will destroy the structure of Masjid al-°arām (the Sacred Mosque in Mecca) and restore its original structure and size. After being destroyed, Masjid an-Nabī (in Medina) will also be restored to its original size. He will also erect the *Ka'bah* in its original location."¹

The same Imām ('a) also said: "When Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs) rises up, he will restore the House of God to its original size,² and he will also do the same to the Mosque of the Prophet (□) (in Medina) and the Kūfah Mosque."

Judgment

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "After the advent of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs), God will send a wind to announce in every land: 'This is Mahdī who will pass judgment based on the method of Dāwūd (Prophet David) and Sulaymān (Prophet Solomon), and he seeks no witness in his decree.'"³

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs) has some decrees and judgments against which even some of his supporters and those who wield the sword on his side will protest. This will be the (method of) judgment of Ḥaḍrat Ādam ('a) and he will behead the protesters. Then, he will also pass judgment based on a different method, which is that of Dāwūd. Another group from his supporters, however, will protest and the Imām will also behead them.

"For the third time, he will adopt the method of Ibrāhīm ('a) in passing judgment and again, another group from among his supporters, who wield the sword on his side, will protest and the Imām will also execute them. Afterward, the Imām of the Time ('atfs) will behave based on the conduct of Muḥammad (□) and no one will protest against him anymore."⁴

Large and grandiose institutions with diverse names, symbols and having eloquent bylaws today only talk about human rights and the protection of the deprived, but have behaved toward people in such a manner as if they have no other business but enmity against all of humanity.

¹ *Al-Irshād*, p. 364; Shaykh a□-□ūsī, *Ghaybah*, p. 297; Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 171; *I'lām al-Warā*, p. 431; *Kashf al-Ghammah*, vol. 3, p. 255; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 516; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 332.

² The late Shaykh a□-□adūq and 'Allāmah Majlisī have stated its limit. See *Raw□ah al-Muttaqīn*, vol. 2, p. 94; *Man Lā Ya□□uruḥu'l-Faqīh*, vol. 1, p. 149.

³ *Al-Kāfī*, vol. 1, p. 397; *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 671; *Mir'ātu'l-'Uqūl*, vol. 4, p. 300; Majlisī regards this *ḥadīth* as reliable; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, pp. 320, 330, 336, 339.

⁴ *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 585; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 389.

Finally, the government of al-Mahdī will become the inheritor of a world in which the tyrants, with all their might, had waged war and engaged in combat against humanity. They would have slaughtered a large number of people and those who have remained alive will no longer pin their hopes on other governments. They will seek refuge instead in the government that will fulfill its promises, and that government is no other than the government of al-Mahdī from the Progeny of Muḥammad (□).

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "Our government and state will be the last state and no party, group or family will remain to have any government unless that government would have been established prior to ours. The reason behind this is that if they could not see our *modus operandi* and government policy, they could not say, 'If we had been in charge, we would have behaved in that manner,' and this is the purport of God's statement when He says:

﴿وَالْعَاقِبَةُ لِلْمُتَّقِينَ﴾

*"And the outcome will be in favor of the God-wary."*¹

The Government of Justice

Justice is a familiar word which is liked and pursued by everybody. Justice is something good and wholesome irrespective of where or whom it emanates, and it becomes more meaningful if it stems from officials and rulers. It is lamentable to note, however, that most of the time no other trace of justice except its name can be found, and mankind has not witnessed justice except in very few instances—in the governments of men of God.

The imperialists abuse this sacred word in various forms for further imperialist ventures and political influence. By chanting this false slogan, they gather groups around them. It will no longer take much time for them to be disgraced; they would not find any alternative to perpetuate their rule except by resorting to the use of force and injustice.

View of the Late □abarsī

The late □abarsī made a speech regarding Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī's ('atfs) revival of the *Sunnah*, which we will partially quote here:

If it is posed that—"All Muslims believe that after the Seal of the Prophets (□) there will be no more prophet to come, but you Shī'ah believe that during his uprising, al-Qā'im will not collect *jizyah* from the People of the Book; he will kill twenty year olds who are ignorant of the precepts of his religion; destroy mosques and religious sites; pass judgments based on the

¹ *Sūrah al-A'rāf* 7:128; *Sūrah Hūd* 11:49; *Sūrah al-Qa'a* □ 28:83.

method of Dāwūd, which does not require witnesses in issuing verdicts; and the like, which are mentioned in your *ḥadīths*. This belief leads to the abrogation of religion and nullification of religious precepts. In fact, in view of this belief, you have posited the existence of prophethood and a prophet after the Seal of the Prophets although you have not named him as a prophet”—what should be our reply?

We will say: We are not aware of the things mentioned in the question—that al-Qā’im (‘atfs) will not collect *jizyah* from the People of the Book and that he will kill twenty year olds who are ignorant of the precepts of their religion. And even assuming that there had been a *ḥadīth* in this regard, it cannot be absolutely accepted. What is possibly meant by the destruction of certain mosques and religious sites is that these mosques and religious sites have been constructed contrary to the spirit of piety and God’s command, which of course, will be a legitimate act for the Prophet (□) did a similar act.¹


That al-Qā’im will pass judgment similar to that of Dāwūd and not be in need of witnesses and evidence in issuing verdicts is also an issue which is not absolute and certain according to us. If it is correct, it should be so understood that in cases where he has knowledge of the truth of the cases and the nature of the disputes, he will pass judgment based on his knowledge. For, whenever an Imām or judge acquires certainty on a subject, it becomes necessary for him to give a verdict in accordance with his knowledge and he will no longer be in need of any witness or evidence, and this point will not cause the abrogation of religion.

They have also said: “The Qā’im will not collect *jizyah*, and he will neither listen to the testimony of witnesses nor pay attention to evidence. Even assuming it to be correct, it will not lead to the abrogation of religion either. This is because the proof of abrogation [*naskh*] comes after the abrogated [*mansūkh*] law, precept or decree and they do not come

¹ This occurred when the Prophet (s) had returned from battle against the infidels of Tabuk. The *munāfiqīn* (hypocrites) approached the Prophet and told him that they had built a mosque where people could go on cold and rainy nights and where the sick could find shelter. They then requested that the Prophet take part in a congregational prayer which was to be held in their mosque. The Prophet said that he would reply to this request on his return from Tabuk; and having returned, he ordered the mosque in question to be demolished. Subsequently the following holy verse was revealed: “As for those who took a mosque for sabotage and for defiance, and to cause division among the faithful, and for the purpose of ambush [used] by those who have fought Allah and His Apostle before—they will surely swear: ‘We desired nothing but good,’ and Allah bear witness that they are indeed liars” (Sūrah at-Tawbah (or, Bara’ah) 9:107).

For further information, see commentary of the verse at <http://www.al-islam.org/quran>. [Trans.]

simultaneously. If the two proofs (proof of abrogation and proof of the abrogated law, precept or decree) came together, one could not abrogate the other although the former is contrary to the latter in meaning. For instance, if we assume that God said, "On Saturday up to a certain time, you have to stay at home, and after that time you are free to go wherever you like." This statement cannot be said to be an abrogation because the "lifting proof" [*dalīl ar-rāfi*] is together with the "proof of effect" [*dalīl al-mawjib*].

As this fact becomes clear and since we know that the Prophet (ﷺ) had informed us that "The Qā'im is from my progeny; follow his orders and accept whatever decree he will issue," it is obligatory upon us to follow him and act upon whatever decree he would issue. Thus, if we accepted his ruling—although it might be different from some of the previous precepts—we would not regard it an act of abrogating the precepts of the religion of Islam because as we have said, abrogation of laws or precepts on an issue whose proof has emerged cannot be realized.¹ 

¹ *Biṣṣār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 383. There have also been *ḥadīths* among the Ahl as-Sunnah with similar contents.



Part 3

The Government of Imām al-Mahdī (‘atfs)



Chapter 1

The Government of Truth

Administering a territory as wide as the world itself is a difficult task, which is only possible for a divinely guided leader and functionaries committed to this divine system and the sovereignty of Islam. Indeed, in order to administer lands and territories Imām al-Mahdī (*'atfs*) will appoint ministers who will have had a record of struggle both in experience and action, and who will have shown their firmness and decisiveness.

Governors with strong personalities, who think of nothing but the welfare of the Islamic state and the pleasure of God, will take charge of state affairs. Obviously, a country whose officials possess these qualities will prevail over any difficulty. The destructions wrought by the previous governments will successfully turn into progress and conditions will be so transformed that the living will wish that the dead would live once again.

It must be noted that Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (*'atfs*) will take charge of affairs at the time when the world will have inherited a plethora of confusions and disorders, and there will be millions of invalids as well as physically and mentally sick individuals. An atmosphere of delapidation will cast its shadow upon the world and insecurity will become prevalent everywhere. Cities will be in total ruin on account of wars and conflicts, and the decline of farming due to pollution of the ecosystem will lead to the scarcity of food.

On the other hand, the people of the world would have witnessed that many governments, parties and organizations had claimed that if they were given the chance to take charge of things, they could serve the world and its inhabitants, ensuring peace, security and improvement in economic

conditions. In action, however, each of them would have been worse than the other, introducing nothing but corruption, killing and ruin.

Leninism collapsed while Maoism was disfavored by its own leaders, and Western democracy, on the other hand, is nothing more than a people-deceiving slogan.

The time will finally come when justice and equity would be implemented by the able hand of the man of God on the earth full of tyranny.¹ He will be so serious and decisive in actualizing the slogan that "He will fill the world with justice and equity"—that its effect would be felt everywhere.

Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs) will administer the government and nurture the people in such a manner that the word "tyranny" will no longer hold a place in one's mind, and according to the *ḥadīths* no person will oppress another anymore; even animals will also cease harming and oppressing others to the extent that the sheep and the wolf will mingle with each other.

Umm Salmah reported that the Prophet (ﷺ) said: "The Mahdī ('atfs) will institute justice in society to the extent that the living will wish that their dead would live again in order to partake in reaping the fruits of justice."²

Commenting on the noble verse [āyah],

﴿اعْلَمُوا أَنَّ اللَّهَ يُحْيِي الْأَرْضَ بَعْدَ مَوْتِهَا﴾

"Know that Allah revives the earth after its death,"³

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "God will revive the earth through Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs). He will behave justly on earth and with the spread of justice the earth will be revived after its death from rampant tyranny."⁴

Imām a□-□ādīq ('a) also said: "By God! Certainly, the justice of al-Mahdī ('atfs) will penetrate their houses and rooms just as heat and cold penetrate therein."⁵

It can be inferred from this *ḥadīth* that notwithstanding the desire of certain groups of people and even their opposition, justice will encompass the entire world without any exception.

On the exegesis of the noble Qur'anic verse [āyah],

﴿الَّذِينَ إِن مَّكَّنَّاهُمْ فِي الْأَرْضِ أَقَامُوا الصَّلَاةَ وَآتَوُا الزَّكَاةَ﴾

¹ "Earth full of tyranny": "earth that died due to tyranny" in the original. [Trans.]

² *Majma' az-Zawā'id*, vol. 7, p. 315; *Al-Idhā'ah*, p. 119; *I□qāq al-□aqq*, vol. 13, p. 294.

³ *Sūrah al-□ādīd* 57:17.

⁴ *Kamāluḥḍīn*, p. 668; *Al-Ma□ajjah*, p. 429; *Nūr ath-Thaqalayn*, vol. 5, p. 242; *Yanābī' al-Mawaddah*, p. 429; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 51, p. 54.

⁵ *Nu'mānī*, *Ghaybah*, p. 159; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 544; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 362.

*"Those who, if We granted them power in the land, maintain the prayer, give the zakāt,"*¹

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "This verse has been revealed concerning the station of al-Mahdī and his supporters. Through them God will manifest His religion and make it so dominant that no trace of tyranny and innovation [*bid'ah*] could be seen."²

In this regard, Imām ar-Riḍā ('a) said: "During the advent of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs), he will establish the scale of justice in society and from then on, no one will oppress anyone anymore."³

The Commander of the Faithful ('a) also said: "The Imām ('atfs) will behave justly with peasants and the people."⁴

Jābir ibn 'Abdullāh al-Anṣārī said: "A person came to Imām al-Bāqir ('a) and asked: 'Take this five hundred dirham *zakāt* on my properties!' The Imām ('a) said: 'Keep it and give it to your neighbors yourself, and the indigent and needy Muslims.' Then, he said: 'During the uprising of the Qā'im from among us, the *Ahl al-Bayt*, he will distribute property evenly and he will behave justly with them (people). Thus, anyone who follows him will actually be following God and anyone who disobeys him will actually be disobeying God. In view of this, he will be called the Mahdī [the Guided One] as he has guidance with respect to hidden affairs and issues."⁵

Justice at the time of al-Mahdī ('atfs) will be so pervasive that even religious priorities will be observed. By utilizing the facilities intended for them, those who want to perform their religious obligations will have priority over those who are at the threshold of doing optional acts of worship. For example, during the time of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs) when Islam and the divine government are established in the entire world, it would be natural for religious rites to be held in a splendid and indescribable manner.

Due to the spread of the Islamic government, there will be no more obstacles obstructing the performance of the Abrahamic *hajj*, which is one of the religious rites. In performing the *hajj* the people will be like a torrential flood rushing toward the *Ka'bah*. As a result, the area surrounding the *Ka'bah* will be overcrowded and it would not be able to accommodate all the pilgrims. The Imām ('atfs) will issue an order for priority to be given to those

¹ *Sūrah al-ḥajj* 22:41.

² *Tafsīr Qummī*, vol. 2, p. 87; *Al-Muḥajjah*, p. 143; *Iḥqāq al-ḥaqiqah*, vol. 13, p. 341.

³ *Kamāluddīn*, p. 372; *Kifāyah al-Athar*, p. 270; *I'lām al-Warā'*, p. 408; *Kashf al-Ghammah*, vol. 3, p. 314; *Farā'id as-Sām'ayn*, vol. 2, p. 336; *Yanābī' al-Mawaddah*, p. 448; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 321; *Ghāyah al-Marām*, p. 696; *Iḥqāq al-ḥaqiqah*, vol. 13, p. 364.

⁴ *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 496.

⁵ *Iqd ad-Durar*, p. 39; *Iḥqāq al-ḥaqiqah*, vol. 13, p. 186.

who are performing the obligatory °*ajj*. In the words of Imām a□-□ādiq ('a), that will be the first manifestation of justice of the Promised Mahdī ('atfs).

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "The first thing to be manifested of the justice of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('a) is that he will announce that those who are performing the optional °*ajj* or rituals, kissing the °*ajar al-Aswad*,¹ and doing optional □*awāf*² would have to offer the same opportunities to those who would be performing the obligatory °*ajj*."³

Government over Hearts

Naturally, the government, which in a short period of time would prevail over adversities, eliminate confusion and disorder, and sow the seeds of hope in the hearts of mankind by removing despair from them, will enjoy popular support. The system, which could extinguish the fires of war and restore order and security in society to the extent that even animals would benefit from it, will be the government over hearts. The aspiration of mankind is to live under such a government. As such, in the *ḥadīths* the people's adherence to the Imām and their attachment to his government have been mentioned in glowing terms.

The Messenger of Allah (□) said: "I give you glad tidings of al-Mahdī, a man from the Quraysh with whose caliphate and rule the inhabitants of the heavens and the earth will be pleased."⁴

The Prophet (□) also said: "A man from my *ummah* will rise up whom the people of the earth and heavens will love."⁵

□abā□ said: "During the time of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) young people will wish to be old enough while old people will wish that they were still small and young."⁶

Maybe the old would wish that they were still small and young because they would like to spend more time under his government while the youth would wish to be old enough because they want to be responsible enough to

¹ *Ḥajar al-Aswad*: a black stone located in the eastern corner of the *Ka'bah*, 1.5 meters above the ground, placed in the wall. *Hajj* pilgrims try to touch this stone during the circumambulation for blessings and luck as part of the Sunnah of the Holy Prophet (ṣ). [Trans.]

² □*awāf*: the ritual of circumambulating the *Ka'bah* seven times, as a part of the □*ajj* rituals. [Trans.]

³ *Al-Kāfi*, vol. 4, p. 427; *Man lā Ya□□uḥu'l-Faqīh*, vol. 2, p. 525; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 374.

⁴ *Yanābī' al-Mawaddah*, p. 431; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 524.

⁵ *Firdaws al-Akḥbār*, vol. 4, p. 496; *Is'āf ar-Rāghibīn*, p. 124; *I□qāq al-□aqq*, vol. 19, p. 663; *Ash-Shī'ah wa'r-Raj'ah*, vol. 1, p. 216.

⁶ Ibn □ammād, *Fitan*, p. 99; *Al-□āwī Li'l-Fatāwā*, vol. 2, p. 78; *Al-Qawl al-Mukhta□ar*, p. 21; *Muttaqī Hindī*, *Burhān*, p. 86; Ibn □āwūs, *Malā□im*, p. 70.

play a role in the implementation of the programs of the divine government of Ḥaḍrat Walī al-‘Aīr (‘atfs), and thus, acquire spiritual reward in the hereafter.

The government of the Imām (‘atfs) will have such an impact that even the dead will benefit from it.

In this regard, Ḥaḍrat ‘Alī (‘a) said: “A man from my progeny will come, as a result of whose advent and government, no dead person would remain in the grave without having received relief and blessings there, and they will visit and give the glad tidings of his uprising to one another.”¹

In *Kāmil az-Ziyārāt*,² “*al-faraīḥ*” has been interpreted as “rejoicing” and “delight” and the use of the word “*mayyit*” [dead] in the *ḥadīth* deserves close attention because it can be concluded that this relief and comfort is universal and not confined to a particular group of souls. If we put this *ḥadīth* beside those that state, “The souls of the infidels will be in the worse state of enchainment and captivity,” its meaning will be made clear; for, it is said that with the advent of the Imām, the order for their release from chastisement will be given, or the state of “the absence of relief and mercy in the treatment by the chastising angels” will be changed for a certain period, however short will it be, as a token of respect for the establishment of the divine government on earth. Within that short period, the chastising angels will desist from punishing the souls of the infidels and hypocrites.

The Capital of the Government

Abū Baīr reports: “Imām aī-ādiq (‘a) said: ‘O Abū Muḥammad! It is as if I can see the Qā’im of Muḥammad’s Progeny along with his family descending upon the Sahlah Mosque.’ I asked: ‘Is the Sahlah Mosque his residence?’ He replied: ‘Yes; right there in the residence of Prophet Idrīs (Enoch) (‘a), and no prophet has been appointed without having performed prayer there. Anyone who stays there is like one who had been in the camp of the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ). There is no faithful man or woman whose heart is not favorably disposed toward that mosque. Every day and night, angels of the Divine seek refuge in that mosque to worship God. O Abū Muḥammad! If I were only near you, I would perform my prayers only in that mosque.’”

¹ *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 653; *Biāir al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 328; *Wāfī*, vol. 2, p. 112.

² *Kāmil az-Ziyārāt*, p. 30.

“During the uprising of our Qā'im, God will take revenge on behalf of His Messenger and all of us upon the enemies’.”¹

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) mentioned Sahlah Mosque and said: “That is the house of our □ā□ib (Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī); there will be a time when he will stay there with his family.”²

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: “The Mahdī ('atfs) will rise up; he will go to Kūfah and reside there.”³

The same Imām ('a) also said: “When our Qā'im rises up and goes to Kūfah, there will be no believer who would not take residence there with al-Mahdī ('atfs) or visit that city.”⁴

In this regard, Ḥaḍrat Amīr (Imām 'Alī) ('a) said: “A time will come when al-Mahdī's ('atfs) place for prayers will be here (Kūfah Mosque).”⁵

Abūbakra 'a□ramī said: “I asked Imām al-Bāqir ('a) or Imām a□-□ādiq ('a): ‘Which land is more sacred after the House of God (in Mecca) and the Mosque of the Prophet (in Medina)?’ He replied: ‘O Abūbakra! The land of Kūfah is a sacred place, where the Sahlah Mosque is found, a mosque where all the prophets have prayed; from there divine justice will be established, and the Qā'im of God and those who rise up after him will be from there. There is the place of the prophets and their righteous successors’.”⁶

Muḥammad ibn Fa□īl said: “The Day of Resurrection will not come to pass unless all the believers gather in Kūfah.”⁷

The Messenger of Allah (□) said: “Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will rule for nine or ten years and the most fortunate people with respect to him are the people of Kūfah.”⁸

It can be deduced from this set of *ḥadīths* that the city of Kūfah would be the epicenter of activities and the political capital of the Imām of the Time ('atfs).

¹ *Al-Kāfi*, vol. 3, p. 495; *Kāmil az-Ziyārāt*, p. 30; Rāwandī, *Qi□a□ al-Anbiyā'*, p. 80; *At-Tahdhīb*, vol. 6, p. 31; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 583; *Wasā'il ash-Shī'ah*, vol. 3, p. 524; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, pp. 317, 376; *Mustadrak al-Wasā'il*, vol. 3, p. 414.

² *Al-Kāfi*, vol. 3, p. 495; *Al-Irshād*, p. 362; *At-Tahdhīb*, vol. 3, p. 252; Shaykh a□-□ūsī, *Ghaybah*, p. 282; *Wasā'il ash-Shī'ah*, vol. 3, p. 532; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 331; *Malādh al-Akhyār*, vol. 5, p. 475.

³ Rāwandī, *Qi□a□ al-Anbiyā'*, p. 80; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 225.

⁴ *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 385; Shaykh a□-□ūsī, *Ghaybah*, p. 275 with a slight difference.

⁵ *Raw□ah al-Wā'i□īn*, vol. 2, p. 337; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 452.

⁶ *Kāmil az-Ziyārāt*, p. 30; *Mustadrak al-Wasā'il*, vol. 3, p. 416.

⁷ Shaykh a□-□ūsī, *Ghaybah*, p. 273; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 330.

⁸ *Fa□īl al-Kūfah*, p. 25; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 609; *□ilyah al-Abrār*, vol. 2, p. 719; *A'yān ash-Shī'ah*, vol. 2, p. 51.

The Officials of Imām al-Mahdī's ('atfs) Government

It would be only natural for the administrative workers and officials in the government which Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs) will lead to be the leading figures and best of the *ummah*. As such, we can observe in the *ḥadīths* that the government of Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs) will be comprised of prophets and their successors, the most pious and righteous people of that time as well as of times past, and the towering personalities among the companions of the Prophet (ﷺ). Some of them are Ḥaḍrat 'Īsā ('a), the seven Companions of the Cave [*a□□āb al-kahf*], Yūsha' (Joshuah), the executor of will [*wa□iyy*] of Mūsā ('a), the believer in the family of Pharaoh, Salmān al-Fārsī, Abū ad-Dujānah al-An□ārī, Mālik al-Ashtar an-Nakha'ī, and the tribe of Hamdān.

Ḥaḍrat 'Īsā ('a) has been mentioned in the *ḥadīths* under various titles such as minister, successor, commander, and government official.

'Īsā ('a) will say to Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs): "Verily, I have been sent as a minister and not as chief [*amīr*] or ruler."¹

"Ḥaḍrat 'Īsā ('a) will be a minister of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs) as well as his doorkeeper and successor."²

"...Then 'Īsā will come down and he will be responsible in collecting the properties of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs). The Companions of the Cave will also be behind him."³

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "When Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im of the Progeny of Muḥammad ('a) rises up, he will revive eighteen persons behind the *Ka'bah*; they include the five persons from the community [*qawm*] of Mūsā ('a) who will judge correctly and behave justly; the seven Companions of the Cave; Yūsha' the *wa□iyy* of Mūsā; the believer in the family of Pharaoh; Salmān al-Fārsī; Abū Dujānah al-An□ārī; and Malik al-Ashtar."⁴

In a *ḥadīth* their number has been mentioned as twenty seven, mentioning fourteen persons from the community of Mūsā,⁵ while another *ḥadīth* mentions the name of Miqdād.⁶

¹ Ibn □āwūs, *Malā□im*, p. 83; Ibn □ammād, *Fitan*, p. 160.

² *Ghāyah al-Marām*, p. 697; □ilyah al-Abrār, vol. 2, p. 620.

³ *Ibid.*

⁴ 'Ayyāshī, *Tafsīr 'Ayyāshī*, vol. 2, p. 32; *Dalā'il al-Imāmah*, p. 274; *Majma' al-Bayān*, vol. 2, p. 489; *Al-Irshād*, p. 365; *Kashf al-Ghumah*, vol. 3, p. 256; *Raw□ah al-Wā'i□in*, vol. 2, p. 266; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 550; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 346.

⁵ *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 573.

⁶ Miqdād is a companion of the Prophet (ﷺ) and Imām 'Alī ('a). Regarding his dignified station, it is enough to say that based on one *ḥadīth*, "For the sake of seven persons—one of whom is Miqdād—God gives you provisions and sustenance, helps you, and sends you rain."

On the issue of caliphate [*khilāfah*] and Imamate [*imāmah*], he insisted on the rightfulness of the Commander of the Faithful ('a) and exerted much effort in this regard.

Ḥaḍrat 'Alī ('a) said: "...There will be soldiers in front of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) and his minister will be from among the tribe of Hamdān¹."

Regarding him, the Prophet (ﷺ) said: "God ordered me to love four persons: 'Alī ('a), Miqdād, Abū Dharr, and Salmān." In another *ḥadīth*, it is stated: "Heaven is eager to meet Miqdād." See *Mu'jam Rijāl al-Ḥadīth*, vol. 8, p. 314.

He migrated twice and participated in various battles. During the Battle of Badr, he said to the Prophet (ﷺ): "We will not say to you what the Children of Israel said to Ḥaḍrat Mūsā ('a). We shall say instead that we are beside you and fight against the enemy at your side." During the rule of Imām 'Alī ('a), Miqdād was among the *Shurḥ al-Khamīs*.

Miqdād passed away at the age of seventy in a land called Jarf, three miles away from Medina. The people there ritually washed his corpse and brought it to Baqī' where they buried him. See *Tanqīḥ al-Maqāl*, vol. 2, p. 245; *Asad al-Ghābah*, vol. 4, p. 409.

¹ Hamdān is a large tribe in Yemen. After the Battle of Tabūk, they sent a delegation to the Prophet (ﷺ) and in return, in 9 AH the Prophet (ﷺ) sent the Commander of the Faithful ('a) to Yemen to invite them to Islam. After reading the message of the Prophet (ﷺ), all of them embraced Islam. Imām 'Alī ('a) wrote a letter to the Prophet (ﷺ) about the news of the tribe of Hamdān's acceptance of Islam in which he sent salutations to Hamdān three times. Upon the receipt of the letter, the Prophet (ﷺ) performed prostration of gratitude [*sujūd shukr*] as a token of gratitude for the received news. See *Kāmil Ibn Athīr*, vol. 1, pp. 26, 29-30. In praise of them, Imām 'Alī ('a) has thus recited: "The Hamdānīs are the possessors of the religion and of good manners. They are adorned by their religion, their bravery, and their wrath against enemies at the time of confrontation. If I were the doorkeeper of heaven, I would tell the Hamdānīs: 'Enter therein in tranquility!'" See *Aqd al-Farīd*, vol. 4, p. 339; *Wāqī'ah ḥifẓ*, p. 274.

When Imām 'Alī ('a) mobilized people to wage war against Mu'āwiyah, someone protested against him. And since it was probable for him to create disorder while the army was being organized, those witnessing the event put an end to his life by striking him with punches and kicks, and the Imām ('a) paid his blood money. See *Ibid.*, pp. 94-95.

In reply to the threat of Mu'āwiyah, Imām 'Alī ('a) praised the might and bravery of the tribe of Hamdān, saying: "When I found death as a "red death" (honorable death), then I mobilized the tribe of Hamdān and they also mobilized the tribe of Ḥimyar. See *Wāqī'ah ḥifẓ*, p. 43.

The tribe of Hamdān was one of the three tribes having the largest number of combatants in the army of Ḥaḍrat 'Alī ('a). See *Ibid.*, p. 290.

In one of the encounters in Ḥifẓ, members of this tribe, being on the right flank, had shown their unique firmness especially eight hundred from among their youth who remained steadfast till their last breath. One hundred and eighty of them were martyred and wounded; eleven among those who attained martyrdom were commanders. As the banner in the hands of one of them would fall on the ground, another would pick it up, and in the encounter with their opponents the Azud and Bujaylah killed three thousand of them.

In one of the nights during the Battle of Ḥifẓ, when Mu'āwiyah along with his four thousand men intended to launch a night assault on the army of Imām 'Alī ('a), the tribe of Hamdān was informed of it, and they were on guard, ready for battle till morning. See *Ibid.*, pp. 252, 329-330.

One day, Mu'āwiyah along with his army engaged in a battle with this tribe but having suffered considerable losses he also left the battlefield and fled. Mu'āwiyah dispatched the tribe of 'Ak to fight them. The Hamdānīs attacked them in such a manner that Mu'āwiyah found no other alternative but to give the order for their withdrawal. Imām 'Alī ('a) asked the

In this regard, it is also stated: "Men of God will accompany the Mahdī ('atfs)—men who will respond to his call and support him. They will be his ministers and statesmen who will shoulder the heavy responsibilities of the government."²

'Abdullāh ibn 'Abbās said: "The Companions of the Cave will be supporters of the Mahdī."³

°alabī said: "All the Companions of the Cave are of the Arab race and they speak in no language other than Arabic. They will be among the ministers of the Mahdī."⁴

From the aforementioned *ḥadīths* and statements, we can conclude that the heavy burden of governing and administering the vast Islamic territories cannot be shouldered by just anybody; instead, individuals, who have been tested on many occasions and have proven their merit in various trials, must accept this responsibility. Therefore, we can see that the head of the ministers in the government of al-Mahdī ('atfs) is Ḥaḍrat 'Īsā ('a) who is one of the leading prophets [*ūlū'l- 'a□m*]. Similarly, among the outstanding officials of his government will be Salmān al-Fārsī, Miqdād, Abū Dujānah, and Malik al-Ashtar, who had shown their merit in handling affairs during both the time of the Prophet (□) and that of the Commander of the Faithful ('a), as well as the tribe of Hamdān. All of them have embellished the pages of the early history of Islam and during the rule of 'Alī ibn Abī □ālib ('a).

The Period of Rule

Regarding the period of rule of al-Mahdī ('atfs), there are various *ḥadīths* existing in both Sunnī and Shī'ah sources. Some *ḥadīths* limit the period of Imām al-Mahdī's ('atfs) rule to seven years. Others mention eight, nine, ten, or twenty years while there are even *ḥadīths* that say one thousand years. What is certain is that the government of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will not be less than seven years, and this period has been emphasized in some *ḥadīths* reported from the Imāms ('a).

Hamdānīs to subdue the soldiers from the land of □ama□. The Hamdānīs stormed and defeated them after an epic engagement with them thus forcing them to withdraw near the station and camp of Mu'āwiyah.

The members of the tribe of Hamdān were always obedient to Imām 'Alī ('a). When there was a difference on opinion within the camp of the Imām on the tying of copies of the Qur'an on lances, the commander of this tribe said to the Imām: "We do not have any protest and we will execute any order you will give." See *Ibid.*, pp. 434, 436-437, 520.

¹ *'Iqd ad-Durar*, p. 97.

² *Nūr al-Ab□ār*, p. 187; *Wāḥī*, vol. 2, p. 114; as quoted from *Futu□āt al-Makkiyyah*.

³ *Ad-Durr al-Manthūr*, vol. 4, p. 215; Muttaqī Hindī, *Burhān*, p. 150; *Al- 'A□r al-Wardī*, p. 70.

⁴ *Sīrah al-□alabiyyah*, vol. 1, p. 22; *Muntakhab al-Athar*, p. 485.

Perhaps it can be said that the period of rule would be seven years, but the length of a year at that time will be different from ours, as indicated in some *ḥadīths* such as the following:

“His rule will be seven years and each year is equivalent to ten of your years. Therefore, the years of his rule will be equivalent to your seventy years.”¹

Imām ‘Alī (‘a) said: “Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘atfs) will rule for seven years; every year in that time will be equal to ten years of yours.”²

The Holy Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: “The Mahdī (‘atfs) is from us... and for seven years he will take charge of affairs.”³

The Prophet (ﷺ) also said: “He will rule for seven years over this *ummah*.”⁴

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) also said elsewhere: “The tenure of rule of al-Mahdī (ﷺ) will be seven years at the shortest or it will last for eight or nine years at the longest.”⁵ It has also been reported: “Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘atfs) will rule in this world for nine years.”⁶

Jābir ibn ‘Abdullāh al-Anṣārī asked Imām al-Bāqir (‘a): “How many years will the Imām of the Time (‘atfs) live?” The Imām (‘a) replied: “From the day of the uprising till his demise will be nineteen years long.”⁷

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: “Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘atfs) will rule for twenty years. He will take out the treasures from the ground; he will conquer the lands of polytheism.”⁸

He (ﷺ) also said: “The Mahdī (‘atfs) is from my progeny and he will rule for twenty years.”¹

¹ Shaykh al-Mufīd, *Al-Irshād*, p. 363; Shaykh aḥ-ḥusaynī, *Ghaybah*, p. 283; *Rawḥ al-Wā‘i‘īn*, vol. 2, p. 264; *Irā‘ al-Musta‘īm*, vol. 2, p. 251; *Al-Fuṣūl al-Muhimmah*, p. 302; *Al-Ayqā‘*, p. 249; *Biṣṣār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 291; *Nūr ath-Thaqalayn*, vol. 4, p. 101.

² *Iqd ad-Durar*, pp. 224, 238; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 624.

³ *Al-Fuṣūl al-Muhimmah*, p. 302; Ibn Baṣṣār, *Umdah*, p. 435; *Dalā‘il al-Imāmah*, p. 258; *Ḥanafi*, *Burhān*, p. 99; *Majma‘ az-Zawā‘id*, vol. 7, p. 314; *Farā‘id as-Sam‘ayn*, vol. 2, p. 330; *Iqd ad-Durar*, pp. 20, 236; *Shāfi‘ī*, *Bayān*, p. 50; *Ḥākim*, *Mustadrak*, vol. 4, p. 557; *Kanz al-Ummāl*, vol. 14, p. 264; *Kashf al-Ghumamah*, vol. 3, p. 262; *Yanābī‘ al-Mawaddah*, p. 431; *Ghāyah al-Marām*, p. 698; *Biṣṣār al-Anwār*, vol. 51, p. 82.

⁴ *Iqd ad-Durar*, p. 20; *Biṣṣār al-Anwār*, vol. 51, p. 82.

⁵ Ibn Ḥawṣ, *Malā‘im*, p. 140; *Kashf al-Astār*, vol. 4, p. 112; *Majma‘ az-Zawā‘id*, vol. 7, p. 314.

⁶ Ibn Ḥawṣ, *Ḥarā‘if*, p. 177.

⁷ ‘Ayyāshī, *Tafsīr ‘Ayyāshī*, vol. 2, p. 326; Nu‘mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 331; *Ikhtilāf*, p. 257; *Biṣṣār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 298.

⁸ *Firdaws al-Akḥbār*, vol. 4, p. 221; *Al-‘Ilal al-Mutanāhiyyah*, vol. 2, p. 858; *Dalā‘il al-Imāmah*, vol. 233; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 593; *Biṣṣār al-Anwār*, vol. 51, p. 91. See *Ḥabībī*, *Mu‘jam*, vol. 8, p. 120; *Asad al-Ghābah*, vol. 4, p. 353; *Farā‘id as-Sam‘ayn*, vol. 2, p. 314; *Majma‘ az-Zawā‘id*, vol. 7, p. 318; *Lisān al-Mīzān*, vol. 4, p. 383.

It has also been reported: "The Imām ('atfs) will rule for ten years."²

In answer to the question on how many years the Mahdī ('atfs) will rule, Ḥaḍrat 'Alī ('a) said: "He will rule over the people for thirty or forty years."³

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will be from my progeny and his age will be equal to that of Ibrāhīm Khalīl ar-Ra□mān (Prophet Abraham) ('a). He will appear at the age of eighty years and rule for forty years."⁴

The same Imām ('a) also said: "The tenure of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im's ('atfs) rule will be nineteen years and some months."⁵

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs) will rule for three hundred and nine years just as the Companions of the Cave stayed in the cave for the same period."⁶

The late Majlisī said: "The *ḥadīths* regarding the Imām's ('atfs) period of rule must be explained under the following probabilities: Some *ḥadīths* refer to the entire period of rule while some others point to the period of stabilization and establishment. Some are based on the years and days that we are acquainted with while others are based on the years and days in the time of the Imām ('atfs) which are long. God knows best the truth of the matter."⁷

After mentioning the *ḥadīths*, the late Āyatullāh □abasī, my honorable father, gives preference to the *ḥadīth* that propounds seven years, but he says: "It means that by the power of God, every year at that time will be equal to ten of our years."⁸

¹ *Kashf al-Ghummah*, vol. 3, p. 271; Ibn Ba□rīq, 'Umdah, p. 439; Bi□ār al-Anwār, vol. 51, p. 1; Ibn □āwūs, Malā□im, p. 142; *Firdaws al-Akḥbār*, vol. 4, p. 6; *Dalā'il al-Imāmah*, p. 233; 'Aqd ad-Durar, p. 239; *Yanābī' al-Mawaddah*, p. 432.

² *Nūr al-Ab□ār*, p. 170; *Ash-Shī'ah wa'r-Raj'ah*, vol. 1, p. 225. See *Fa□l al-Kūfah*, p. 25; *A'yān ash-Shī'ah*, vol. 2, p. 51; *Yanābī' al-Mawaddah*, p. 492.

³ Ibn □ammād, *Fitan*, p. 104; *Kanz al-'Ummāl*, vol. 14, p. 591.

⁴ *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 574.

⁵ Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 331; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 298; vol. 53, p. 3.

⁶ Shaykh a□-□ūsī, *Ghaybah*, p. 283; *Bi□ar al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 390; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 584.

⁷ *Bi□ar al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 280.

⁸ *Ash-Shī'ah wa'r-Raj'ah*, vol. 1, p. 225.

Chapter 2

The Growth of Knowledge and the Diffusion of Islamic Culture

A government whose leader is a person like al-Mahdī (‘*atfs*) for whom the doors of knowledge have been opened—doors of knowledge which have opened thirteen times compared to that of the prophets and the *awliyā*’ [saints]—will naturally make tremendous progress in knowledge and will bring about remarkable transformations in the world of culture, science and technology.

In other words, the understanding of the science and knowledge that the Imām of the Age (‘*atfs*) will bring about for the people cannot be compared with the progress that mankind has so far attained. The people in turn will also show much more enthusiasm in the acquisition of knowledge to the extent that even very young women will become so well-versed in the Book of God and religious principles that they could easily deduce the decrees of God from the Holy Qur’an.

In the fields of technology and industry, there will also be astounding advancements. Although the *ḥadīths* have not mentioned the details of this advancement, the number of *ḥadīths* that have indicated something in this regard give an example of the impressive transformation in this context. For example, there are *ḥadīths* that state: A person in the east would be able to see his brother in the west; during his speech, the Imām would be seen by the people all over the world; the supporters of the Imām will talk to one another across vast distances and one could hear the voice of the other; walking sticks and shoelaces will talk to people; house utensils will give reports to man; man will ride on the clouds in traveling, flying from one direction to

another. And there are still more similar *ḥadīths*. Although some of them perhaps refer to miracles, one can realize the abovementioned transformation by paying close attention to all the pertinent *ḥadīths*.

The *ḥadīths* show the world during the period of the Imām of the Age ('atfs) as a civilized world at the apex of power and scientific advancement. In general, the state of technology at that time will be far more advanced than that of the present day just as today's technology is astoundingly different from that of past centuries.

The most fundamental distinction between the advancement at the time of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) with that of the present is that in our time the advancement of science and technology has been leading to the degeneration of the culture and morality of human society and the more human beings make advancements in science the farther they move from humanity and the more they head toward corruption, retrogression and annihilation. During the period of al-Mahdī ('a), however, the situation will be different. While mankind will be attaining the highest growth in science and technology, to the same extent it will also be achieving the loftiest moral goals and human perfection.

With the implementation of divine programs in the government of Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs), mankind will be so cultivated in personality that it would seem as if they were different from those human beings who had lived in the past. Just yesterday, they used to shed the blood of the nearest kith and kin for the sake of a single dirham or dinar, but now during the government of the Imām ('atfs), money and wealth will become so insignificant and trivial for them that for them asking for such will be regarded as a sign of meanness and vileness of nature.

If just yesterday jealousy, rancor and enmity had been prevalent among them, during the government of Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs) hearts will be as close together as if they were one soul in different bodies. The hearts of people who were irresolute, sluggish and weak will become stronger and firmer than iron.

Yes, the government of al-Mahdī ('atfs) will lead to the growth and perfection of the intellect and morality, and that time will be the day when talents will be perfected. What used to happen just yesterday was the result of narrow-mindedness, but in the divine system of al-Mahdī ('a) humanity will reach the pinnacle of maturity and such qualities as morality, thinking and will will reach their heights. This promise is the very great promise that will be realized in the government of justice of al-Mahdī ('atfs). It is a gift that no government at no point in time has been able to present to human society.

Progress in Science and Technology

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "Knowledge and learning are twenty seven letters, and everything that the prophets have brought is only two letters; so, now, the people are unaware [of these letters] except [juz'an] these two. When our Qā'im rises up, he will bring out the other twenty five letters, spreading and extending them among the people. He will also attach the two letters and a total of twenty seven letters will be distributed among the people."¹

As reported by Rāwandī in *Kharā'ij*, the word "juz'an" is the substitute of "□irfan" [merely].

It can be deduced from this *ḥadīth* that although mankind progresses in terms of knowledge and learning, in the period of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) it will suddenly attain growth and expansion thirteen times more. When we think about it we will realize how stupendous and stunning this progress of knowledge during the period of the Imām ('atfs) will be.

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "There is much awareness of the Book of God, the Honorable and Glorious, and the *Sunnah* of the Noble Prophet (□) in the heart of our Mahdī such that a plant will grow with the best quality. Anyone of you who remains alive during his advent and visits him, at the moment of meeting him should say: 'May peace be upon you, O progeny of mercy and prophethood and the repository of knowledge and the station of messengership!'"²

The same Imām ('a) also said: "This affair (the global governance of Islam) will be at the hand of him whose age (at the age of Imamate) is the youngest among us and his memory is the most pleasing among us. God will bestow knowledge and learning on him and will never leave him to himself."³

The same Imām ('a) also said elsewhere: "The Imām who possesses the Qur'an, knowledge and weapon is from us."⁴

This *ḥadīth* gives the secret behind the progress and perfection of humanity; the leader who can lead society toward felicity and perfection is he who possesses three things: (1) the divine law that guides mankind toward perfection, (2) knowledge that will be utilized for the comfort of human life, and (3) power and a weapon that will remove the corrupt and hindrances in

¹ *Kharā'ij*, vol. 2, p. 841; *Mukhta□ar Ba□ā'ir ad-Darajāt*, p. 117; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 326.

² *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 653; *Al-'Adad al-Qawiyyah*, p. 65; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 491; *□ilyah al-Abrār*, vol. 3, p. 639; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 51, p. 36; vol. 52, p. 317.

³ *'Iqd ad-Durar*, p. 42.

⁴ *Mathālib an-Nawā□ib*, vol. 1, p. 222.

the way of human perfection. Ḥaḍrat Walī al-'Aīr ('atfs) is equipped with these things; therefore, he will rule over the world and apart from leading mankind toward progress in science and technology, he will also draw them toward moral and human perfection.

At this juncture, we shall mention some *ḥadīths* that illustrate the progress and advancement in science and technology during the period of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs):

Regarding the means of communication during the period of the Imām of the Age ('atfs), Imām aī-ādiq ('a) said: "During the period of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs) the believer in the east would be able to see his brother in the west. Similarly, the believer in the west would be able to see his brother in the east."¹

This *ḥadīth* can be better understood by taking into account the invention of video telephones. It is not clear, however, if this means of communication will be introduced in the entire world so that the people could use it conveniently. It is also possible that a more advanced system will replace it, or there is another means which is beyond all these mentioned things.

The same Imām ('a) also said in another *ḥadīth*: "When our Qā'im rises up, God will enhance the audio-visual power of our Shī'ah in such a manner that the Imām will talk to his Shī'ah from a distance of one *barīd* (24 kilometers) while they would be able to hear his voice and see him; this will happen while the Imām remains where he is."²

Mufaīal ibn 'Umar asked Imām aī-ādiq ('a): "In which site and place will Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī appear?"

The Imām ('a) replied: "During his advent there would be no witness that could see the Imām when others could not see him (that is, during his advent everybody would be able to see him), and if anyone would claim other than this fact, you have to deny him."³

Imām aī-ādiq ('a) said: "It is as if I can see Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs) wearing the armor of the Prophet (ﷺ)... And no inhabitant of any land could remain without having seen him in a manner that it would seem as if he was in their own country."⁴

¹ *Biāār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 391; *āqq al-Yaqīn*, vol. 1, p. 229; *Bishārah al-Islām*, p. 341.

² *Al-Kāfī*, vol. 8, p. 240; *Kharā'ij*, vol. 2, p. 840; *Mukhtāar al-Baā'ir*, p. 117; *īrā al-Mustaqīm*, vol. 2, p. 262; *Muntakhab al-Anwār al-Muī'ah*, p. 200; *Biāār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 336.

³ *Biāār al-Anwār*, vol. 53, p. 6.

⁴ *Kāmil az-Ziyārāt*, p. 119; *Nu'mānī*, *Ghaybah*, p. 309; *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 671; *Biāār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 325; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 493; *Nūr ath-Thaqalayn*, vol. 1, p. 387; *Mustadrak al-Wasā'il*, vol. 10, p. 245; *Jāmi' Aādīth ash-Shī'ah*, vol. 12, p. 370.

It can be understood from this *ḥadīth* that during the time of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs), people would be able to see him by means other than what exists today, for it has thus been stated in the *ḥadīth* that "The people would be able to see him in a manner that it would seem as if he was among them in their own country." There are two probabilities in this regard: (1) a system of broadcasting three dimensional images will be spread all over the world at that time, and (2) a more advanced system which will replace the existing one will be utilized in seeing him, or the *ḥadīth* points to a miracle to be preformed by the Imām ('atfs).

Regarding the means of transportation at that time, the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: "After you, communities [*aqwām*] shall come, under whose feet the earth can be traversed and for whom the doors of the world will be opened... The earth can be traversed in less than the blink of an eye so much so that if any of them wants to traverse the world from east to west in an hour, they would be able to do this."¹

Many *ḥadīths* have been narrated concerning the advance of information technology during the advent of the Imām of the Time ('atfs) as well as in his government. It would be sufficient to mention two of them:

The Noble Messenger (ﷺ) said: "By Him in Whose hand is my soul! The Day of Resurrection shall not come to pass unless one's shoe, walking stick or staff would report to him what his family had done after going out of his home."²

Concerning the types of information during the period of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs), Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "He acquired the name "Mahdī" [the guided one] because he will be guided regarding hidden affairs so much so that he would dispatch men to execute a person whom the people do not know was a criminal.

The degree of the Imām's awareness of the people would be such that if a person would speak inside his house he would be afraid lest the walls of his house gave report and bore witness."³

This *ḥadīth* probably indicates the amazing advancement of the system of information during the period of the Imām of the Time. Of course, any government that will rule over the entire world will need a complex system and structure of information. Similarly, it is also possible that it refers to the apparent purport of the *ḥadīth*, i.e. the wall itself would give a report.

¹ *Firdaws al-Akḥbār*, vol. 2, p. 449; *Iḥqāq al-ʿAqq*, vol. 13, p. 351.

² Aḥmad ibn Ḥanbal, *Musnad Ibn Ḥanbal*, vol. 3, p. 89; *Firdaws al-Akḥbār*, vol. 5, p. 98; *Jāmi' al-Uṣūl*, vol. 11, p. 81.

³ Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 319; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 365.

The Diffusion of Islamic Culture

In the government of al-Mahdī ('atfs) people will enter the fold of Islam in an unprecedented manner, and the period of the strangulation and suppression of religious people and the banning of Islamic symbols will come to an end. The call of Islam will reverberate everywhere manifesting the impact of religion. In the words of some *ḥadīths*, Islam will penetrate every house, slum and tent just as heat and cold would penetrate therein. As the effect of heat and cold is inevitable, not subject to our choice and will, in the same manner, Islam at that time will penetrate all places, cities, villages, fields, and deserts notwithstanding the inner opposition of some. It will influence and transform them.

In such a state of affairs, people's reception and acceptance of the manifestations of religion and principles will naturally be unparalleled. The people's reception of Qur'anic education, congregational prayers and Friday prayers will be eye-catching, and the present mosques and those to be built in the future would not be able to meet their needs. That which has been stated in a *ḥadīth* that in one mosque congregational prayers will be performed twelve times is itself a vivid proof of the degree of the people's acceptance of religious manifestations. Taking into account the fact that during the advent of Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs) the population of the world will decrease because of a series of killing and wars, this point is noteworthy.

Under such circumstances, the role of offices or ministries in charge of religious and cultural affairs will be very wide. The mosques will be built in proportion to population size. In some places, it will even be necessary to build mosques having five hundred doors. It is also stated in a *ḥadīth* that the smallest mosque at that time will be the Kūfah Mosque, which at the present is one of the largest mosques in the world.

Now we shall present a number of *ḥadīths* on Imām al-Mahdī's government, the expansion of teaching in Qur'anic and Islamic sciences, the mushrooming of mosques, the enhancement of spirituality, and the elevation of morality.

1. Teaching of the Qur'an and Islamic Studies

The Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: "It is as if I can see my Shī'ah gathering in the Kūfah Mosque and by erecting tents they are teaching the people in the same manner that the Qur'an had been revealed."¹

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "It is as if I can see the Shī'ah of 'Alī ('a) having copies of the Qur'an in their hands and teaching the people."¹

¹ Nu'mānī, *Ḡhaybah*, p. 318; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 364.

Aḥḥabagh ibn Nabātah said: "I heard 'Alī ('a) saying, 'It is as if I can see the 'ajam (non-Arab people) spreading their tents in the Kūfah Mosque and teaching Qur'an to the people just as it had been revealed'."²

This *ḥadīth* clarifies the identity of the teachers of the Qur'an as 'ajam and according to linguists³ the word 'ajam here refers to the Persians and Iranians.

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "During the period of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('a) wisdom and understanding will be given to you such that a woman in her house will pass judgment based on the Book of Allah and the *Sunnah* of the Prophet (ﷺ)."⁴

2. The Building of Mosques

ʿabbah 'Aranī said: "The Commander of the Faithful ('a) proceeded toward the land of ʿIrāh⁵ and said: '...Certainly, in the city of ʿIrāh a mosque having five hundred doors will be built and in which twelve just prayer leaders will conduct congregational prayers.' I asked: 'O Commander of the Faithful! As you have described, can the Kūfah Mosque accommodate the people then?' He answered: 'Four mosques will be built there, and the (present) Kūfah Mosque will be the smallest among them. This mosque (in ʿIrāh with five hundred doors) and two other mosques at the two ends of the city of Kūfah will be built,' and then the Imām ('a) pointed to the direction of Baḥrīyīn and Gharbiyīn rivers."⁶

The same Imām ('a) also said: "Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will continue his movement... until such time that so many mosques will be built in Constantinople and its surroundings."⁷

Mufaḥḥal ibn 'Umar said: "Ḥaḍrat aḥ-ḥādiq ('a) said: 'When Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs) rises up, he will build a mosque with one thousand doors outside the city of Kūfah (ḥahr al-Kūfah)."¹

¹ *Ibid.*

² *Al-Irshād*, p. 365; *Kashf al-Ghummah*, vol. 3, p. 265; *Nūr ath-Thaqalayn*, vol. 5, p. 27; *Rawḥ al-Wā'iḥ*, vol. 2, p. 265.

³ *Majma' al-Baḥrayn*, vol. 6, p. 111.

⁴ *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 352.

⁵ ʿIrāh was a city 6 kilometers away from Kūfah where Lakhmīd kings who were protégés of Iran ruled during the Sassanid period. In 602 CE Khosroe Pervéz overthrew this dynasty and determined the ruler there. After the Muslims' conquest of it, ʿIrāh declined due to the rise of Kūfah, and prior to the tenth century CE/fourth century AH, it was totally ruined. See *Farhang-e Fārsī-ye Mu'īn*, vol. 5, p. 470.

⁶ *At-Tahdhīb*, vol. 3, p. 253; *Al-Kāfī*, vol. 4, p. 427; *Man lā Yaḥḥuh al-Faqīh*, vol. 2, p. 525; *Wasā'il ash-Shī'ah*, vol. 9, p. 412; *Mir'ātu'l-'Uqūl*, vol. 18, p. 58; *Malādh al-Akhyār*, vol. 5, p. 478; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 375.

⁷ *Iḥqāq al-'aqq*, vol. 13, p. 312.

Maybe what is meant by □*ahr al-Kūfah* mentioned in the *ḥadīth* is the holy city of Najaf since some scholars have described Najaf as □*ahr al-Kūfah*.

The Enhancement of Spirituality and Morality

The Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: "The people during the time of al-Mahdī ('atfs) will be preoccupied with worship and religion, performing the prayers in congregation."²

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "The houses in Kūfah will be connected to the river of Karbalā' and 'Irah so much so that a person who wants to join the Friday congregational prayer will ride on a fast animal and yet cannot reach the prayers on time."³

Perhaps it alludes to the increase in population and crowdedness, which will hinder his timely participation and presence in the Friday congregational prayers. That all the prayer attendees will gather in one place and that the Friday congregational prayers will not be performed more than once is perhaps due to the unification of these three cities; for, from the viewpoint of religious law, the performance of more than one Friday congregational prayer is not permissible.

Mufa□□al ibn 'Umar reports that Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "When our Qā'im rises up, one might be ignorant, cowardly and jealous before daybreak, and by the daytime he will be the wisest among the people, the bravest among them, and the most compassionate. Then the Imām's victory will be near at hand."⁴

Ḥaḍrat 'Alī ('a) said: "When our Qā'im rises up... The rancor of the servants (of God) in relation to one another will be removed from their hearts."⁵

The Holy Prophet of Islam (□) also said in this regard: "...At that time spite and enmity will be removed from the hearts."⁶

Regarding the extinction of moral corruption and deviation, Imām Ḥasan al-Mujtabā ('a) said: "At the end of time, God will send a man through whom none of the corrupt and deviant will remain without being reformed."¹

¹ *Al-Irshād*, p. 362; Shaykh a□-□ūsī, *Ghaybah*, p. 295; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 537; *Wāfī*, vol. 2, p. 112; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, pp. 330, 337.

² *Iqd ad-Durar*, p. 159.

³ Shaykh a□-□ūsī, *Ghaybah*, p. 295; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 537; *Wāfī*, vol. 2, p. 112; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, pp. 330, 337.

⁴ *Wāfī*, vol. 2, p. 113, as quoted from *Futu□āt al-Makkiyyah*.

⁵ *Khi□āl*, vol. 2, p. 254, *ḥadīth* 1051.

⁶ 'Abdur-Razzāq, *Mu□annif*, vol. 11, p. 402; Ibn □ammād, *Fitan*, p. 162; Ibn □ammād, *Malā□im*, p. 152.

One of the features of the period of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘atfs) is that greed and covetousness will be wiped away and the spirit of freedom from want will be instilled in men.

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: “At the time when Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘atfs) rises up, God will put contentment and freedom from want into the hearts of His servants so much so that the Imām will announce that anybody who was in need of wealth and property to come forward but nobody will take the first step forward.”²

What is interesting to note is that in the *ḥadīth* the word ‘ibād [servants] has been used. It implies that this spiritual transformation will not be confined to a particular group. In fact, this inner change will happen to all human beings.

The Prophet also (ﷺ) said: “I give you the glad tidings of the Mahdī (‘atfs) who shall be sent to the people while commotion and discord are prevalent among them. Then, he will fill the earth with justice and equity just as it had been full of tyranny and oppression; the inhabitants of the heavens and the earth will be pleased with him.

“God will make the hearts of the *ummah* of Muḥammad (ﷺ) overflowing with freedom from want so much so that a caller will announce, ‘Anybody who is in need of wealth and property should step forward (so as to satisfy his need),’ but nobody would come forward except one person. Then, Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘atfs) will say to him: ‘Go to the treasurer and tell him that Mahdī has ordered him to give you wealth and property.’ The treasurer will say: ‘You collect the money with your two hands,’ and he will do so but while still there he will regret what he had done and say to himself: ‘What happened for me to become the most covetous of the *ummah* of the Prophet (ﷺ)?! Did the One who made them contented and free from want fail to make me free from want?’ Then he will return to give back the money. But the treasurer will not accept it, saying: ‘We do not take back anything we have given!’”³

In the *ḥadīth* the phrase, “يَمْلَأُ قُلُوبَ أُمَّةٍ مُحَمَّدٍ” has been used, which needs close attention; for, riches and freedom from want is not the point. Instead, it is magnanimity and inner freedom from want. It is possible for a man to be poor but has inner freedom from want. In this *ḥadīth* the phrase “يَمْلَأُ قُلُوبَ” has

¹ *Manan ar-Raḥmān*, vol. 2, p. 42; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 524, as reported from the Commander of the Faithful (‘a).

² Ibn Ḥawās, *Malāḥim*, p. 71; *Iḥqāq al-ḥaqiqah*, vol. 13, p. 186; *Ash-Shī‘ah wa’r-Raj‘ah*, vol. 1, p. 27.

³ Aḥmad ibn Ḥanbal, *Musnad Ibn Ḥanbal*, vol. 3, pp. 37, 52; *Jāmi‘ Aḥādīth ash-Shī‘ah*, vol. 1, p. 34; *Iḥqāq al-ḥaqiqah*, vol. 13, p. 146.

been used, which implies that their hearts are full of the sense of freedom from want and apart from that, their financial status is also good.

There are some *ḥadīths* regarding the people's intellectual growth, moral perfection and strength of faith during the period of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs). It will suffice to mention some of them:

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "When our Qā'im rises up, he will put his hand on the heads of the servants of God and their intellects will be gathered (i.e., he will give them concentration and intellectual growth by the will of God) and he will perfect their morality."¹ *Biḍā' al-Anwār* mentions the phrase, "أحلامهم" which means, "their wishes".²

Since he will fully implement Islamic commands, the Imām of the Time ('atfs) will bring about the intellectual growth of the people and materialize the objective of the Noble Prophet (ﷺ) when he said: "I was sent to perfect the morality of mankind."

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said to Ḥaḍrat Fāṭimah ('a), God will send a man from the progeny of these two (Ḥasan and Ḥusayn) who will conquer the strongholds of misguidance and subdue the locked and blackened hearts."³

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said that the Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: "A man from my progeny will appear... And he will put his hand on the heads of the servants of God. Then, no believer will remain unless his heart would become more formidable than big pieces of iron and anvil, and he would acquire the strength of forty men."⁴

The people during the time of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs) will believe in the deceitfulness of the world, knowing all the adversities and sins therein. In terms of faith and piety they will reach such a sublime state where the world can no longer beguile them.

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: "The earth will bring out its best substances such as gold and silver. Then the murderer will come forward and say, 'On account of them I committed murder,' and he who severs his relationship with his kith and kin will say, 'These were the reasons for the severance of relationships.' The stealer will say: 'It was because of them my hand was amputated.' Then, all of them will release the gold and they will not take anything from them."⁵

¹ *Al-Kāfī*, vol. 1, p. 25; *Kharā'ij*, vol. 2, p. 840; *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 675.


² *Biḍā' al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 336.

³ *Iqd ad-Durar*, p. 152; *Iḥḳāq al-ḥaqiq*, vol. 13, p. 116; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, pp. 448, 495.

⁴ *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 2, p. 653; *Dalā'il al-Imāmah*, p. 243; *Kāmil az-Ziyārāt*, p. 119.

⁵ Muslim, *Ṣaḥīḥ Muslim*, vol. 2, p. 701; Tirmidhī, *Ṣaḥīḥ Tirmidhī*, vol. 34, p. 493; Abū Ya'la, *Musnad*, vol. 11, p. 32; *Jāmi' al-Uṣūl*, vol. 11, p. 38.

Zayd az-Zurrād reports: "I said to Imām a□-□ādiq ('a): 'We are afraid that we would not be among the believers.' He asked: 'Why?' I replied: 'Because among us, we cannot find anyone who prefers his brother-in-faith to his dinar and dirham, and we can see that dirham and dinar for us are preferable to a brother-in-faith with whom we have been united by the *wilāyah* [guardianship] of, and love for, the Commander of the Faithful ('a).'

"The Imām ('a) said: 'That is not the case; you are believers, but your faith will not be perfected unless our Qā'im rises up. At that time, God will instill brotherhood and fortitude in you and then you will become perfect believers.'"¹ 

¹ *Al-U□ūl as-Sittah 'Ashar*, p. 6; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 67, p. 350.

Chapter 3

Security

While prior to the advent of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘*atfs*) states of insecurity will prevail over the world, one of the most fundamental tasks the Imām will undertake will be the restoration of security in society. With the implementation of appropriate and accurate programs in his government, within a short period of time security will be restored in society in all aspects, and the people will live in a safe environment experiencing security that mankind has not experienced so far.

Highways will become so safe that young women will travel from one place to another without an accompanying close relative, being safe from any molestation and bad intentions.

The people will live in total judicial security to the extent that no one ever has the least apprehension that his right would be trampled upon. Programs and laws will be made and implemented in such a way that the people will see themselves in total financial and social security. Stealing will be eliminated from society and financial security will prevail to the extent that if someone puts his hand in another’s pocket, there will be no probability of stealing involved, and he will honestly justify his action.

Insecurity will be eliminated from society, and security will prevail in such a manner that it will encompass even animals and living creatures; the sheep and wolf will live together while children will play with scorpions and biting creatures without being harmed.

Public Security

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said in this regard: "When ʾĪsā ibn Maryam (Jesus the son of Mary) ('a) comes down on earth from heaven and kills ad-Dajjāl... The shepherds will tell their sheep: 'Go to so-and-so place for grazing and return at so-and-so time!' A flock of sheep will go between two plantations, but they will never encroach on any of the plants or break any branch with their feet."¹

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: "...He will fill the earth with justice to such an extent that the people will return to their natural pure disposition [*fī ṭarāḥ*]. No blood will unjustly be shed and no sleeping person will be woken up (unjustly)."²

Regarding the prevalence of security during the time of al-Mahdī ('atfs), ʿAbdullāh ibn ʿAbbās said: "At that time, even the wolf will not harm the sheep; the lion will not devour the cow; the snake will not bite man; the mouse will neither gnaw leather bags nor take away anything from them."³

The Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: "When our Qā'im rises up, the sky will send down its rain while the beasts of prey will reconcile with the other quadrupeds and harm human beings no more so much so that a woman from Iraq will go to Shām without worrying about a fierce animal or being afraid of it."⁴

The same Imām ('a) also said: "The army of al-Mahdī ('atfs) will crush the army of the A'war ad-Dajjāl, cleansing the earth of its existence. Afterward, al-Mahdī will attain the leadership of the east and west, extending from Jābalqā to Jābarsā, including every country, and his government and rule will be stabilized."⁵

Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs) will behave justly with the people to such an extent that sheep will graze beside wolves while children will play with scorpions without being harmed by them. The wicked will be exterminated while the good will remain.

It has been stated in a *ḥadīth*: "The Day of Resurrection will not come to pass unless Ḥaḍrat ʾĪsā comes down... And wolves will be among flocks of

¹ Ibn ʾāwūs, *Malāʾim*, p. 97.

² Ibn ʾammād, *Fitan*, p. 99; Muttaqī Hindī, *Burhān*, p. 78; Ibn ʾāwūs, *Malāʾim*, p. 70. See *ʿIqd ad-Durar*, p. 156; *Al-Qawl al-Mukhtaṣar*, p. 19; Safārīnī, *Lawāʾih*, vol. 2, p. 12; Shaykh aḥ-ḥusaynī, *Ghaybah*, p. 274; *Kharāʾij*, vol. 3, p. 1149; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 514; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 290.

³ *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 1, p. 61; Bayhaqī, *Sunan Bayhaqī*, vol. 9, p. 180.

⁴ Shaykh aḥ-ḥadīq, *Al-Khiṭāb*, section 400, p. 255; *Al-Imāmah wa't-Tabʾirah*, p. 131; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 494; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 316.

⁵ *Yanābīʿ al-Mawaddah*, p. 422; *Al-Maʾajjah*, p. 425; *Iḥqāq al-ʾaqq*, vol. 13, p. 341.

sheep like shepherd dogs while lions will be among a herd of camels as if they were young small camels.”¹

°udhayfah reports that he heard the Prophet of God (□) saying: “During the advent of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im... Birds will lay eggs in their own nests and so will the fishes in the sea.”²

Perhaps, it means that they will feel a sense of security, and with nothing to worry about, they will lay eggs in their nests and habitats.

Abū Amāmah Bāhilī narrates: “One day the Messenger of Allah (□) delivered a sermon to us and at the end he (□) said: “The leader of the people at that time will be a righteous man... In that time, sheep and cows will not be attacked and animosities will be removed from hearts. Bridles will be removed from the mouths of animals. Children will put their hands in the mouths of fierce animals but the latter will not harm them. Young animals will be put in front of lions and other beasts of prey and yet they will not be harmed. Lions will be among a herd of camels like shepherd dogs while the wolves will be in the midst of shepherd dogs.”³

This *ḥadīth* perhaps alludes to the absolute security and emergence of the sense of confidence with one another.

The Prophet (□) also said: “When ‘Isā ibn Maryam comes down and kills ad-Dajjāl, snakes and scorpions will not be hiding and will harm no one.”⁴

These *ḥadīths* clearly illustrate the degree of security from harm of person and property during the period of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs). The shepherd will send his herd in the fields and not worry about its being stolen by man and attacked by beasts of prey. Man will travel or live among harmful animals and be safe from their harm; it would be as if the law on respecting the rights of others had been accepted among the fierce animals and insects, and they all submitted and abided by it. Maybe some degrees of that security could be due to the fact that during the period of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) divine favors will be abundant, and since all animals will also benefit from them and experience security, they, in turn, will not harm anyone.

Public security in the period of the Imām of the Time ('atfs) will be so pervasive that even if one was sleeping, he would be certain that nobody would wake and disturb him.

¹ ‘Abd ar-Razzāq, *Mu□annif*, vol. 11, p. 401. See Aḥmad ibn □anbal, *Musnad Ibn □anbal*, vol. 2, pp. 437-438; Ibn □ammād, *Fitan*, p. 162.

² *Ikhtī□ā□*, p. 208; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 304.

³ □āyālīsī, *Musnad*, vol. 10, p. 335; Ibn □āwūs, *Malā□im*, p. 152.

⁴ Ibn □āwūs, *Malā□im*, p. 97.

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said in this regard: "The *ummah* of al-Mahdī will seek refuge in him just as honeybees seek refuge in their queen. He will fill the earth with justice and equity just as it had been filled with tyranny and oppression to the extent that the people will return to their primordial nature [*fiḥrah*]. A sleeping person will not be awoken while no one's blood would ever be shed (unjustly)."¹

The Security of Highways

There are numerous *ḥadīths* concerning the security of highways during the rule of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs). It will be appropriate to mention some of them:

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: "The rule of al-Mahdī ('atfs) will be such that two women will keep on moving and traveling at night and yet they will not be afraid of injustice or oppression [against them]."²

The Prophet (ﷺ) also said: "Surely, God will draw this affair to a close (His religion) in such manner that a person on horseback would travel at night from Ḥan'ā to 'aḥramawt (both in Yemen) and not be afraid of any one except God."³

Perhaps, these two places had been cited due to their formidable deserts because of which they have been sometimes referred to as *Mafāzah* and mentioned to wish one success and safety in traversing the desert.

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "By God! The supporters of al-Mahdī will fight to the extent for God to be worshipped as the Only One Creator and for Him not to be associated with any partner, and to the point where a weak old woman would set off from one point of the world to another and nobody will offend her."⁴

A person asked Ḥaḍrat aḥ-ḥādiq ('a): "Why should we wish for the advent of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('a)? Do we have a sublime station during the period of his occultation [*ghaybah*]? The Imām ('a) replied: "Glory be to Allah! Don't you like justice to be spread in the world, security be

¹ *Al-ḥawāli Li'l-Fatāwā*, vol. 2, p. 77; Ibn ḥawūs, *Malāḥim*, p. 70 and p. 63 with a slight variation; *Iḥqāq al-ḥaq*, vol. 13, p. 154.

² *Al-Mu'jam al-Kabīr*, vol. 8, p. 179.

³ *Al-Mu'jam al-Kabīr*, vol. 4, p. 72; *Jāmi' al-Uḥūl*, vol. 7, p. 286; Bayhaqī, *Sunan Bayhaqī*, vol. 9, p. 180.

⁴ 'Ayyāshī, *Tafsīr 'Ayyāshī*, vol. 2, p. 62; Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 283; *Tafsīr Burhān*, vol. 1, p. 369; *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 345; *Yanābī' al-Mawaddah*, p. 423; *Ash-Shī'ah wa'r-Raj'ah*, vol. 1, p. 380.

established along the highways, and the oppressed be dealt with justly by passing a just verdict and be assisted?"¹

One of the companions of Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "One day, Abū °anīfah came to Imām a□-□ādiq ('a). The Imām ('a) asked him: 'Which place does this Qur'anic verse refer to:

﴿سِيرُوا فِيهَا لَيَالِيَ وَأَيَّامًا آمِنِينَ﴾

"Travel through them in safely, night and day"²?"

Abū °anīfah said: "I think it is between Mecca and Medina."

The Imām ('a) turned toward his companions and said: "Don't you know that people on this route are being attacked, their properties plundered, having no security, and are being killed?"

His companions replied: "Yes, it is so," and Abū °anīfah kept silent.

The Imām ('a) asked him again: "Which place in the world is referred to in this verse when God says:

﴿وَمَنْ دَخَلَهُ كَانَ آمِنًا﴾

"And whoever enters shall be secure."³?"

Abū °anīfah said: "It is the *Ka'bah*."

The Imām ('a) said: "Don't you know that °ajjāj ibn Yūsuf ath-Thaqafī⁴ attacked the *Ka'bah* with catapults in order to suppress Ibn Zubayr and killed him. Was he then in a secure place?"

Abū °anīfah kept silent and did not say anything.

As he left the assembly, Abūbākr °a□ramī asked the Imām ('a): "May I be your ransom! What are the answers to these two questions?"

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "O Abūbākr! The first verse refers to the assistance given to the Qā'im from among us, the *Ahl al-Bayt*. Also, when God said, "Whoever enters it is safe," it means that anyone, who pays

¹ Shaykh al-Mufīd, *Ikhtīāṣ*, p. 20; 'Ayyāshī, *Tafsīr 'Ayyāshī*, vol. 1, p. 64; Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 149; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 144; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 557; In *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, "ينصر المظلوم" has been stated instead of "ينصف المظلوم". See *Al-Fā'iq*, vol. 4, p. 100.

² *Sūrah Saba* 34:18.

³ *Sūrah Āl 'Imrān* 3:97.

⁴ °ajjāj ibn Yūsuf ath-Thaqafī (d. 714 C.E.) was a lieutenant appointed by the 'Umayyad caliph, 'Abd al-Malik (r. 685-705 C.E.). In order to suppress dissent in Mecca, he ordered the bombardment of the sacred mosque. He is famous for his bloody persecution of the Shī'ah, particularly for having killed Sa'īd ibn Zubayr (d. 713 C.E.), who was one of the early exegetes of the Qur'an. It is reported that Hajjāj was tormented by the image of this martyr in his dying moments. [Trans.]

allegiance to the Imām and enters into allegiance with him and thus becomes one of his supporters and companions, is safe.”

‘Alī ibn ‘Uqbah narrated from his father: “When Ḥaḍrat al-Qā’im (‘atfs) appears, he will issue judgments justly and tyranny will be removed during his government, and on account of his presence roads and highways will become safe.”¹

Qatādah said: “Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘atfs) is the best of men... During his time, the earth will become so safe that a woman along with five other women, without any male companion, will set out for °ajj and not be afraid of anything.”²

‘Adī ibn °ātam said: “Surely, a day will come when a weak woman from °īrah (near Najaf) will perform pilgrimage in the House of God alone and she will not be afraid of anyone except God.”³

Judicial Security

One of the topics mentioned about the state of affairs after the advent of Imām al-Mahdī (‘atfs) is the punishment of individuals who make the world unsafe, leave behind millions of killed, wounded and infirm, and bring about material and non-material confusion. These are criminals who would drag the world down to a deplorable state.

After the advent of Imām al-Mahdī (‘atfs), they will definitely be pursued, detained, and tried in court. Implementation of the divine legal punishments [□udūd] can be regarded as an important obligation especially at the advent of the Infallible Imām. Through Ḥaḍrat Baqīyyatullāh (‘atfs) the legal punishments will be implemented on earth according to the Book of God and free of any influence of materialistic desires.

During that time, supervision of this key post will be entrusted to individuals who, apart from having total mastery of Islamic and jurisprudential principles, do not have the slightest fault and shortcoming in terms of the personal records. In the *ḥadīths*, their mastery of judicial works as well as their personal record and merits have been pointed out. Here are some examples:

Imām a□-□ādiq (‘a) said: “When the Qā’im of the Progeny of Muḥammad rises up, he will bring out seventeen persons from behind the *Ka’bah*. They are the five persons from the community [qawm] of Mūsā

¹ ‘*Ilal ash-Sharā’i*’, vol. 1, p. 83; *Nūr ath-Thaqalayn*, vol. 3, p. 332; *Tafsīr Burhān*, vol. 3, p. 212; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 314.

² Ibn □ammād, *Fitan*, p. 98; Ibn □āwūs, *Malā□im*, p. 69; *Iqd ad-Durar*, p. 151; *Al-Qawl al-Mukhta□ar*, p. 21.

³ *Firdaws al-Akḥbār*, vol. 3, p. 491.

(Prophet Moses) who judge rightfully... the seven Companions of the Cave [a□□āb al-kahf], Yūsha' (Joshua) the wa□iyy [executor of will] of Mūsā, the believer from the family of Pharaoh, Salmān al-Fārsī, Abū Dujānah, and Mālik al-Ashtar."¹

Abū Ba□īr asked Imām a□-□ādiq ('a): "With the exception of this group (three hundred and thirteen persons) are there any other people behind the *Ka'bah*?" The Imām ('a) answered: "Yes, there are believers, but this will be the group of jurists, experts, learned men, and judges upon whose breasts and backs of the head, the Imām ('a) will put his hand and rub. Afterward, no judgment will be difficult for them."²

It is thus stated in *Bi□ār al-Anwār*: "They will be the assistants of al-Mahdī and rulers on the earth."³

The □ādiq (Truthful) of the *Ahl al-Bayt* ('a) said: "When Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs) rises up, he will designate a ruler for every country and say to him: 'The program of your activity is in your hand. If in the performance of a duty a problem arises for which you do not know the ruling, look at the palm of your hand and act according to what you find therein.'"⁴

It is possible that finding the judicial ruling on a problem from the palm of the hand alludes to the speed of communication with the central government and obtaining the pertinent information on solving them. It may also point to the amazing talent of the officials in performing their tasks that with just a single glance they could pronounce a ruling. Perhaps the □ādīth is talking about a miracle, which the human mind could not comprehend, by which problems could be easily solved.

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "After the advent of al-Mahdī ('atfs) no one's right could be usurped by another without it being regained by the Imām and returned to its rightful owner."⁵

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "When the Qā'im of the Progeny of Muḥammad (□) rises up, he will judge and issue rulings based on the method of judgment of Prophet Dāwūd (David) and he will not be dependent on witnesses and evidence. God will inspire him [the divine laws] and he will

¹ *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 55, as quoted from 'Ayyāshī, *Tafsīr 'Ayyāshī*, and according to *Raw□ah al-Wā'i□īn*, p. 266. Imām al-Mahdī will bring out twenty seven persons from behind the *Ka'bah*.

² Ibn □āwūs, *Malā□im*, p. 202; *Dalā'il al-Imāmah*, p. 307 with a slight variation.

³ *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 365. See *Dalā'il al-Imāmah*, p. 249.

⁴ Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 319; *Dalā'il al-Imāmah*, p. 249; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 573; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 365; vol. 53, p. 91.

⁵ 'Ayyāshī, *Tafsīr 'Ayyāshī*, vol. 1, p. 64; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 224.

behave according to his (inspired) knowledge and make judgments based upon it.”¹

Ja‘far ibn Sayyār Shāmī said: “The magnitude of the restoration of lost rights (during the time of al-Mahdī ('atfs)) will be to such an extent that if the right of a certain person is between the teeth of another, the Imām will regain it and restore it to its owner.”²

Of course, such actions with respect to the rights of people will be done by the courts which are convened during the rule of al-Mahdī ('atfs) and the judges therein will be such figures as Salmān, Mālik al-Ashtar, the great men among the community of Mūsā, and others, and the top judicial post will be assumed by the Imām himself. It would be natural that there will be no more concern for the trampling of rights as the statement, “If the right of a certain person is between the teeth of another, the Imām will regain it and restore it to its owner,” bespeaks of this reality. 🌐

¹ *Rawḥ al-Wā‘iṣīn*, p. 266; *Ba‘ā’ir ad-Darajāt*, vol. 5, p. 259.

² Ibn Ḥammād, *Fitan*, p. 98; *Iqd ad-Durar*, p. 36; Ibn Ḥawās, *Malā‘im*, p. 68; *Al-Qawl al-Mukhtaṣar*, p. 52.

Chapter 4

The Economy

If a government is supported up by God and implements the divine laws and rules in the society, by its grace, the people will also be transformed and direct their steps toward piety and goodness. As a result, the favors of God will be showered on His servants from all directions.

We read in the Holy Qur'an:

﴿وَلَوْ أَنَّ أَهْلَ الْقُرَىٰ آمَنُوا وَاتَّقَوْا لَفَتَحْنَا عَلَيْهِم بَرَكَاتٍ مِّنَ السَّمَاءِ وَالْأَرْضِ﴾

“If the people of the towns had been faithful and God-wary, We would have opened to them blessings from the heaven and the earth.”¹

In the government of al-Mahdī (‘atfs) in which the people will direct their steps toward submission to God and obedience to the Proof of Allah, there will be no more reason for the sky and earth to withhold their blessings from the servants of God. As such, seasonal rains will pour; rivers will become full of flowing water; the soil will become fertile; agriculture will bloom; gardens will become green and full of fruits; desert climates in places such as Mecca and Medina which had never become verdant will at once turn into palm-groves; and animal husbandry will flourish.

¹ Sūrah al-A‘rāf 7:96.

The society's economy will boom; poverty and indigence will be wiped out; there will be progress everywhere, and commerce will flourish considerably.

There are many *ḥadīths* transmitted concerning the economic boom at the time of the Imām of the Age ('atfs). It shall suffice for us to quote some of them here:

Economic Boom and Social Welfare

What can be deduced from the *ḥadīths* in this context is that as a result of the improvement in economic conditions, poverty and indigence will be uprooted from human society, and a needy person will be endowed with so many assets and wealth that he would be incapable of carrying them. The condition of the society will be such that those who are liable to pay *zakāt* will find difficulty in finding recipients entitled to it.

1. Distribution of Properties and the Endowment of Possessions

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "When the Qā'im of the *Ahl al-Bayt* rises up, he will distribute the public treasury to the people evenly and he will behave justly with them.

Riches on the ground (such as *zakāt* and *khums*) as well as underground wealth (like treasures and minerals) will be gathered through him. Then, the Imām will address the people, thus: "Come and take those things for the sake of which you used to sever relationships, shed blood and commit sins. He will give wealth such that no one before him had ever done."¹

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: "At the end of time, a caliph will appear who will bestow properties without reckoning."²

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) also said: "At the time of despair and the emergence of seditions, a person with the name of Mahdī will appear whose generosity to the people will be wholesome."³

The munificence of al-Mahdī ('atfs) will be like that of a father, without reservation. Therefore, his generosity will be pleasant. His munificence would be contrary to the munificence of others which leads to the servitude of the recipients, trampling upon their religion, and their humiliation.

¹ 'Ilal ash-Sharā'i', p. 161; Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 237; 'Iqd ad-Durar, p. 39; Biḥār al-Anwār, vol. 52, p. 390; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 497.

² Ibn ʿammād, *Fitan*, p. 98; Ibn Abī Shaybah, *Muʿannif*, vol. 15, p. 196; Aḥmad ibn ʿanbal, *Musnad Ibn ʿanbal*, vol. 3, p. 5; Ibn Biḥārīq, *Umdah*, p. 424.

³ Shāfiʿī, *Bayān*, p. 124; *Iḥqāq al-ʿaqāq*, vol. 13, p. 248; *Ash-Shīʿah wa'r-Rajʿah*, vol. 1, p. 207.

The Prophet (ﷺ) also said: “A person from Quraysh will appear... and he will distribute wealth among the people and act based on the *Sunnah* of their Prophet.”¹

In another *ḥadīth*, he (ﷺ) said: “The Mahdī will take out treasures from under the ground, distribute wealth among the people, and restore the splendor of Islam.”²

The Prophet (ﷺ) also said: “During the last period of my *ummah*, there will be a caliph who will give handfuls of possessions to the people without counting them.”³

‘Abdullāh ibn Sinān reports: “My father said to Imām a□-□ādīq (‘a): ‘I have at my disposal some tributary lands which I have cultivated.’ The Imām (‘a) remained silent for a while and then said: ‘If our Qā’im rises up, your share from the land will be more than that.’”⁴

Imām al-Bāqir (‘a) said: “When the Qā’im of the *Ahl al-Bayt* rises up, he will distribute the public treasury among the people evenly and he will behave justly with them.”⁵

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: “The name of the last Imām will be similar to mine. He will appear and fill the world with justice. When wealth would have been stored up, a person will ask for property from him. The Imām (‘atfs) will say: ‘Take it yourself from these possessions.’”⁶

2. The Uprooting of Poverty from Society

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: “When Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘atfs) rises up... Properties and *zakāts* will be brought in the alleys, but one could hardly be found who would be willing to receive them.”⁷

He (ﷺ) also said: “The Mahdī (‘atfs) will be from my *ummah* and during his rule property and wealth will be stockpiled.”⁸

¹ Abū Dāwūd, *Sunan Abū Dāwūd*, vol. 4, p. 108.

² Ibn □āwūs, *Malā□im*, p. 69.

³ ‘Abd ar-Razzāq, *Mu□annif*, vol. 11, p. 372; Ibn Ba□rīq, ‘*Umdah*, p. 424; A□-□awā‘iq al-Mu□riqah, p. 164; Baghawī, *Ma□ābī□ as-Sunnah*, vol. 2, p. 139; Shāfi‘ī, *Bayān*, p. 122; Ibn □āwūs, *Malā□im*, p. 69.

⁴ *Al-Kāfi*, vol. 5, p. 285; *At-Tahdhīb*, vol. 7, p. 149.

⁵ Nu‘mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 237; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 51, p. 29.

⁶ Ibn □āwūs, *Malā□im*, p. 70; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, p. 379. See Aḥmad ibn □anbal, *Musnad Ibn □anbal*, vol. 3, p. 21; *I□qāq al-□aqq*, vol. 13, p. 55.

⁷ ‘*Iqd ad-Durar*, p. 166; *Al-Mustajād*, p. 58. In the *ḥadīth* it is thus stated: “They will place property in the local houses”. *Al-□awā‘* [الحواء] in this context refers to adjacent houses situated in the same locality.

⁸ □ākīm, *Mustadrak*, vol. 4, p. 558; *Ash-Shī‘ah wa’r-Raj‘ah*, vol. 1, p. 214.

This *ḥadīth* alludes to the elimination of society's needs to the extent that wealth will exceed consumption. In other words, the government of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) apart from having no budget deficit will have surplus income.

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "When our Qā'im rises up... The earth will bring out its treasures and expose them in such a manner that the people could see them on the ground with their own eyes. The payers of *zakāt* will look for someone needy to whom they could give their *zakāt* but they would not be able to find anyone. Owing to the grace and munificence of God, the people will become needless of others."¹

Alī ibn 'Uqbah narrated: "During that time, no one would be able to find a place where they can give charity and spend money in the way of goodness because the believers will be free from want everywhere."²

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "The people will go to al-Mahdī paying their taxes. God will endow our Shī'ah with a comfortable and easy life and they will live while being free from want. And if the grace and felicity of God had not encompassed them, they would have risen up with such freedom from want."³

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('a) will give gifts to the people twice a year. He will give salaries twice a month and he will treat the people equally in such a manner that nobody who is in need of *zakāt* could be found in society. The payers of *zakāt* will bring the share of the poor to them but the poor will not accept them. Having no alternative, they will place the revenue in specially bags and bring them where the Shī'ah are located but they will say, 'We are not in need of your dirhams'."⁴

From the abovementioned *ḥadīths* two points can be learned. Firstly, the people during the rule of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will have intellectual maturity such that, even without any force and pressure exerted on them, they will perform their obligations in every respect. One of these obligations is the payment of taxes on their income to the Islamic state.

If all the Muslims would pay the *khums* on their income and *zakāt* on their assets to the Islamic government, their aggregate will be huge and the

¹ Shaykh al-Mufīd, *Al-Irshād*, p. 363; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 337.

² Shaykh al-Mufīd, *Al-Irshād*, p. 344; *Al-Mustajād*, p. 509; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 339. See Ahmad ibn □anbal, *Musnad Ibn □anbal*, vol. 2, pp. 53, 272, 313; vol. 3, p. 5; *Majma' az-Zawā'id*, vol. 7, p. 314; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 496.

³ *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 345.

⁴ Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 238; □ilyah al-Abrār, vol. 2, p. 642; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 390. See *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 352; Ibn Abī Shaybah, *Mu□annif*, vol. 3, p. 111; Ahmad ibn □anbal, *Musnad Ibn □anbal*, vol. 4, p. 306; Bukhārī, □a□ī□ al-Bukhārī, vol. 2, p. 135; Muslim, □a□ī□ Muslim, vol. 2, p. 70.

government would become able to undertake any measure of reform and public service.

Secondly, although Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī's ('atfs) grants to the people at that time will be countless and the people will have incomes through various means that would render them free from need, what is worthy of attention is the sublime nature and spirit of contentment they will have; for, there are many rich people who have hungry natures and greedy spirits while there are many people who, in spite of their being poor, have lofty natures and spirits of contentment. The people during the period of the Imām of the Time ('atfs) will possess the spirit of contentment and this is the very spiritual transformation that will occur at that time.

3. Attending to the Affairs of the Deprived and the Downtrodden

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: "...At that time, al-Mahdī (ﷺ) will appear and he is from the progeny of this person ('Alī ibn Abī Ṭālib ('a)). Through his hand, God will eliminate liars, remove difficult circumstances, and take away the rope of slavery and servitude from your necks."¹

The Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: "When the Imām of the Time ('atfs) appears, no Muslim slave will remain without being bought by the Imām and freed in the way of God, and no debtor will remain without his debt being paid by the Imām."²

Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "When al-Mahdī ('atfs) appears, he will go to the city of Medina and free everyone from the Banī Hāshim who was imprisoned there."³ Then, Ibn Arṭāh said: "He will go to Kūfah and set free the prisoners from the Banī Hāshim there."

Ṭāwūs al-Yamānī said: "The salient feature of al-Mahdī ('atfs) is that he would be strict in relation to his rulers and officials and would be generous in giving wealth. In relation to the helpless, weak and indigent, he will be kind and magnanimous."⁴

Abū Ru'bah said: "The Mahdī will give presents to the weak with his own hands."⁵

This probably means that in distributing gifts and presents, the Imām ('a) will pay particular attention to the deprived and weak, giving them more

¹ Shaykh aṭ-Ṭūsī, *Ghaybah*, p. 114; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 502; *Biṭār al-Anwār*, vol. 51, p. 75.

² 'Ayyāshī, *Tafsīr 'Ayyāshī*, vol. 1, p. 64; *Biṭār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 224.

³ Ibn Ṭammād, *Fitan*, p. 83; *Al-Ṭāwī Li'l-Fatāwā*, vol. 2, p. 67; Muttaqī Hindī, *Burhān*, p. 118.

⁴ *Iqd ad-Durar*, p. 167.

⁵ Ibn Ṭāwūs, *Malā'im*, p. 68; *Aqd ad-Durar*, p. 227.

property. In addition to the right that every Muslim has with respect to his share in the public treasury, he will give to the poor as much as he deems appropriate.

Prosperity and Development

We will realize the magnificence and importance of the prosperity and development during the rule of the Imām of the Time ('a) when we try to take into account the magnitude of the destruction prior to his advent. Yes, the world that had suffered from ruinous war, that had fallen prey to the carnal desires of the power-mongers, that had been burnt in the fire of war for long periods, and had left behind death and destruction, will be more in need of prosperity and development. The government of al-Mahdī ('atfs) will undertake the repairing of those destructions and make the entire world prosperous and developed.

Imām 'Alī ('a) said: "The Mahdī ('atfs) will dispatch his companions to different lands. He will send companions who had paid allegiance to him from the beginning of the uprising off to the cities, enjoining justice and benevolence. Each of them will become the ruler of a territory on the earth. Afterward, all cities of the world will flourish through justice and benevolence."¹

In this regard, Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "During the rule of al-Mahdī ('atfs) no ruined place will remain on the surface of the earth without it being rehabilitated and developed."²

The same Imām ('a) also said: "After entering Kūfah... Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will assign a group to dig a river from behind the shrine of Imām al-Ḥusayn ('a) (outside the city of Karbalā') toward the Ghariyīn for the water to flow toward the city of Najaf, and they will build bridges across this river."³

Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "When our Qā'im rises up... The houses of Kūfah will be connected to the river of Karbalā and ʿIrāh."⁴

¹ *Ash-Shī'ah wa'r-Raj'ah*, vol. 1, p. 168.

² *Kamāluddīn*, vol. 1, p. 331; *Al-Fu□ūl al-Muhimmah*, p. 284; *As'āf ar-Rāghibīn*, p. 152; *Wāfī*, vol. 2, p. 112; *Nūr ath-Thaqalayn*, vol. 2, p. 212; *I□qāq al-□aqq*, vol. 13, p. 342.

³ Shaykh al-Mufīd, *Al-Irshād*, p. 362; Shaykh a□-□ūsī, *Ghaybah*, p. 280; *Raw□ah al-Wā'ī□īn*, vol. 2, p. 263; *□irā□ al-Mustaqīm*, vol. 2, p. 262; *A'lām al-Warā*, p. 430; *Al-Mustajād*, p. 580; *Kashf al-Ghummah*, vol. 3, p. 253; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 331; vol. 97, p. 385.

⁴ Shaykh a□-□ūsī, *Ghaybah*, p. 295; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, pp. 330, 337; vol. 97, p. 385. It is thus stated in Shaykh al-Mufīd's *Al-Irshād*, "The houses of the residents of Kūfah will be connected to the river of Karbalā" [اتصلت بيوت أهل الكوفة بنهر كربلاء]. See *Raw□ah al-Wā'ī□īn*,

This *ḥadīth* indicates the expansion of the city of Kūfah, which will spread in the direction of ʿIrāh, which is at present approximately sixty kilometers away from Kūfah and to Karbalā', in another direction, which also is the same distance from Kūfah.

ʿAbah 'Aranī said: "The Commander of the Faithful ('a) went to ʿIrāh. There, pointing toward Kūfah, he said: 'Certainly, the houses of the city of Kūfah will be connected to the city of ʿIrāh and it will be so developed that every *dharā*¹ (approximately one meter) of land in these two cities will be sold and purchased at great expense for many dinars.'²

Perhaps, the future expansion of Kūfah and the expensiveness of its property will be due to its being the capital of the Islamic government in the future and based on *ḥadīths*, the faithful will go there.

In the same vein, roads and highways will expand during the period of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) and special rules will be observed in this context. In this connection, Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said:

"When Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im rises up, he will go to Kūfah... Then, no corniced mosque (having a porch or crenation or overlooking other houses) will remain on the surface of the earth without being destroyed by him and restoring it to a form lacking their previous features, and he will expand the main roads."³

Imām al-Kā'im ('a) said: "When our Qā'im rises up, he will inform those who own means of transportation (animal or otherwise) to travel along the middle of the highways and roads just as he will order pedestrians to walk on the sidewalks of the street. Thus, anyone riding who traveled along the edge of the street and harmed somebody will be obliged by the Imām ('a) to pay blood-money. Similarly, any pedestrian who walked in the middle of the street and was harmed by somebody would have no right to receive blood money."⁴

We can understand from this *ḥadīth* that the cities will be so developed, main roads so expanded and means of transportation so multiplied that a law will be imposed not only for the means of the transportation but also for pedestrians.

vol. 2, p. 264; *A'lām al-Warā*, p. 434; *Kharā'ij*, vol. 3, p. 1176; *Irā' al-Mustaqīm*, vol. 2, p. 251; *Al-Ma'ajjah*, p. 184.

¹ Every *dharā* is equivalent to a range between 50 and 70 centimeters. See *Al-Munjid*.

² *At-Tahdhīb*, vol. 3, p. 253; *Malādh al-Akhyār*, vol. 5, p. 478; *Bi'ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 374.

³ Shaykh al-Mufīd, *Al-Irshād*, p. 365; *Bi'ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 339.

⁴ *At-Tahdhīb*, vol. 10, p. 314; *Wasā'il ash-Shī'ah*, vol. 19, p. 181; *Malādh al-Akhyār*, vol. 16, p. 685; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 455.

Yes, a government that will use science and technology, expand the main roads, and construct expressways will also impose a law for driving with strong executive guarantees.

Agriculture

One of the sectors that will experience considerable transformation during the rule of the Imām of the Time ('atfs) is the agricultural sector (farming and animal husbandry). After the people had tasted the pain of scant rain, long draughts, lack of foodstuffs, the destruction of sown fields, and a lack of news about domesticated animals and animal husbandry, when in order to procure a loaf of bread one sometimes had to sacrifice the most valuable things he possessed, i.e. chastity and dignity, a tremendous transformation in agriculture will occur and foodstuffs will become abundant in society.

Prior to the advent of the Imām ('a) if there was any rain, the earth was not receptive to it and when the earth was receptive, the rain did not come or would sometimes fall at the wrong time and agricultural products would be destroyed. During the time of the Imām ('a), the rain would change. Initially, rain which had not so far been experienced by the people throughout their lives would fall. Thereafter, divine grace will descend opportunely upon the people, and as a result, the blessings of God for them will become abundant to such an extent that it would seem as if they had received ten years of produce in one day. It has been stated in *ḥadīths* that for every *man* (three kilograms) of wheat one could harvest a hundred *man* of produce.

Some *ḥadīths* mention the fall of twenty four rains after the advent of Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs). Thereafter, accordingly, great blessings will envelop the people, encompassing flora and fauna as well. Plains, mountains and deserts, and perennially barren fields will become verdant; the divine blessings will be so bountiful that the people would wish for a new life for the dead.

1. The Abundance of Rain

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: "The sky will shower upon them abundant rain."¹

In another *ḥadīth* he (ﷺ) said: "God will send down for him blessings from the sky."²

¹ *Majma' az-Zawā'id*, vol. 7, p. 317; *Iqāq al-ḥaqiq*, vol. 13, p. 139.

² *Iqd ad-Durar*, p. 169; Ibn Ḥawās, *Malā'im*, p. 71, 141.

He (□) also said elsewhere: “He (‘atfs) will fill the earth with justice and equity while the sky will send down rain, and as a result, the soil will produce its crops permanently and my *ummah* during the rule of the Imām (‘atfs) will enjoy blessings the like of which has not been seen before.”¹

In this connection, the Commander of the Faithful (‘a) said: “Because of our existence, God, the Exalted, began His creation and will also end it because of our existence. He extinguishes whatever He wills through us and creates anything He wills through us. Owing to our existence, He removes difficult circumstances, and sends down the rain for our sake. So, let [the world’s] deception not deviate you from the way of God. From the day God closes the doors of the sky, even a drop of rain will not fall, and if our Qā’im rises up, the sky will send down its rain of mercy.”²

Imām a□-□ādiq (‘a) said: “When the time for the advent of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā’im comes, in Jumādī ath-Thānī and ten days in the month of Rajab, a rain will fall the like of which the people have not seen.”³

Sa’id ibn Jubayr said: “The year when Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘atfs) rises up, it will rain twenty four times whose effects and blessings will be made manifest.”⁴

Concerning the abundance of water during the period of Ḥaḍrat al-Qā’im (‘atfs), the Noble Messenger of Islam (□) said: “During his (al-Mahdī’s) rule, water will be abundant and the water (level) of rivers will rise.”⁵

He (□) also said in another *ḥadīth*: “...Rivers will overflow with water, springs will gush forth and spill over, and the earth will produce crops manifold times.”⁶

2. The Surplus of Agricultural Produce

The Messenger of Allah (□) said: “How happy would life be after al-Masīḥ (Christ) (‘a) kills ad-Dajjāl because the sky will be granted permission to let rain fall and the earth to produce crops. If a seed was to be thrown on Mount □afā (which is rocky and barren), it would surely grow. At that time rancor and jealousy will fade away such that if a person passes by a

¹ *Al-Ma□ālib al-‘Āliyah*, vol. 4, p. 242; Ibn □āwūs, *Malā□im*, p. 139; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 524; *I□qāq al-□āqq*, vol. 19, p. 655. See Aḥmad ibn □anbal, *Musnad Ibn □anbal*, vol. 2, p. 262; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 345; *I□qāq al-□āqq*, vol. 19, p. 169, 663.

² *Minan ar-Ra□mān*, vol. 2, p. 42.

³ *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 337; *Wāfi*, vol. 2, p. 113.

⁴ *I□qāq al-□āqq*, vol. 13, p. 169.

⁵ *Iqd ad-Durar*, p. 84.

⁶ Shaykh al-Mufīd, *Ikhtī□ā□*, p. 208; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 304.

lion, he will not be harmed, and if he treads upon a snake, he will not be bitten.”¹

The Prophet (ﷺ) also said: “My *ummah* during the period of al-Mahdī ('atfs) will acquire blessings the like of which has never been seen, and no believer or infidel has ever attained such a blessing. The sky will send down rains in succession while the earth will not keep anything from the plants but send it out (i.e., it will let the plants grow).”²

Regarding the preparedness of the earth in the time of al-Mahdī ('atfs), the Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: “The earth is like silver, which becomes calm after its ebullition. It will be ready for cultivation and the flourishing of plants. It was the same during the time of Ḥaḍrat Ādam ('a).”³

Concerning the blessings of the produce and their good quality, the Prophet (ﷺ) said:

“...A pomegranate will satisfy many persons⁴ while a bunch of grapes will be consumed by many (and satiate them).”⁵

Imām 'Alī ('a) said: “Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will conquer the east and the west... He will remove evils and disturbances and replace them with wholesome and good things so much so that a wheat and barley farmer can get from every *man* (a unit of measurement equivalent to three kilograms) of wheat, a hundred *man* of produce just as God said:

﴿ فِي كُلِّ سَبِيلَةٍ مِائَةٌ حَبَّةٌ وَاللَّهُ يُضَاعِفُ لِمَنْ يَشَاءُ ﴾

“In every ear (grow) a hundred grains. Allah enhances severalfold whomever He wishes.”^{6,7}

The same Imām ('a) also said: “The Mahdī ('atfs) will enjoin his officials to observe justice among the people in the cities... A farmer at the time will sow a *mudd*⁸ (of grain) and reap seven hundred *mudds* of crops as God, the Exalted, said and God will also increase it manifold.”⁹

¹ *Firdaws al-Akhhbār*, vol. 3, p. 24.

² Ibn ʿāwūs, *Malāʾim*, p. 141. See Shaykh aḥ-ḥ-ʿūsī, *Ghaybah*, p. 115; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 504.

³ Ibn ʿāwūs, *Malāʾim*, p. 152; Ibn Mājāh, *Sunan Ibn Mājāh*, vol. 2, p. 1359; Ibn ʿammād, *Fitan*, p. 162; 'Abd ar-Razzāq, *Muʿannif*, vol. 11, p. 399, with variation.

⁴ Ibn ʿāwūs, *Malāʾim*, p. 152; *Ad-Durr al-Manthūr*, vol. 4, p. 255, with difference; 'Abd ar-Razzāq, *Muʿannif*, vol. 11, p. 401.

⁵ *Ibid.*

⁶ *Sūrah al-Baqarah* 2:261.

⁷ *Ash-Shī'ah wa'r-Raj'ah*, vol. 1, p. 167.

⁸ *Mudd*: a unit of measurement which is equivalent to 18 liters in Iraq. See *Farhang-e Faārsī-ye 'Amīd*, p. 935.

⁹ *Iqd ad-Durar*, p. 159; Ibn ʿāwūs, *Malāʾim*, p. 97; *Al-Qawl al-Mukhtaḥar*, p. 20.

With regard to the fruition of trees, he ('a) said: "At the time of al-Mahdī ('atfs) trees will bear fruits (plentifully) and blessings will abound."¹

The Commander of the Faithful ('a) said elsewhere: "When our Qā'im rises up, the sky will send down its rain while the earth will let its plants sprout such that if a woman travels on foot from Iraq to Shām, she will tread on nothing but grasses and shrubs."²

Maybe the Imām ('a) mentions this region as an example. It must be noted that the present geographical condition of this region is such that on this route nothing can be found except the cacti of the desert. Perhaps, mentioning this region is meant to indicate that during the time of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) all barren lands will become verdant.

In relation to this, the Prophet of God (ﷺ) said: "When Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī appears to my *ummah*, the earth will bring forth its crops, fruits and flowers will grow while the sky will send down its rain."³

On the interpretation of the noble Qur'anic verse: ﴿مُدْهَامَتَانِ﴾ "Dark green,"⁴ Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "Date palms will connect Mecca and Medina."⁵

The same Imām ('a) also said: "...By God! After the appearance of ad-Dajjāl, there will be [flourishing] agriculture and trees will be planted (plentifully)."⁶

As narrated by Shaykh a□-□ūsī in *At-Tahdhīb*, "We will do farming and plant trees."⁷

3. The Flourishing of Animal Husbandry

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: "During the last period of the life of my *ummah*, Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will appear... and sheep and (other) domesticated animals will become abundant."⁸

¹ Ibn □āwūs, *Malā□im*, p. 125; *Al-□āwī Li'l-Fatāwā*, vol. 2, p. 61; Muttaqī Hindī, *Burhān*, p. 117.

² *Tu□af al-'Uqūl*, p. 115; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, pp. 316, 345.

³ *Al-Manāqib wa'l-Mathālib*, p. 44; *I□qāq al-□aqq*, vol. 19, p. 677. See Ibn Mājah, *Sunan Ibn Mājah*, vol. 2, p. 1356; □ākim, *Mustadrak*, vol. 4, p. 492; *Ad-Durr al-Manthūr*, vol. 2, p. 244.

⁴ *Sūrah ar-Ra□mān* 55:64.

⁵ *Tafsīr Qummī*, vol. 2, p. 346; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 51, p. 49.

⁶ *Al-Kāfi*, vol. 5, p. 260; *Man Lā Ya□□uruh al-Faqīh*, vol. 3, p. 158; *Wasā'il ash-Shī'ah*, vol. 13, p. 193; *At-Tahdhīb*, vol. 6, p. 384.

⁷ *At-Tahdhīb*, vol. 6, p. 384.

⁸ □ākim, *Mustadrak*, vol. 4, p. 558; *Iqd ad-Durar*, p. 144; Muttaqī Hindī, *Burhān*, p. 84; *Kashf al-Ghumma*, vol. 3, p. 260; *I□qāq al-□aqq*, vol. 13, p. 215; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 51, p. 81; *Ash-Shī'ah wa'r-Raj'ah*, vol. 1, p. 214.

The Prophet (ﷺ) also said: "At that time, there will be herds of animals and they will continue to live."¹


A point worthy of note in the statement of the Prophet (ﷺ) above is that prior to that period, it seems that on account of the scarcity of water and forage as well as the spread of diseases, domesticated animals could hardly survive.

He (ﷺ) said elsewhere: "After the killing of ad-Dajjāl, God will bestow blessings on the herds of animals so much so that a young camel (which is at the age of preparation for pregnancy) would be able to satisfy a number of people; a calf would be the enough food for an entire tribe; and a goat would be enough to feed a certain number of people."²

Commerce

The growth and expansion of commerce in a society is a sign of its economic development and prosperity. The closing of markets and commercial stagnation are signs of a society's poverty. Since the people during the rule of the Imām of the Age ('atfs) will experience good economic conditions, commerce will flourish and markets will be active.

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said in this regard: "Among the signs of *Qiyāmah* (advent of al-Mahdī ('atfs)) are the following: Assets and wealth will flow like a flood among the people; knowledge and learning will become manifest; and commerce will expand and flourish."³

'Abdullāh ibn Salām said: "After the elimination of ad-Dajjāl, the people will live for forty years; date palms will be planted; and markets will be established."⁴ 

¹ *Jāmi' al-Aḥādīth*, vol. 8, p. 77; *Iḥqāq al-ḥaqiq*, vol. 13, p. 215; vol. 19, p. 681.

² Ibn Ḥammād, *Fitan*, p. 148.

³ Ibn Qutaybah, *Uyūn al-Akhbār*, vol. 1, p. 12.

⁴ Ibn Abī Shaybah, *Muḥannif*, vol. 15, p. 142; *Ad-Durr al-Manthūr*, vol. 5, p. 354; Muttaqī Hindī, *Burhān*, p. 193.

Chapter 5

Health and Medical Services

One of society's problems prior to the advent of the Imām of the Time (*'atfs*) will be the deterioration of health conditions and the inefficiency of treatment measures, which as a result, will lead to the spread of contagious diseases and sudden death throughout the world. The spread of ailments such as leprosy, plague, paralysis, blindness, heart failure, and hundreds of others will be so threatening to the lives of people that it would seem as if everyone was waiting for certain death without any hope for a longer life. When they go to bed at night, there would be no hope for them to wake up and survive the following day, and if they were going outside, there would be no hope for their return.

These heartrending and painful circumstances will arise as effects of environmental pollution and as a consequence of the use of chemical, nuclear and biological weapons. The increase in the number of the dead as well as their not being buried and their decay will be factors for the outbreak of those diseases, or as a result of other psychological and emotional diseases that will occur out of hopelessness and the loss of loved ones. The causes of all these things might however be due to other factors of which we are unaware.

The government of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (*'atfs*) in such a state of affairs will be the light of hope in the hearts of the calamity-smitten and afflicted people of that time for the elimination of such conditions and the restoration of health to human society. This is exactly what the government of the Imām of the Time (*'a*) will do.

We shall mention here some *ḥadīths* regarding the condition of health and medical treatment prior to the Imām's advent. Then, we shall examine some *ḥadīths* about the efforts of Ḥaḍrat 'ujjah ('atfs) in safeguarding society's health and medical services:

The Spread of Diseases and Sudden Deaths

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: "Among the signs of the approach of the Day of Resurrection is that a man will die without pain or ailments."¹

In another *ḥadīth*, he (ﷺ) said: "During the approach of *Qiyāmah*, there will be excessive and successive *ḥā'iqahs* (thunder and lightning that would ignite fires and cause burning) so much so that when a person is in the company of his relatives or a group, he will ask, 'Yesterday, who among you was struck by lightning and was burned?' It will be answered: "So and so..."²

ḥā'iqah means unconsciousness or the loss of intellect from hearing a frightening sound. It also means catching fire or burning. Therefore, a person who is afflicted with *ḥā'iqah* either loses his intellect, or is burned from the effect of its fire³ and turned into ashes. Of course, it is possible for *ḥā'iqah* to be the result of the explosion of advanced weapons at that time which will burn and have a frightening sound such that anyone near them will turn into ashes. The effect they will have on human beings will not be anything but diseases; these three ailments and calamities can only be caused by destructive weapons.

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said in another *ḥadīth*: "During the approach of *Qiyāmah* and Resurrection, there will be innumerable deaths and afterward will be years of many earthquakes."⁴

In this regard, the Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: "Prior to the advent of al-Qā'im ('atfs), two types of death will become rampant, i.e. the "red death" and the "white death", which is actually the spread of epidemics."⁵

Imām aḥ-ḥādiq ('a) said: "Among the signs of *Qiyāmah* and Resurrection is the spread of paralysis and sudden death."⁶

¹ *Firdaws al-Akhhbār*, vol. 4, p. 298.

² Aḥmad ibn ḥanbal, *Musnad Ibn ḥanbal*, vol. 3, p. 64; *Firdaws al-Akhhbār*, vol. 5, p. 434.

³ See *Farhang-e Fārsī-ye 'Amīd*, vol. 2, p. 688.

⁴ *Al-Mu'jam al-Kabīr*, vol. 7, p. 59.

⁵ Shaykh al-Mufīd, *Al-Irshād*, p. 359; Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 277; Shaykh aḥ-ḥūsī, *Ghaybah*, p. 267; *I'lām al-Warā*, p. 427; *Kharā'ij*, vol. 3, p. 1152; *ḥirā' al-Mustaḥqīm*, p. 249; *Bi'ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 211; *Ilzām an-Nā'ib*, vol. 2, p. 147.

⁶ *Bi'ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 313; Ibn Athīr, *Nihāyah*, vol. 1, p. 187.

Imām al-Kāshim (‘a) quoted the Prophet (ﷺ) as saying: “The occurrence of sudden death, leprosy and hemorrhoids would be among the signs of the approach of *Qiyāmah* and Resurrection.”¹

It has been stated in *Bayān al-A‘immah*, thus: “Among the signs of the approach of al-Mahdī’s advent is the spread of cholera and plague throughout the world especially in Baghdad and its neighboring cities as a result of which many people will die.”²

Health

Astounding quantum leaps in science, medical science in particular, would be achieved during the rule of al-Mahdī (‘atfs) and it will be utilized for the improvement of health in society. Other factors contributing to the improvement of health in society would be extinguishing the flames of war; peace of mind; the preservation of mental health with the reformation of mankind; and the blossoming of agriculture and animal husbandry providing proper nourishment for people. Thus, the state of public health during the period of the Imām of the Age (‘atfs) will attain its highest and ideal level. It will be such that the physical condition of the people will change and their lifespans will become so much longer that sometimes a person would see his children, grandchildren and great grandchildren before departing from this world.

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said: “The day after Īsā (‘a) comes down from heaven and kills ad-Dajjāl, the sun will rise in the west (and not in the east) and for forty years you will live prosperously and comfortably during which no one will die or get sick.”³

Maybe what is meant by this statement is that death and sickness, which would have been widespread prior to the Imām’s advent, will become insignificant and trivial during the period of the Imām. The literal meaning might also be true, i.e. during that particular period, there will be no death and sickness owing to the blessed presence of Ḥaḍrat Baqiyyatullāh al-A‘īn (‘atfs).

The Commander of the Faithful (‘a) said: “During the rule of al-Mahdī (‘atfs)... lifespans will be long.”⁴

Mufaḍḍal ibn ‘Umar said: “Imām aḥ-ḥādīq (‘a) said: ‘When our Qā’im rises up... the people under the aegis of his rule will have long

¹ *Biḥār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 269, as quoted from *Al-Imāmah wa’t-Tabārah; Ilzām an-Nāḥib*, vol. 2, p. 125.

² *Bayān al-A‘immah*, vol. 1, p. 102.

³ Ibn ḥāwūs, *Malāḥim*, p. 97.

⁴ *Iqd ad-Durar*, p. 159; *Al-Qawl al-Mukhtaḥar*, p. 20.

lifespans to the extent that for every person a thousand children will be born'.¹

In this regard, Imām as-Sajjād ('a) said: "When our Qā'im rises up, God, the Honorable and Glorious, will keep our Shī'ah away from ailments and calamities, and make their hearts like solid iron and the strength of each of them to be equal to that of forty men. They will be rulers on the earth and its leading figures."²

Concerning the healthy condition of the environment during the rule of the Imām of the Time ('atfs), Imām al-Bāqir ('a) said: "When our Qā'im rises up... septic tanks and drainpipes along roads will be removed."³

Maintaining health in cities and in the social environment is one of the responsibilities of a government. As such, every factor that might threaten the healthy condition of the environment must be prevented. Dumping of domestic waste on the streets and constructing cess pits outside the house—as is the case in some deprived cities and villages—are detrimental to the healthy condition of the environment. So, we can see that one of the jobs to be undertaken by Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) is to prevent any violation of health regulations.

Medical Services

Since health conditions will reach their ideal levels during the period of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs), diseases will decrease; only a few individuals will be afflicted with sickness. Medical science will also reach its height and diverse sicknesses will be cured within a very short period of time. In addition to that, with the help of God, the Imām ('atfs) himself will cure the incurable. In fact, it can be said that no ailment would be found during the rule of the Imām ('atfs).

Regarding the government of al-Mahdī ('atfs), Imām al-Ḥusayn ('a) said: "No blind, paralytic or sick people will remain on the surface of the earth without being cured by God."⁴

The Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: "...Then, our Qā'im who would then be in the state of occultation, will appear with Jibra'īl before him

¹ Shaykh al-Mufīd, *Al-Irshād*, p. 363; *Al-Mustajād*, p. 509; *Bi'ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 337; *Wāfi*, vol. 2, p. 113.

² Nu'mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 317; Shaykh a□-□adūq, *Khi□āl*, vol. 2, p. 541; *Raw□ah al-Wā'ī□īn*, vol. 2, p. 295; *□irā□ al-Mustaqīm*, vol. 2, p. 261; *Bi'ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 317.

³ *Man Lā Ya□□urūh al-Faqīh*, vol. 1, p. 234; Shaykh al-Mufīd, *Al-Irshād*, p. 365; Shaykh a□-□ūsī, *Ghaybah*, p. 283; *Raw□ah al-Wā'ī□īn*, vol. 2, p. 264; *I'lām al-Wārā*, p. 432; *Al-Fu□ūl al-Muhimmah*, p. 302; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 452; *Bi'ār al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 333.

⁴ *Kharā'ij*, vol. 2, p. 489; *Bi'ār al-Anwār*, vol. 53, p. 62.

and the Book of God behind him. He will cure those who would be suffering from vitiligo and leprosy.”¹

It can be inferred from this *ḥadīth* that Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘atfs) himself will play a key role in curing incurable diseases.

Imām a□-□ādiq (‘a) said: “When our Qā’im rises up, God will keep the believers away from diseases and restore them to health.”²

In this regard, Imām al-Bāqir (‘a) said: “Anyone who happens to see the Qā’im from among us, the *Ahl al-Bayt*, will be cured if he had an ailment, and if he suffered from weakness, he will become strong and energetic.”³

It has thus been stated in Shaykh a□-□adūq’s *Khi□āl*: “During the time of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī (‘atfs), diseases will be cured and they (the faithful) will become like pieces of iron.”⁴

¹ *Daw□ah al-Anwār*, p. 133; *Ash-Shī’ah wa’r-Raj’ah*, vol. 1, p. 171.

² Nu’mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 317; *Bi□ar al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 364; *Ithbāt al-Hudāh*, vol. 3, p. 493.

³ Nu’mānī, *Ghaybah*, p. 317; Shaykh a□-□adūq, *Khi□āl*, vol. 2, p. 541; *Raw□ah al-Wā’i□īn*, vol. 2, p. 295; *□irā□ al-Mustaqīm*, vol. 2, p. 261; *Bi□ar al-Anwār*, vol. 52, p. 335, as quoted from *Kharā’ij*.

⁴ Shaykh a□-□adūq, *Khi□āl*, p. 507.

Conclusion

The Martyrdom or Passing Away of Imām al-Mahdī (‘atfs)

Different *ḥadīths* exist regarding the martyrdom or passing away of Imām al-Mahdī (‘atfs), but because Imām Ḥasan al-Mujtabā (‘a) has said, “Each one of us Imāms will either be poisoned or martyred,” the *ḥadīths* that indicate the Imām’s martyrdom can have preponderance over others that say otherwise.

Here, it will suffice to examine only a few pertinent *ḥadīths*:

Concerning the noble Qur’anic verse, “*Then We gave you back the turn [to prevail] over them,*”¹ Imām a□-□ādiq (‘a) said: “It means the revival of Imām al-Ḥusayn (‘a) and seventy of his companions during the period of the Imām of the Time wearing golden helmets. The return [*raj’ah*] and revival of Ḥaḍrat al-Ḥusayn (‘a) will be announced by them to the people so that the believers would not entertain doubt and skepticism.

This will occur while Ḥaḍrat al-°ujjah (‘atfs) will be among the people. When knowledge and faith in him will be well-embedded in their hearts, the demise of Ḥaḍrat °ujjah will come. Then, Ḥaḍrat Imām al-Ḥusayn (‘a) will take charge of his *ghu□l* [ritual bath for the dead], his shrouding [*kafn*], embalmment [□unū□], and burial. A non-wa□iyy [executor of will] will never prepare the burial of a wa□iyy.”²

¹ *Sūrah al-Isrā’* (or *Banī Isrā’īl*) 17:6.

² *Al-Kāfi*, vol. 8, p. 206; *Ta’wīl al-Āyāt a□-□āhirah*, vol. 1, p. 278; vol. 2, p. 762; *Mukhta□ar al-Ba□ā’ir*, p. 48; *Tafsīr Burhān*, vol. 2, p. 401; *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 53, p. 13; vol. 51, p. 56.

Zuhrī said: "Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will live for fourteen years and then he will meet the Lord by natural death."¹

Arḳāh said: "It has been narrated to me that Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) will live for forty years. Then, he will die a natural death on his bed."²

Ka'b al-Aḳbār³ said: "The victor [*manḳūr*] of this *ummaḥ* is al-Mahdī, and the inhabitants of the earth and the birds in the sky send salutations to him.

"It is he who will be tested in the war with Rome and other great battles. This test will take twenty years. Along with two thousand of his standard-bearing commanders he will attain martyrdom. Afterward, there will be no tragedy more painful than the martyrdom of Ḥaḍrat al-Mahdī ('atfs) after the tragedy of the demise of the Messenger of Allah (ḳ)."⁴

Of course, in my opinion, the statements of Zuhrī, Arḳāh and Ka'b are unreliable unless the opposite is proved.

The Manner of the Martyrdom of Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs)

Regarding the manner of the martyrdom of Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs), it has been stated in *Ilzām an-Nāḳib*, thus: "When his seventieth year comes to an end and his death is about to take place, a woman named Sa'īdah from the tribe of Banī Tamīm will martyr him. The salient feature of that woman is that she would have a beard like a man.

"When the Imām is passing by, she will throw a stone from a rooftop upon him and he will attain martyrdom. After he passes away, Imām al-Ḥusayn ('a) will perform the rites of his *ghuḳl*, *kafn* and burial."⁵

Of course, with the exception of this book, I have not found this subject written anywhere else, i.e. the manner of martyrdom of the Imām.

Imām aḳ-ḳādiq ('a) said: "Ḥusayn ('a), along with his companions who were martyred with him, will come⁶ and seventy prophets will accompany them just as Ḥaḍrat Mūsā was accompanied by seventy dispatched persons.

¹ Ibn ḳammād, *Fitan*, p. 104; *Al-Bada' wa't-Tārīkh*, vol. 2, p. 184; Muttaqī Hindī, *Burhān*, p. 163.

² Ibn ḳammād, *Fitan*, p. 99; *Aqd ad-Durar*, p. 147; Muttaqī Hindī, *Burhān*, p. 157.

³ It is to be noted that according to the scholars of '*ilm ar-rijāl* [science concerned with the study of *ḥadīth* chain of transmitters], Ka'b al-Aḳbār is a known liar. The Imāms from the Progeny of the Prophet ('a) did not accept his *ḥadīths*. See, for example, Muḥammad Jawād Chirri, *The Shi'ites Under Attack* (Detroit: The Islamic Center of America, 1986), "Did Muslims other than Shi'ites Borrow Religious Teachings from Jews?", pp. 62-75, available online at: <http://www.al-islam.org/underattack>. [Trans.]

⁴ *Aqd ad-Durar*, p. 149.

⁵ *Ilzām an-Nāḳib*, p. 190; *Tārīkh-e Mā Ba'da'ḳ-ḳuhūr*, p. 881.

⁶ For information on the return [*raj'ah*] of Imām al-Ḥusayn ('a), see the book, *Setāreh-ye Derakhshān* [Bright Star], by my father, the late Āyatullāh ḳabāsī.

Then, Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im ('atfs) will turn over his ring to him. Imām al-Ḥusayn will perform Ḥaḍrat al-Qā'im's *ghuḥl*, *kafn*, *unū*, and burial.”

*May peace be upon him on the day he was born, the day he will appear,
the day he will die, and the day he will be raised up to life again! 🌐*

Addendum

The following are questions posed by one of the translators of this book and the answers of the author to them:

Question 1: Please explain □*ashr* and *nashr*.¹

Answer: Perhaps the □*adīth* means that during the commencement of the Day of Reckoning, all human beings and other creatures will head toward Bayt al-Muqaddas (in Jerusalem) except those who were buried in Qum. In fact, those who would be admitted to paradise will enter it directly from Qum, for, as mentioned in □*adīths*, one of the doors of heaven will be opened in Qum.

Since “it is the day of the transformation of the world into another form,” on the Day of Resurrection this world and all its contents will change and nothing will remain of them. Perhaps, this is improbable.

It is also possible that this □*adīth* refers to the *raj‘ah* or the purgatory world [‘*ālam al-barzakh*] in which the souls of all believers would assemble in Bayt al-Muqaddas except for those who were buried in Qum which would be a purgatorial heaven for them.

Question 2: What would be the status of *jizyah* during the time of Imām al-Mahdī (‘*atfs*)?²

Answer: Of course, the □*adīths* quoted in that part of the book are related to the noble verse,

﴿...حَتَّى يُعْطُوا الْجِزْيَةَ عَنْ يَدٍ وَهُمْ صَاغِرُونَ﴾

“...until they pay the tribute out of hand, degraded,”³

and this is an indisputable part of Islamic law affirmed by all Muslims of the world.

At any rate, perhaps it can be said as an explanation that one of the reasons for abandoning their own religions and inclining to Islam would be as stated in the □*adīths*. On one hand, they would see that if they embraced Islam, they would enjoy all the privileges of being Muslim. In addition to

¹ See p. 52.

² See p. 136.

³ *Sūrah at-Tawbah* (or, *Barā‘ah*) 9:29.

being exempted from paying the *jizyah*, they would also have a share in the public treasury. On the other hand, if they remained in their religions, they would suffer both a guilty conscience (for not accepting the truth after knowing it) and a financial burden (in paying *jizyah*). So, they would choose the first option and become Muslims.

Or, maybe there are other points and aspects of the □*adīths* which are beyond our understanding.

Question 3: Why is making a profit off a believer unlawful and usurious, or discouraged and reprehensible [*makrūh*]?¹

Answer: The unlawfulness and usuriousness of making a profit off a believer or its being discouraged and reprehensible [*makrūh*] is related to the time of the establishment of the government of truth and the Islamic state of Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs).

Perhaps, at that time, such laws and regulations would be related to the conditions of the people and the market. It is also possible that it alludes to the psychological makeup of the people at that time which would naturally express itself in their commercial transactions with each other. As a manifestation of this psychological makeup, the people would tend to avoid burdening others and gaining huge profits.

Of course, any of these conjectures might be true provided that the □*adīths* in question are indeed authentic.

Question 4: Why will *qa□āyi* (private estates) cease to exist during the time of Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs)?²

Answer: In view of the fact that *qa□āyi* here refers to the vast tracks of land registered under the name of a king or his agents, perhaps the □*adīth* means that during his just government, Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs) will declare these land titles null and void, confiscate these tracks of land in favor of the public treasury and turn them over to their original owners who are the masses or the popular government.

Question 5: The Commander of the Faithful ('a) said: "Woe unto him who destroyed you (Kūfah Mosque)! Woe unto him who facilitated the way to your destruction! Woe unto him who built you with mud and baked clay, and

¹ See p. 151.

² See p. 152.

changed the direction of Nūḥ's (Noah) ('a) *qiblah!*'¹ Was this expression a warning because of the reprehensibility of the material used in the reconstruction (mud and baked clay), or because of the action itself of destroying and reconstructing the mosque?

Answer: Of course, it was because of the action itself of destroying and reconstructing the mosque. As recorded in history, it had been made up of woven reeds but during the rule of Mughayrah ibn Shu'bah, a notorious and staunch enemy of the *Ahl al-Bayt* ('a), in Iraq, it was rebuilt with mud and baked clay. Then, during the time of Ziyād ibn Abīh, he destroyed and rebuilt the mosque with baked clay and acquired its foundations from Ahwāz.²

During the reign of °ajjāj ibn Yūsuf in Iraq he totally destroyed it which was partly damaged at that time and rebuilt it. After that some of its walls were destroyed and rebuilt during the time of Yūsuf ibn 'Umar ath-Thaqafī, a bloodthirsty, cruel and tyrannical governor appointed by the Umayyad caliph °ishām ibn 'Abd al-Malik.³

Actually, the aforementioned □adīth was a prediction by the Commander of the Faithful ('a) about the emergence of tyrant rulers such as Ziyād, °ajjāj, Yūsuf ibn 'Umār, and others.

Question 6: Imām a□-□ādiq ('a) said: "Ḥusayn ('a), along with his companions who were martyred with him, will come and seventy prophets will accompany them just as Ḥaḍrat Mūsā was accompanied by seventy dispatched persons."⁴ Who would be these seventy prophets?

Answer: These seventy prophets will accompany °a□rat Mūsā ('a) in visiting the House of Allah while performing °ajj,⁵ or they could be the seventy persons from among the community [*qawm*] of °a□rat Mūsā ('a) who demanded to see Allah and hear His voice at an appointed tryst [*mīqāt*], but when the manifestation of the divine glory came upon them, they fell down dead and were raised up to life again⁶ and while reaching the station of prophethood they would accompany °a□rat Mūsā ('a) during the time of Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs). It could also mean something else which is beyond our knowledge and understanding.

¹ See p. 152.

² *Mu'jam al-Buldān*, vol. 4, p. 493.

³ *Sayr I'lām an-Nabalā*, vol. 5, p. 442.

⁴ See p. 211.

⁵ *Bi□ār al-Anwār*, vol. 13, no. 11.

⁶ *Sūrah al-Baqarah* 2:55-56; *Sūrah an-Nisā'* 4:153; *Sūrah al-A'rāf* 7:155.

Appendix 1

دُعَاءُ الْفَرَجِ

﴿ Du 'ā' al-Faraj ﴾

Invocation for the Advent of the Imām of the Age ('atfs)

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

Bismillāhi 'r-raḥmāni 'r-raḥīm

In the Name of Allah, the All-beneficent, the All-merciful

إِلَهِي عَظُمَ الْبَلَاءُ وَبَرِحَ الْخَفَاءُ وَأَنْكَشَفَ
الْغُطَاءُ وَأَنْقَطَعَ الرَّجَاءُ وَضَاقَتِ الْأَرْضُ وَمُنِعَتِ
السَّمَاءُ وَأَنْتَ الْمُسْتَعَانُ وَالْيَكُ الْمُشْتَكِي وَعَلَيْكَ
الْمُعَوَّلُ فِي الشَّدَّةِ وَالرَّخَاءِ اللَّهُمَّ صَلِّ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ
وَآلِ مُحَمَّدٍ أُولَى الْأَمْرِ الَّذِينَ فَرَضْتَ عَلَيْنَا طَاعَتَهُمْ
وَعَرَفْتَنَا بِذَلِكَ مَنْزِلَتَهُمْ فَفَرِّجْ عَنَّا بِحَقِّهِمْ فَرَجًا
عَاجِلًا قَرِيبًا كَلِمَاحِ الْبَصَرِ وَهُوَ اقْرُبُ يَا مُحَمَّدُ
يَا عَلِيُّ يَا عَلِيُّ يَا مُحَمَّدُ اكْفِيَانِي فَإِنكُمَا كَافِيَانِ وَأَنْصُرَانِ
فَإِنكُمَا نَاصِرَانِ يَا مَوْلَانَا يَا صَاحِبَ الزَّمَانِ الْغَوْثُ الْغَوْثُ أَذْرِكْنِي
أَذْرِكْنِي السَّاعَةَ السَّاعَةَ الْعَجَلُ الْعَجَلُ الْعَجَلُ يَا رَحِمَ
الرَّاحِمِينَ بِحَقِّ مُحَمَّدٍ وَآلِهِ الطَّاهِرِينَ ط

Ilāhī 'azuma 'l-balā'u wa bariḥa 'l-khafā'

O my Lord! The calamity has aggravated; the absence prolonged;

Wa 'nkashafa 'l-ghi □ ā'u wa 'nqa □ a 'a'r-rajā'

The curtain of modesty has been lifted; hope has been curtailed;

Wa □ āqati 'l-ar □ u wa muni 'ati 's-samā'

The earth has been narrow; and sky has been denied.

Wa anta 'l-musta 'ānu wa ilayka 'l-mushtakā

And You are the One from whom help is sought and complaints are made

Wa 'alayka al-mu 'awwalu fī 'sh-shiddati wa 'r-rakhā'

And in You we trust in the times of difficulty.

Allāhumma □ alli 'alā Muḥammad wa āli Muḥammad

O Allah! Send blessings upon Muḥammad (□) and the progeny of Muḥammad (□),

Ūlī 'l-amri 'l-ladhīna fara □ ta 'alaynā □ ā'atahum

The possessors of authority whose obedience you have enjoined upon us

Wa 'arraftanā bidhālika manzilatahum fafarrij 'annā bi- □ aqqihim farajan

'ājilan qarīban kalam □ i 'l-ba □ arī aw huwa aqrab

And by that made us aware of their position. Then make open for us, by their truth, an immediate opening, immediate as a wink or sooner.

Yā Muḥammadu yā 'Aliyyu yā Muḥammad

O Muḥammad! O 'Alī! O 'Alī! O Muḥammad!

Ikfiyānī fainnakumā kāfiyānī wa 'n- □ urānī fainnakumā nā □ irān

Suffice me both of you as both of you are sufficient.

Help me—two of you—for you are my helpers.

Ya mawlānā yā □ ā □ iba 'z-zamān

O our Master, O Master of the Time!

Al-ghawtha 'l-ghawtha adriknī adriknī

Help! Help! Rescue me! Rescue me! Rescue me!

As-sā'ata's-sā'ata's-sā'ah
This moment! This moment!

Al-'ajala'l-'ajala'l-'ajal
Hasten, hasten, hasten!

Yā arḥama'r-rāḥimīna bi-aqqi Muḥammad wa ālihi' - āhirīn
O Most Merciful of the Merciful,
For the sake of Muḥammad (ﷺ) and his holy progeny.

Appendix 2

دُعَاءُ إِمَامِ الْعَصْرِ (ع)

﴿ Du ‘ā’ Imām al- ‘Aīr (‘atfs) ﴾
Invocation of the Imām of the Age (‘atfs)

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

Bismillāhi ‘r-raī māni ‘r-raī m

In the Name of Allah, the All-beneficent, the All-merciful

اَللّٰهُمَّ ارْزُقْنَا تَوْفِيقَ الطَّاعَةِ وَ بُعْدَ الْمَعْصِيَةِ

Allāhumma ‘rzuqnā tawfīqa ‘-ā‘ah wa bu‘da‘l-ma‘īyah
O Lord! Give us firmness in obedience, aloofness from sins,

وَ صِدْقَ النِّيَّةِ وَ عِرْفَانَ الْحُرْمَةِ

Wa īdqu ‘n-niyyah wa ‘irfān al-īrmah
sincere intention, and the knowledge of all that is held with respect to You.

وَ اَكْرَمَنَا بِالْهُدَى وَ الْاِسْتِقَامَةِ وَ سَدَّدْ اَلْسِنَتَنَا بِالْصَّوَابِ وَ الْحِكْمَةِ

Wa akrimnā bi‘l-hudā wa ‘l-istiqāmah wa saddid as-sinatanā bi‘-āwāb
wa ‘l-īkmah

(O Lord!) Bestow on us steadfastness, guidance and wisdom,
and let our tongues speak the truth.

وَ اَمَلًا قُلُوبَنَا بِالْعِلْمِ وَ الْمَعْرِفَةِ

Wāmla ‘qulūbanā bi‘l-‘ilm wa ‘l-ma‘rifah
Fill our hearts with knowledge and learning.

وَ طَهَّرْ بُطُونَنَا مِنَ الْحَرَامِ

Wa āhhir buīnanā min al-ārām
Keep us from filling our stomach with unlawful food.

وَ الشُّبْهَةِ وَ اكْفِفْ اَيْدِيَنَا عَنِ الظُّلْمِ وَ السَّرِقَةِ

Wash-shubhati wa ‘kfif aydiyanā ‘ani‘-ulm wa ‘s-sariqah
Keep our hands from oppressing and stealing.

وَاعْضُضْ أَبْصَارَنَا عَنِ الْفُجُورِ وَالْخِيَانَةِ

Wāgh□u□ ba□āranā 'ani'l-fujūr wa'l-khiyānah

Blind our eyes from witnessing immorality and debauchery.

وَاسْدُدْ أَسْمَاعَنَا عَنِ اللَّغْوِ وَالْغِيْبَةِ

Wa'sdud asmā'anā 'ani'l-llaghwi wa'l-ghībah

Block our ears from hearing absurd and undesirable talk
as well as backbiting and malicious remarks.

وَفَضِّلْ عَلَيَّ عُلَمَانَنَا بِالزُّهْدِ وَالنَّصِيْحَةِ

Wa fa□dal 'alā 'ulamā'inā biz'zuhdi wa'n-na□ī□ah

Let our scholars be endowed with piety and the ability of giving good
counsel.

وَعَلَى الْمُتَعَلِّمِينَ بِالْجُهْدِ وَالرَّغْبَةِ

Wa 'alā'l-muta'allimīna bi'l-juhdi wa'r-raghbah

Enable our students to devote themselves to their studies in right earnest.

وَعَلَى الْمُسْتَمِيعِينَ بِالْإِتِّبَاعِ وَالْمَوْعِظَةِ

Wa 'alā'l-mustami'īna bi'l-ittibā'i wa'l-maw'ī□ah

Let our listeners pay heed to what they hear and follow them sincerely.

وَعَلَى مَرْضَى الْمُسْلِمِينَ بِالشِّفَاءِ وَالرَّاحَةِ

Wa 'alā mar□a'l-muslimīna bi'sh-shifā'i wa'r-rā□ah

Bestow health and comfort upon the sick Muslims,

وَعَلَى مَوْتَاهُمْ بِالرَّأْفَةِ وَالرَّحْمَةِ

Wa 'alā mawtāhum bi'r-ra'fati wa'r-ra□mah

peace and mercy upon the dead Muslims,

وَعَلَى مَشَائِكِنَا بِالْوَقَارِ وَالسَّكِينَةِ

Wa 'alā mashāyikhinā bi'l-waqāri wa's-sakīnah

honor and dignity upon our good ones.

وَعَلَى الشَّبَابِ بِالْإِنَابَةِ وَالتَّوْبَةِ

Wa 'alā'sh-shabābi bi'l-inābati wa't-tawbah

Let our youth repent for their lapses.

وَعَلَى النِّسَاءِ بِالْحَيَاءِ وَالْعِفَّةِ

Wa 'alā'n-nisā'i bi'l-ayā'i wa'l-'iffah
Make our women modest and chaste.

وَعَلَى الْأَغْنِيَاءِ بِالتَّوَاضُّعِ وَالسَّعَةِ

Wa 'alā'l-aghniyā'i bi't-tawā'u'i wa's-sa'ah
Bestow upon the rich the quality of humility and generosity;

وَعَلَى الْفُقَرَاءِ بِالصَّبْرِ وَالْقَنَاعَةِ

Wa 'alā'l-fuqarā'i bi'-abri wa'l-qinā'ah
upon the poor, patience and contentment;

وَعَلَى الْغُرَاقِ بِالتَّصَرُّ وَالْغَلَبَةِ

Wa 'alā'l-ghuzāti bi'n-na'ri wa'l-ghalabah
upon our warriors, victory and triumph;

وَعَلَى الْأَسْرَاءِ بِالْخُلَاصِ وَالرَّاحَةِ

Wa 'alā'l-usarā'i bi'l-khalā'i wa'r-rā'ah
upon the prisoners, freedom from the enemy's captivity;

وَعَلَى الْأُمَرَاءِ بِالْعَدْلِ وَالشَّفَقَةِ

Wa 'alā'l-umarā'i bi'l-'adli wash-shafaqah
upon the rulers, justice and compassion;

وَعَلَى الرُّعِيَّةِ بِالْإِصْصَافِ وَحُسْنِ السِّيَرَةِ

Wa 'alā'r-ra'ibah bi'l-ināf wa'usni's-sīrah
and upon the ruled, fairness and good conduct.

Bibliography

Note: With the exception of the Holy Qur'an and *Nahj al-Balāghah*, the following title-based bibliographical entries are arranged in Arabic alphabetical order, as in the original version, without taking into account the Arabic definite article “al” (ال) in many of the entries. [Trans.]

Holy Qur'an.

Nahj al-Balāghah.

ا

Ithbāt al-Waṣīyyah. ‘Alī ibn al-Ḥusayn al-Mas‘ūdī (born 346 AH). Qum: Intishārāt ar-Rādī, 1404 AH.

Ithbāt al-Hudā’. Muḥammad ibn al-Ḥasan Ḥurr-‘Āmilī (born 1104 AH). Qum: Chāpkhāneh-ye ‘Ilmiyyeh, n.d.

Al-Ihtijāj. Aḥmad ibn ‘Alī ibn Abī Ṭālib aṭ-Ṭabarsī (6th century AH). Najaf al-Ashraf: Dār al-Nu‘mān, 1386 AH.

Iḥqāq al-Haqq wa Izhāq al-Bāṭil. Shahīd Qāḍī Nūrullāh Ḥusaynī Mar‘ashī Tastarī (born 1019 AH). (Under the supervision of Āyatullāh Mar‘ashī Najafī). Qum: Āyatullāh Mar‘ashī Najafī Library.

Al-Ikhtisāṣ. Muḥammad ibn Muḥammad ibn an-Nu‘mān (born 413 AH). Qum: Islamic Publisher affiliated to the Society of Teachers.

Al-Ikhtiyār Ma‘rifah ar-Rijāl (Rijāl Kashshī). Abū ‘Umrū Muḥammad ibn ‘Umar ibn ‘Abdul-‘Azīz Kashshī (born 385 AH). Abridgement of Abū Ja‘far Muḥammad ibn Al-Ḥasan a□-□ūsī, Mashhad University.

Al-Idhā‘ah Limākāna wa mā Yakūnu bayna Yadī as-Sā‘ah. Muḥammad □iddīq Ḥasan Qanūjī Bukhārī (born 1307 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Kutub al-‘Ilmiyyah.

Al-Irshād. Muḥammad ibn Muḥammad ibn an-Nu‘mān (born 413 AH). Qum: Ba□īratī.

Al-Irshād al-Qulūb. Abū Muḥammad ad-Daylamī. Beirut: Ma‘assasah al-A‘lamī.

Is‘āf ar-Rāghibīn. Muḥammad ibn ‘Alī a□-□abbān (born 1206 AH). Cairo: Dār al-Fikr.

Usad al-Ghābah. Ibn al-Athīr Shaybānī (born 630 AH). Tehran: Chapkhāneh-ye Islāmiyyah.

Al-I□ābah fī Ma‘rifah a□-□a□ābah. Ibn °ijr ‘Asqalānī (born 852 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Kitāb.

Al-U□ūl as-Sittah ‘Ashar. Researched by Ḥasan Muṣṭafawī. Tehran, 1371 AHS.

A‘lām al-Munjid. Lūyis Ma‘lūf al-Yasū‘ī. Beirut: Dār al-Mashriq.

A‘lām an-Nisā’. ‘Umar Riḍā-Kahālah. Beirut: Ma‘assasah ar-Risālah, 1401 AH.

I‘lām al-Warā bi A‘lām al-Hudā. Abū ‘Alī Fa□l ibn Ḥasan □abarsī (born 548 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Ma‘rifah.

A‘yān ash-Shī‘ah. Sayyid Mu□sin Amīn ‘Āmilī. Beirut: Dār at-Ta‘āraf.

- Iqbāl*. Raḡīyuddīn Abū'l-Qāsim 'Alī ibn Mūsā ibn Ja'far ibn ḡāwūs (born 664 AH). Tehran: Dār al-Kutub al-Islāmiyyah, 1390 AH.
- Ilzām an-Nāḡib*. Shaykh 'Alī Yazdī °ā'irī. Qum, 1404 AH.
- Amālī ash-Shajarī (Al-Amālī al-Khamsiyyah)*. Yaḡyā ibn ḡusayn Shajarī (born 479 AH). Beirut: 'Ālam al-Kutub.
- Amālī Shaykh ḡūsī*. Abū Ja'far Muḡammad ibn al-ḡasan ḡūsī (born 460 AH). Baghdad: Al-Maktabah al-Ahliyyah.
- Amālī Muḡīd*. Muḡammad ibn Muḡammad ibn an-Nu'mān (born 413 AH). Qum: Islamic Publisher affiliated to the Society of Teachers.
- Al-Imāmah wa't-Tabirrah*. 'Alī ibn al-ḡusayn ibn Bābūyah al-Qummī (born 329 AH). Qum: Madrasah al-Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs).
- Al-Ansāb*. Abū Sa'd 'Abdul-Karīm Tamīmī Sam'ānī (born 563 AH). Beirut: Mu'assasah al-Kutub ath-Thaqāfiyyah, 1408 AH.
- Al-Ayqāḡ min al-Haj'ah*. Muḡammad ibn al-ḡasan °urr 'Āmilī (born 1104 AH). Qum: Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyyah.
- Al-Ayyām al-Makkiyyah*. Najmuddīn ḡabasī. Qum: College of the Islamic Sciences.

ب

- Biḡār al-Anwār*. Muḡammad Bāqir Majlisī (born 1111 AH). Beirut: Mu'assasah al-Wafā'.
- Al-Bada' wa't-Tārīkh*. Attributed to Abū Zayd Aḡmad ibn Sahl Balkhī Muqaddasī (born 355 AH). Tehran: Asadī Library.
- Al-Burhān fī Tafṡīr al-Qur'ān*. Sayyid Hāshim Baḡrānī (born 1107 AH). Qum: Chāpkhāneh-ye 'Ilmiyyeh.
- Al-Burhān fī 'Alāmāt Mahdī Ākhir az-Zamān*. 'Alā'uddīn 'Alī ibn °isāmuddīn, known as Muttaḡī Hindī (born 975 AH). Qum: Chāpkhāneh-ye Khayyām.
- Burhān-e Qāḡi*. Muḡammad ḡusayn Burhān (born 1083 AH). Tehran: Nashr-e Khirad Nīmā.
- Bishārah al-Islām*. Sayyid Muṡṡafā Āl as-Sayyid °aydar Kāḡimī (born 1336 AH). Tehran: Naynawā al-°adīthah Library.
- Bishārah al-Muṡṡafā*. Abū Ja'far Muḡammad ibn Abū'l-Qāsim ḡabarī. Najaf al-Ashraf: °aydariyyah Bookshop.
- Baḡā'ir ad-Darajāt fī Faḡā'il Āl Muḡammad*. Muḡammad ibn al-ḡasan ibn Farūkh ḡaffār Qummī (born 290 AH). Qum: Āyatullāh Mar'ashī Najafī Library.
- Bihjah al-Āmāl*. Mullā 'Alī 'Aliyārī Tabrīzī (born 1327 AH). Tehran: Kawshānpūr Islamic Cultural Foundation.
- Bayān al-A'immaḡ*. Muḡammad Mahdī Najafī. Qum, 1408 AH.
- Al-Bayān fī Akhbār ḡāḡib az-Zamān*. Muḡammad ibn Yūsuf ibn Muḡammad Qurashī, Ganjī-ye Shāfi'ī (born 658 AH). Tehran: Dār Iḡyā' Turāth Ahl al-Bayt.

ت

- Ta'wīl al-Āyāt a□-□āhirah fī Fa□ā'il al-Itrah a□-□āhirah.* Sayyid Sharafuddīn 'Alī Husaynī Astarābādī Najafī (born 6th AH). Qum: Madrasah al-Imām al-Mahdī (*atfs*).
- Tārīkh al-Umam wa'l-Mulūk.* Abū Ja'far Muḥammad ibn Jarīr □abarī (born 310 AH). Cairo: Dār al-Ma'ārif.
- Tārīkh Baghdād.* Abūbākr Aḥmad ibn 'Alī Kha□īb Baghdādī (born 463 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyyah.
- Tārīkh mā Ba'd a□-□uhūr.* Sayyid Muḥammad □ādiq □adr. Beirut: Dār at-Ta'āruḥ lil-Ma□bū'at.
- Tab□irah al-Walā.* Sayyid Hāshim Ba□rānī (born 1107 AH). Beirut: Mu'assasah al-A'lamī.
- Tu□af al-'Uqūl 'an Āl ar-Rasūl.* Abū Muḥammad Ḥasan ibn 'Alī ibn al-Ḥusayn ibn Shu'bah °arrānī. Qum: Islamic Publisher affiliated to the Society of Teachers.
- Tadhkirah al-Fuqahā.* 'Allāmah °illī (born 726 AH). Qum: Mu'assasah Āl al-Bayt ('a) Li-I□yā' at-Turāth.
- At-Targhīb wa't-Tarhīb min al-°adīth ash-Sharīf.* 'Abdul-'A□īm ibn 'Abdul-Qawī al-Mundhirī (born 656 AH). Beirut: Dār I□yā' at-Turāth al-'Arabī.
- At-Ta□rī□ bimā Tawatur fī Nuzūl al-Masī□.* Muḥammad Anwar Shāh Kashmīrī Hindī (born 1352 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Qur'ān al-Karīm.
- At-Ta□bīq bayn as-Safīnah wa'l-Bi□ār bi'□-□ab'ah al-Jadīdah.* Sayyid Jawād Muṣṭafawī. Mashhad: Āstān Quds Raḍawī, 1403 AH.
- Tafsīr a□-□āfi.* Fay□ Kāshānī (born 1091 AH). Beirut: Mu'assasah al-A'lamī.
- Tafsīr al-'Askarī ('a).* Attributed to Imām Ḥasan al-'Askarī ('a). Qum: Madrasah al-Imām al-Mahdī (*atfs*), 1409 AH.
- Tafsīr al-'Ayyāshī.* Muḥammad ibn Mas'ūd ibn 'Ayyāsh Samarqandī. Tehran: Kitābfurūshī-ye Islāmiyyeh.
- Tafsīr Furāt al-Kūfi.* Furāt ibn Ibrāhīm ibn Furāt Kūfi. Qum: Kitābfurūshī-ye Dāwarī.
- Tafsīr Qummī.* Abū'l-Ḥasan 'Alī ibn Ibrāhīm Qummī (late 3rd century AH). Najaf al-Ashraf: Al-Hudā Bookshop.
- Tafsīr Nūr ath-Thaqalayn.* 'Abd 'Alī ibn Jum'ah al-'Arūsī al-°awīzī (born 1112 AH). Qum: Chāpkhāneh-ye 'Ilmiyyeh.
- Taqrīb al-Ma'ārif.* Shaykh Taqī'uddīn Abū'□-□ālī □alabī (born 447 AH). Qum: Islamic Publisher affiliated to the Society of Teachers, 1404 AH.
- At-Taqrīb wa't-Taysīr.* Abū Zakariyyā Ya□yā ibn Sharaf an-Nawawī. Beirut.
- Tanqī□ al-Maqāl fī 'Ilm ar-Rijāl.* Shaykh 'Abdullāh ibn Muḥammad Ḥasan ibn al-Mawlā 'Abdullāh al-Māmqa'nī an-Najafī (born 1351 AH).
- Tahdhīb al-A□kāma fī Shar□ al-Maqna'ah.* Abū Ja'far Muḥammad ibn al-Ḥasan □ūsī (born 460 AH). Tehran: Dār al-Kutub al-Islāmiyyah.

ث

Thawāb al-A'māl wa 'Aqāb al-A'māl. Muḥammad ibn al-Ḥasan ibn Bābūyah (born 381 AH). Qum: Āyatullāh Mar'ashī Najafī Library.

ج

Jāmi' A□ādīth ash-Shī'ah. Sayyid Ḥusayn Burūjerdī (born 1380 AH). Qum: Madīnah al-'Ilm.

- Jāmi' al-Akhhbār*. Tājuddīn Shu'ayrī (6th century AH). Qum: Intishārāt-e Raḡī.
Jāmi' al-Uḡūl Aḡādīth ar-Rasūl. Abū as-Sa'ādāt Mubārak ibn Muḡammad known as Ibn Athīr (born 606 AH). Beirut: Dār Iḡyā' at-Turāth al-'Arabī.
Al-Jāmi' aḡ-ḡaḡī. Muḡammad ibn 'Īsā ibn Sūrah Tirmidhī (born 297 AH). Beirut: Dār Iḡyā' at-Turāth al-'Arabī.
Jam' al-Jawāmi' (Al-Jāmi' al-Kabīr). Jalāluddīn 'Abd ar-Raḡmān Suyūḡī (born 911 AH). Lithography.

ج

- Al-°awī Lil-Fatāwā*. Jalāluddīn 'Abd ar-Raḡmān Suyūḡī (born 911 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyyah.
°aqq al-Yaqīn. Muḡammad Bāqir Majlīsī (born 1111 AH). Tehran: Jāwīdān.
°ilyah al-Abrār fī Faḡā'il Muḡammad wa Ālih al-Aḡhār. Sayyid Hāshim ibn Ismā'il Bahrānī (born 1107 AH). Qum: Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyyah.
°ilyah al-Awliyā' wa ḡabaqāt al-Aḡfiyā'. Abū Na'im Iṣfahānī Aḡmad ibn 'Abdullāh (born 430 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Kitāb al-'Arabī.

ح

- Al-Khrā'ij wa'l-Jarā'ij*. Abū al-ḡusayn Sa'id ibn Hibatullāh known as Quḡbuddīn Rāwandī (born 573 AH). Qum: Mu'assasah al-Imām al-Mahdī ('a).
Al-Khiḡāl. Abū Ja'far Muḡammad ibn 'Alī ibn al-ḡusayn ibn Bābūyah Qummī (born 381 AH). Qum: Islamic Publisher affiliated to the Society of Teachers.
Khulā'ah al-Aqwāl (Rijāl 'Allāmah). ḡasan ibn Yūsuf ibn Muṡahhar °illī (born 726 AH). Qum: Ar-Rāḡī.

د

- Durar al-Akhhbār fīmā Yata'allaq Bi-°āl al-Iḡtiḡār*. Shakyh Muḡammad Riḡā ḡabasī Najafī (born 1405 AH). Najaf al-Ashraf: Nu'mān Publisher.
Ad-Durr al-Manthūr fī't-Tafsīr Bi'l-Ma'thūr. Jalāluddīn Suyūḡī (born 911 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Ma'rifah.
Dalā'il al-Imāmah. Abū Ja'far Muḡammad ibn Jarīr ibn Rustam ḡabarī. Qum: Kitābfurūshī-ye Raḡī.
Dalā'il an-Nubuwwah. Aḡmad ibn 'Abdullāh Abū Na'im Iṣfahānī (born 430 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Ma'rifah.

ذ

- Dhakhā'ir al-'Uqbā fī Manāqib Dhawi'l-Qurbā*. Muḡibbuddīn Aḡmad ibn 'Abdullāh aḡ-ḡabarī (born 694 AH). Qum: Kitābfurūshī-ye Muḡammadī.
Adh-Dharī'ah ilā Taḡānif ash-Shī'ah. Āqā Buzurg Tehrānī (born 1389 AH). Tehran: Kitābfurūshī-ye Islāmiyyeh.

ر

- Rāmūz al-Aḡādīth*. Iḡyā'uddīn Aḡmad ibn Muṡṡafawī Istānbūlī (born 1311 AH). Printed in India.

- Rijāl ibn Dāwūd*. Ḥasan ibn ‘Alī ibn Dāwūd °illī (born early 8th century AH). Najaf, 1972.
- Raj‘at az Na□ar-e Shī‘ah*. Najmuddīn □abasī. Qum: Chāpkhāneh-ye ‘Ilmiyyeh, 1400 AH.
- Ar-Raj‘ah fī A□ādīth al-Farīqayn*. Najmuddīn □abasī.
- Rāhnāmā-ye Kutub Arba‘ah*. Muḥammad Mu□affarī. Qum: Chāpkhāneh-ye ‘Ilmiyyeh, 1405 AH.
- Raw□ah al-Muttaqīn*. Muḥammad Taqī Majlisī (born 1070 AH). Tehran: Kūshānpūr Islamic Cultural Foundation.
- Raw□ah al-Wā‘i□īn*. Muḥammad ibn Fatāl Nayshābūrī (born 508 AH). Qum: Intishārāt-e ar-Ra□ī.
- Riyā□īn ash-Sharī‘ah*. Dhabī□ullāh Ma□allātī. Tehran: Dār al-Kutub al-Islāmiyyah.

س

- Sitāreh-ye Dirakhshān*. Shaykh Muḥammad Riḍā □abasī Najafī. Trans. Sayyid Muḥammad Mīr Shāh Walid. Tehran: Intishārāt-e Muḥammadī.
- Safīnah al-Bi□ār*. Shaykh ‘Abbās Qummī (born 1359 AH). Qum: Intishārāt-e Uswah.
- Sunan ibn Mājah*. Muḥammad ibn Yazīd Qazwīnī (born 275 AH). Beirut: Dār I□yā’ at-Turāth al-‘Arabī.
- Sunan Abī Dāwūd*. Sulaymān ibn al-Ash‘ath Sajistānī (born 275 AH). Dār I□yā’ as-Sunnah an-Nabawīyyah.
- As-Sunan al-Kubrā*. Abūbakr Aḥmad ibn al-Ḥusayn Bayhaqī (born 458 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Ma‘rifah.
- Sunan ad-Dāramī*. Abū Muḥammad ‘Abdullāh Dāramī (born 255 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Fikr.
- As-Sīrah al-‘alabiyyah*. ‘Alī ibn Burhānuddīn °alabī Shāfī‘ī (born 1044 AH). Beirut.

ش

- Shar□ Nahj al-Balāghah*. ‘Izzuddīn Abū °āmid ibn Hibatullāh ibn Abī al-°adīd Madā’inī (born 655 AH). Cairo: Bābī °alabī Publisher.
- Ash-Shī‘ah wa’r-Raj‘ah*. Shaykh Muḥammad Riḍā □abasī Najafī. Najaf al-Ashraf: Al-Ādāb Publisher, 1385 AH.

ص

- a□ī□ *al-Bukhārī*. Ismā‘īl ibn Ibrāhīm Ja‘fī Būkhārī (born 256 AH). Beirut: Dār ‘I□yā’ at-Turāth al-‘Arabī.
- a□ī□ *Tirmidhī*. Abū ‘Īsā Muḥammad ibn ‘Īsā ibn Sūrah (born 297 AH). Beirut: Dār ‘I□yā’ at-Turāth al-‘Arabī.
- a□ī□ *Muslim*. Abū’l-Ḥusayn Muslim ibn °ajjāj Qashīrī Nayshābūrī (born 261 AH). Beirut: Dār ‘I□yā’ at-Turāth al-‘Arabī.
- A□-□irā□ *al-Mustaqīm ilā Musta□aqqī at-Taqdīm*. Zaynuddīn Abū Muḥammad ‘Alī ibn Yūnus ‘Āmilī Nabā□ī (born 877 AH). Tehran: Kitābfusūshī-ye Murtaḍawiyyeh.

A□-□awā'iq al-Mu□riqah. Aḥmad ibn °ijr Haythamī (born 974 AH). Cairo: Cairo Library.

ط

A□-□abaqāt al-Kubrā. Abū 'Abdullāh Muḥammad ibn Sa'd ibn Manī' Ba□rī Zuhri (born 230 AH). Beirut: Dār □ādir.

A□-□arā'if fī Ma'rifah Madhāhib a□-□awā'if. 'Alī ibn Mūsā known as Sayyid Ibn □āwūs (born 664 AH). Qum: Chāpkhāneh-ye Khayyām.

ع

Al-'Adad al-Qawīyyah Li-Daf' al-Makhāwuf al-Yawmiyyah. Ra□iyyuddīn 'Alī ibn Yūsuf ibn al-Muṭahhar °illī (born 726 AH). Qum: Āyatullāh Mar'ashī Najafī Library.

Al-'A□r al-Wardā. Muḥammad Balbīsī Shāfi'ī (born 1308 AH). Būlāq: Chāpkhāneh-ye Amīriyyeh.

'Aqā'id □adūq. Abū Ja'far Muḥammad ibn 'Alī ibn Bābūyah Qummī (born 381 AH). Lithography, 1292 AH.

'Iqd ad-Durar fī Akhbār al-Munta□ar. Yūsuf ibn Ya□yā Muqaddasī Salamī Shāfi'ī (born 7th century AH). Cairo: 'Ālam al-Fikr.

Al-'Aqd al-Farīd. Ibn 'Abd Rabi□ Andalusī (born 327 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Kitāb al-'Arabī.

'Ilal ash-Sharāyi'. Abū Ja'far Muḥammad ibn 'Alī ibn Bābūyah (born 381 AH). Najaf al-Ashraf: °aydariyyah Bookshop.

Al-'Ilal al-Mutatahhiyyah. Abū'l-Faraj 'Abd ar-Ra□mān ibn al-Jawzī (born 597 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyyah, 1403 AH.

Al-'Umdah Li-ibn al-Ba□riq. Ya□yā ibn al-Ḥasan Asadī °illī known as Ibn al-Ba□riq. (born 600 AH). Qum: Islamic Publisher affiliated to the Society of Teachers.

'Awālim al-'Ulūm, wa'l-Ma'arīf wa'l-A□wāl min al-Āyāt wa'l-Akhbār wa'l-Aqwāl. Shaykh 'Abdullāh Ba□rānī Iṣfahānī. Qum: Madrasah al-Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs).

'Uyūn al-Akhbār. 'Abdullāh ibn Muslim Qutaybah Dīnwarī (born 278 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyyah.

'Uyūn al-Akhbār ar-Ridā. Abū Ja'far Muḥammad ibn 'Alī ibn al-Ḥusayn ibn Bābūyah (born 381 AH). Qum: Nashr-e Tūs.

ع

Al-Ghārāt. Abū Is□āq Ibrāhīm ibn Muḥammad Thaqafī (born 283 AH). Tehran: Anjuman-e Āthār-e Millī.

Ghāyah al-Marām fī °ujjah al-Khi□ām 'an □arīq al-Khā□ wa'l-Ām. Sayyid Hāshim ibn Sulaymān Ba□rānī (born 1107 AH). Beirut: Mu'assasah al-A'lamī.

Al-Ghaybah. Abū Ja'far Muḥammad ibn al-Ḥasan □ūsī (born 460 AH). Tehran: Kitābfurūshī-ye Naynawī.

Al-Ghaybah. Muḥammad ibn Ibrāhīm Nu'mānī (born 360 AH). Tehran: Kitābfurūshī-ye □adūq.

ف

- Al-Fā'iq fī Ḡharīb al-°adīth*. Jārullāh Ma°mūd ibn 'Umar Zamakhsharī (born 583 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Ma'rifah.
- Al-Fatāwā al-°adīthiyyah*. Aḥmad ibn °ijr Haythamī (born 974 AH). Egypt: At-Taqaaddum al-'Ilmiyyah.
- Al-Fitan*. Abū 'Abdullāh Na'im ibn °ammād Marwazī (born 228 AH). Manuscript. Britain: Al-Mat°af Library.
- Al-Fatū°āt al-Makkiyyah*. Muḥammad ibn 'Alī known as Ibn 'Arabī (born 638 AH). Beirut: Dār °adīr.
- Farā'id as-Sam°ayn fī Fa°ā'il al-Murtaḍā wa'l-Batūl wa's-Sib°ayn wa'l-A'immaḥ min Dhurriyyahum ('a)*. Ibrāhīm ibn Muḥammad Juwaynī Khurāsānī (born 730 AH). Beirut: Mu'assasah al-Maḥmūdī.
- Farā'id Favā'id al-Fikr*. Mar'ī ibn Yūsuf ibn Abibakr (born 11th century AH). Qum: Bonyād-e Ma'ārif Islāmī.
- Firdaws al-Akḥbār*. Abū Shujā' Shīrūyah ibn Shahrdār ibn Shīrūyah Daylamī (born 509 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyyah.
- Farhang-e 'Amīd*. Ḥasan 'Amīd. Tehran: Jāwīdān.
- Al-Fu°ūl al-Muḥimmah fī Ma'rifah A°wāl al-A'immaḥ*. 'Alī ibn Muḥammad ibn Aḥmad Mālikī Makkī known as Ibn °abbāgh (born 855 AH). Najaf al-Ashraf: Dār al-Kutub Bookshop.
- Al-Fa°l al-Kūfah wa Fa°l Ahlihā*. Muḥammad ibn 'Alī ibn al-Ḥasan 'Alawī Ḥusaynī Kūfī (born 445 AH). Beirut: Mu'assasah Ahl al-Bayt.
- Al-Faqīh (Kitāb Man Lā Ya°uruh al-Faqīh)*. Muḥammad ibn 'Alī ibn Bābūyah Qummī (born 381 AH). Tehran: Dār al-Kutub al-Islāmiyyah.

ق

- Qurb al-Asnād*. Abū'l-'Abbās 'Abdullāh ibn Ja'far Humayrī (born 310 AH). Lithography. Tehran: Chāpkhāneh-ye Islāmiyyeh.
- Qi°a° al-Anbiyā'*. Qu°buddīn Rāwandī (born 573 AH). Mashhad: Islamic Research Foundation, 1409 AH.
- Al-Qawl al-Mukhta°ar fī 'Alāmāt al-Mahdī al-Munta°ar*. Aḥmad ibn °ijr Haythamī (born 974 AH). Manuscript. Najaf al-Ashraf: Amīr al-Mu'minīn Library.

ك

- Kāmil az-Ziyārāt*. Abū'l-Qāsim Ja'far ibn Muḥammad ibn Qawlūyah (born 367 AH). Najaf al-Ashraf: Murtaḍawiyyah Publisher, 1356 AH.
- Al-Kāmil fī't-Tārīkh*. Abū'l-Ḥasan 'Alī ibn Abī'l-Mukarram known as Ibn al-Athīr (630 AH). Beirut: Dār °adīr.
- Kashf al-Astār*. Mīrzā Ḥusayn Nūrī (born 1320 AH). Tehran: Kitābfusūshī-ye Naynawī.
- Kashf al-°aqq (Al-Arba'ūn)*. Amīr Muḥammad °ādiq Khātūnābādī (born 1207 AH). Tehran: Bunyād-e Bi'that-e Tehrān, 1361.
- Kashf al-Ghummaḥ fī Ma'rifah al-A'immaḥ*. Abū'l-Ḥasan 'Alī ibn 'Īsā ibn Abī'l-Fat° Arbēlī (born 692 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Kitāb al-Islāmī.

Al-Kāfī. Muḥammad ibn Ya'qūb Kulaynī Rāzī (born 329 AH). Tehran: Dār al-Kutub al-Islāmiyyah.

Kifāyah al-Athar fī'n-Na□□ 'alā'l-A'immah al-Ithnā 'Ashar. Abū'l-Qāsim 'Alī ibn Muḥammad ibn 'Alī (al-Khazāz) (born 4th century AH). Qum: Nashr-e Bīdār.

Kamāl ad-Dīn wa Tamām an-Ni'mah. Abū Ja'far Muḥammad 'Alī ibn Bābūyah Qummī (born 381 AH). Qum: Islamic Publisher affiliated to the Society of Teachers.

Al-Kunya wa'l-Alqāb. Shaykh 'Abbās Qummī (born 1359 AH). Tehran: □adr Library.

Kanz al-'Ummal fī Sunan al-Aqwāl wa'l-Af'āl. 'Alā'uddīn 'Alī known as Muttaqī Hindī (born 975 AH). Beirut: Mu'assasah ar-Risālāh.

ج

Lisān al-Mīzān. Aḥmad ibn 'Alī ibn °ijr 'Asqalānī (born 852 AH). Beirut: Mu'assasah al-A'lamī.

Lawā'ī□ al-Anwār al-Bahiyyah. Shamsuddīn Muḥammad ibn Aḥmad Safārīnī Nāblusī (born 1188 AH). Cairo: Majallah al-Manār.

م

Majma' al-Ba□rayn. Fakhruddīn □uray□ī (born 1085 AH). Tehran: Kitābfusūshī-ye Murtaḍawiyyah.

Majma' al-Bayān fī Tafṣīr al-Qur'ān. Fa□l ibn al-Ḥasan □abarsī (born 548 AH). Beirut: Dār I□yā' at-Turāth al-'Arabī.

Majma' ar-Rijāl. Zakiyyuddīn 'Ināyatullāh ibn Mushrifuddīn Qahbā'ī (born 11th century AH). Isfahān: Chāpkhāneh-ye Rabbānī.

Majma' az-Zawā'id wa Manba' al-Fawā'id. Nūruddīn 'Alī ibn Abībakr Haythamī (born 807 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Kitāb al-'Arabī.

Al-Ma□āsin. Abū Ja'far Aḥmad ibn Muḥammad ibn Khālid Barqī (born 274 AH). Qum: Dār al-Kutub al-Islāmiyyah.

Al-Ma□ajjah fīmā Nuzil fī'l-°ujjah. Sayyid Hāshim Ba□rānī (born 1107 AH). Beirut: Mu'assasah al-Wafā', 1403 AH.

Mukhta□ar Ithbāt ar-Raj'ah. Fa□l ibn Shādhān Nayshābūrī. Majallah Turāthunā, No. 15.

Mukhta□ar Ba□ā'ir ad-Darajāt. 'Izzuddīn Ḥasan ibn Sulaymān °illī (born 9th century AH). Najaf al-Ashraf: °aydariyyah Publisher.

Madīnah al-Ma'ājiz. Sayyid Hāshim Ba□rānī (born 1107 AH). Lithography. Tehran.

Mar'ah al-'Uqūl. Muḥammad Bāqir Majlisī (born 1111 AH). Tehran: Dār al-Kutub al-Islāmiyyah.

Murawwij adh-Dhahab. 'Alī ibn Ḥusayn Mas'ūdī (born 346 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Andalus.

Al-Mustajād min Kitāb al-Irshād. Ḥasan ibn Muṭahhar °illī (born 726 AH). Qum: Āyatullāh Mar'ashī Najafī Library.

Mustadrakāt 'Ilm Rijāl al-Ḥadīth. Shaykh 'Alī Namāzī (born 1405 AH). Tehran: Chāpkhāneh-ye °aydariyyah.

- Al-Mustadrak 'alā' - ayn fī al-Ḥadīth.* Abū 'Abdullāh Muḥammad ibn 'Abdullāh known as °ākīm Nayshābūrī (born 405 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Fikr.
- Mustadrak al-Wasā'il.* Mīrzā Ḥusayn Nūrī °abarsī (born 1320 AH). Qum: Mu'assasah Āl al-Bayt ('a) Li-Iyā' at-Turāth.
- Al-Mustarshid.* Abū Ja'far Muḥammad ibn Jarīr ibn Rustam a°-°abarī (born 4th century AH). Najaf al-Ashraf: °aydariyyah Publisher.
- Musnad Abū 'Awānih.* Ya'qūb ibn Is°āq Isfārā'inī (born 316 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Ma'rifah.
- Musnad Abī Ya'lī al-Maw°ilī.* Aḥmad ibn 'Alī ibn al-Muthannā at-Tamīmī (born 307 AH). Damascus: Dār al-Ma'mūn Li't-Turāth.
- Musnab Aḥmad.* Aḥmad ibn °anbal (born 241 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Fikr.
- Musnab Abī Dāwūd.* Sulaymān ibn Dāwūd ibn al-Jārūd Fārsī Ba°rī (born 204 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Ma'rifah.
- Ma°ābī° as-Sunnah.* Ḥusayn ibn Mas'ūd ibn Muḥammad al-Farā' Baghwī (born 516 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Ma'rifah.
- Mu°ādiqah al-Akhawān.* Abū Ja'far Muḥammad ibn 'Alī ibn Bābūyah Qummī (born 381 AH). Qum: Madrasah al-Imām al-Mahdī ('a).
- Al-Mu°annif.* 'Abd ar-Razzāq ibn Hamām °an'ā'ī (born 211 AH). Beirut: Al-Maktab al-Islāmī.
- Al-Mu°annif.* 'Abdullāh ibn Muḥammad ibn Abī Shaybah (born 235 AH). Bombay: Dār as-Salafiyyah.
- Al-Ma°ālib al-'Āliyyah Bi-Zawā'id al-Masānīd ath-Thamāniyyah.* Aḥmad ibn °ijr 'Asqalānī (born 852 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Ma'rifah.
- Mu'jam A°ādīth al-Imām al-Mahdī.* Najmuddīn °abasī with the cooperation of a group of seminary students. Qum: Nashr-e Ma'ārif Islāmī.
- Mu'jam al-Buldān.* Abū 'Abdullāh Yāqūt ibn 'Abdullāh °amawī Baghdādī (born 626 AH). Beirut: Dār at-Turāth al-'Arabī.
- Mu'jam Rijāl al-Ḥadīth wa Taf°il °abaqāt ar-Rawāh.* Sayyid Abū'l-Qāsim Khū'ī. Qum: Madīnah al-'Ilm.
- Al-Mu'jam a°-°aghīr.* Sulaymān ibn Aḥmad °abrānī (born 360 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyyah.
- Al-Mu'jam al-Awsa°.* Sulaymān ibn Aḥmad °abrānī (born 360 AH). Riyadh: Al-Ma'ārif Bookshop.
- Al-Mu'jam al-Kabīr.* Sulaymān ibn Aḥmad °abarānī (born 360 AH). Baghdad: Ministry of Endowments of Iraq.
- Al-Malā°im wa'l-Fitan fī °uhūr al-Ghā'ib al-Munta°ar.* Ra°iyyuddīn 'Alī ibn Mūsā ibn °āwūs (born 664 AH). Beirut: Mu'assasah al-'Ālamī.
- Mulādh al-Akhyār.* Muḥammad Bāqir Majlisī (born 1111 AH). Qum: Āyatullāh Mar'ashī Najafī Library.
- Al-Manār al-Munīf fī a°-°a°ī° wa'°-°a'if.* Ibn Qayyum al-Jawriyyah (born 751 AH). Maktab al-Ma°bū'āt al-Islāmiyyah.
- Manāqib Āl Abī °ālib.* Abū Ja'far Rashīduddīn Muḥammad ibn 'Alī ibn Shahrāshūb (born 588 AH). Qum: Intishārāt-e 'Allāmah.
- Muntakhab al-Athar fī al-Imām ath-Thānī 'Ashar ('a).* Shaykh Lu°fullāh °āfi. Tehran: °adr Library.

- Muntakhab al-Anwār al-Muḥī'ah*. Sayyid 'Alī ibn 'Abdul-Karīm Nīlī Najafī (born 9th century AH). Qum: Chāpkhāneh-ye Khayyām, 1401 AH.
- Muntakhab Kanz al-'Ummāl*. 'Alā'uddīn Muttaqī Hindī (born 975 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Fikr.
- Al-Munjid*. Lūyis Ma'lūf al-Yasū'ī. Beirut: Dār al-Mashriq.
- Minan ar-Raḥmān*. Muḥammad Bahā'uddīn al-°arithī (born 1030 AH). Najaf al-'Ashraf: °aydariyyah Publisher, 1344 AH.
- Maniyyah al-Murīd*. Zaynuddīn ibn 'Alī ibn Aḥmad 'Āmilī (born 965 AH). Qum: Intishārāt-e Daftar-e Tablīghāt-e Islāmī, 1368 AHS.
- Minhāj ad-Dumū'*. Shaykh 'Alī Qaranī Gulpāygānī. Qum: Mu'assasah Maḥbū'āti-ye Dīn va Dānesh, 1344 AH.
- Mahdī-ye Maw'ūd*. Muḥammad Bāqir Majlisī (born 1111 AH). Trans. 'Alī Dawānī Akhūndī. Tehran.
- Al-Mahdhab al-Bārī' fī Sharḥ al-Mukhtaḥar an-Nāfi'*. Shaykh Jamāluddīn Abū'l-'Abbās Aḥmad ibn Fahd °illī Asadī (born 841 AH). Qum: Islamic Publisher affiliated to the Society of Teachers.
- Mawārid as-Sajan fī'n-Nuḥū wa'l-Fatāwā*. Najmuddīn °abasī. Qum: Intishārāt-e Daftar-e Tablīghāt-e Islāmī, 1411 AH.
- Al-Mawāḥid*. Mālik ibn Anas (born 179 AH). Beirut: Dār Iḥyā' at-Turāth al-'Arabī.
- Al-Mīzān fī Tafṣīr al-Qur'an*. Sayyid Muḥammad Ḥusayn Ṭabāṭabā'ī (born 1402 AH). Tehran: Dār al-Kutub al-Islāmiyyah.

ن

- An-Nafyi wa't-Targhīb*. Najmuddīn °abasī. Qum: Majma' al-Fikr al-Islāmī.
- Naqsh-e Zanān-e Musalmān dar Jang*. Muḥammad Jawād °abasī Najafī. Chāpkhāneh-ye °ulū'-e Āzādī, 1367 AHS.
- Nūr al-Abḥār fī Manāqib Āl an-Nabī al-Mukhtār* (□). Shaykh Mu'min ibn Ḥasan Mu'min Shablanjī (born 1290 AH). Beirut: Dār al-Fikr.
- An-Nihāyah fī Gharīb al-Ḥadīth wa'l-Athar*. Mubārak ibn Muḥammad Jazrī known as Ibn al-Athīr (born 606 AH). Qum: Ismā'īliyyān.

و

- Wasā'il ash-Shī'ah ilā Taḥqīq Masā'il ash-Sharī'ah*. Muḥammad ibn al-Ḥasan °urr 'Āmilī (born 1104 AH). Beirut: Dār Iḥyā' at-Turāth al-'Arabī.
- Waq'ah °iffīn*. Naḥr ibn Mazā'im Munqarī (born 212 AH). Qum: Āyatullāh Mar'ashī Najafī Library, 1403 AH.
- Al-Hidāyah al-Kubrā*. Ḥusayn ibn °amdān Ḥusaynī °uḥaynī (born 344 AH). Mu'assasah al-Balāgh, 1406 AH.

ي

- Yanābī' al-Mawaddah*. Sulaymān ibn Ibrāhīm ibn Qandūzī °anafī (born 1294 AH). Qum: Kitābfurūshī-ye Muḥammadī.
- Yawm al-Khalā' fī ill al-Qā'im al-Mahdī ('a)*. Kāmil Sulaymān. Beirut: Dār al-Kitāb al-Lubnānī, 1402 AH.

The Shī'ah is waiting for the Living Imām ('atfs) for waiting for his advent is one of the highest forms of worship. From the Shī'ah viewpoint of history, the world will certainly witness the government of justice of the Imām of the Time ('atfs) and tyrannical systems will cease to exist.

In *An Overview of the Mahdī's Government*, the esteemed author deals with an issue that is rarely discussed in the study of Imām al-Mahdī ('atfs). He delves into the manner of the Imām's uprising, government system and method of rule.

About the Author

°ujjat al-Islām wa'l-Muslimīn Shaykh Najmuddīn ±abas¢, son of °yatullāh °jjj Shaykh Mu'ammad Ri¢ ±abas¢, was born in 1334 AHS at Najaf al-Ashraf, Iraq and began his studies in the religious sciences with his father. After this he continued his studies in the Islamic Seminary of Qum, Iran. He is presently teaching intermediate [sa§i] and advanced [kh;rij] level courses in jurisprudence and its principles [fiqh wa u£l], rij;l, exegesis, and Islamic doctrines. He also wrote a number of books some of which are (1) *Maw;rid as-Sajan f¢'n-Nu££ wa'l-Fat;w;*, (2) *An-Nafyi wa't-Taghr¢b f¢ Ma£;dir at-Tashr¢' al-Isl;m¢*, (3) *Dir;s;t Fiqhiyyah f¢ Mas;'il Khil;fiyyah*, and (4) *Ma';lim °uk£mah al-Im;m al-Mahd¢ ('atfs).*